

864 ISOBUS Round Baler

OPERATOR'S MANUAL
864 ISOBUS Round Baler
OMCC59767 ISSUE D5 (ANGLAIS)

John Deere Arc-lès-Gray
(This manual replaces OMCC59459 Issue E3)
European Edition
PRINTED IN U.S.A.

Introduction

Foreword

READ THIS MANUAL carefully to learn how to operate and service your machine correctly. Failure to do so could result in personal injury or equipment damage. This manual and safety signs on your machine may also be available in other languages (see your John Deere dealer to order).

THIS MANUAL SHOULD BE CONSIDERED a permanent part of your machine and should remain with the machine when you sell it.

MEASUREMENTS in this manual are given in both metric and customary U.S. unit equivalents. Use only correct replacement parts and fasteners. Metric and inch fasteners may require a specific metric or inch wrench.

RIGHT-HAND AND LEFT-HAND sides are determined by facing the direction the implement will travel when going forward.

WRITE PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION NUMBERS (P.I.N.) in the Specifications or Serial Number section. Accurately record all the numbers to help in tracing the machine should it be stolen. Your dealer also needs these numbers when you order parts. File the identification numbers in a secure place off the machine.

BEFORE DELIVERING THIS MACHINE, your dealer performed a predelivery inspection. After operating for the first 100 hours, schedule an after-sale inspection with your dealer to ensure best performance.

THIS ROUND BALER IS DESIGNED SOLELY for use in customary agricultural or similar operations ("INTENDED USE"). Use in any other way is considered as contrary to

the intended use. The manufacturer accepts no liability for damage or injury resulting from this misuse, and these risks must be borne solely by the user. Compliance with and strict adherence to the conditions of operation, service and repair as specified by the manufacturer also constitute essential elements for the intended use.

THIS ROUND BALER SHOULD BE OPERATED, serviced and repaired only by persons familiar with all its particular characteristics and acquainted with the relevant safety rules (accident prevention). The accident prevention regulations, all other generally recognized regulations on safety and occupational medicine and the road traffic regulations must be observed at all times. Any arbitrary modifications carried out on this round baler will relieve the manufacturer of all liability for any resulting damage or injury.

REGISTER USED PRODUCTS. If you purchased used John Deere products from an authorized John Deere dealer, the warranty registration information was updated by the dealer and requires no further information on your part.

If you purchased any used John Deere product from an auction, through a trader or from a farmer, please register it now. John Deere and John Deere dealers value their customer's safety and satisfaction. Your local John Deere dealer is best equipped to provide you superior levels of support for your machine. Please enter your product details and your address online, using the John Deere website corresponding to your country, and select the dealer of your choice.

CC03745,0001132 -19-19NOV13-1/1

Predelivery Inspection

The following checks, adjustments and service jobs were performed prior to delivery of the machine:

1. ☐ Wheel nuts have been tightened to specified torque. See Check Wheel Nut Torque in Preparing the Baler section.
2. ☐ Tire pressure has been checked and adjusted (if necessary). See Tire Inflation in Preparing the Baler section.
3. ☐ Tongue frame and trailer hitch fixing screws have been tightened to specified torque. See Yearly - Tongue Frame and Hitch in Lubrication and Maintenance section.
4. ☐ Gear case oil level checked and topped up (if necessary). See Lubrication and Maintenance section.
5. ☐ All grease fittings lubricated. See Lubrication and Maintenance section.
6. ☐ Chains are correctly tensioned and lubricated. See Lubrication and Maintenance and Service section.
7. ☐ Belt tracking checked. See Adjust Belt Tracking in Service section.
8. ☐ Baler belts are in contact with lower gate roll.
9. ☐ Switches and sensors correctly adjusted. See Service section.
10. ☐ Hydraulic hoses and connections have been checked and are free of leaks.
11. ☐ Paint and decals are smooth and neat.
12. ☐ Net roll tensioning springs set to 20.5 mm (0.8 in.). See Check Net Feed Roll Pressure (Test 3) in Service section.
13. ☐ The net knife has been wiped.
14. ☐ Talc to rubber coated net roll has been applied.
15. ☐ Battery harness has been installed (if necessary).
16. ☐ Test run of the machine has been made.
17. ☐ Gate opens and closes freely.
18. ☐ Monitor is functioning properly.
19. ☐ Hydraulic gate lock device is functioning properly.
20. ☐ The precutter device is functioning properly (if equipped).
21. ☐ Operator's manual has been given to customer.
22. ☐ All controls and safety rules have been explained to the customer.

Date:

Signature Dealer/Service Technician:

OUCC006,0001A27 -19-13FEB13-1/1

Contents

	Page		Page
Identification View			
Identification View.....	00-1	Gate Opening	10-3
		Pickup.....	10-3
Safety		Drive Chains	10-3
Recognize Safety Information	05-1	Hydraulic Accumulators.....	10-4
Follow Safety Instructions.....	05-1	Compressed Air Tank	10-4
Understand Signal Words.....	05-1	Tongue Frame Attaching Screws.....	10-4
Observe Road Traffic Regulations.....	05-2	Hitch Plate Attaching Screw	10-5
Store Attachments Safely	05-2		
Prepare for Emergencies.....	05-2	Preparing the Tractor	
Wear Protective Clothing.....	05-3	Adjusting Drawbar	15-1
Handling of Knives.....	05-3	Select Tractor PTO Speed.....	15-1
Check Machine Safety.....	05-3	Adjust Tractor Selective Control Valves.....	15-2
Stay Clear of Rotating Drivelines.....	05-4	Round Baler Electrical Circuit and	
Use Safety Lights and Devices.....	05-4	Control Power Supply Requirement	15-2
Use a Safety Chain.....	05-5	Install Virtual Terminal (Display)	
Observe Maximum Transport Speed.....	05-5	Portable Harness (If Equipped).....	15-3
Follow Tire Recommendations	05-5	Using Drawbar Shield.....	15-3
Service Tires Safely.....	05-6		
Check Ballast, Wheel Spacing and Tire		Preparing the Baler	
Inflation.....	05-6	Install Pickup Gauge Wheels.....	20-1
Operate Baler Safely	05-6	Select Net Roll.....	20-1
Operate Baler Safely on Slopes	05-7	Care of Net Roll	20-1
Operate Baler in Automation Mode Safely	05-7	Care of Net Tying Device.....	20-2
Fire Prevention	05-7	Load Net Roll.....	20-2
In Case of Fire	05-8	Select Twine	20-5
Secure Gate Safely	05-8	Care of Twine Ball	20-5
Service Machine Safely.....	05-8	Load Twine Boxes	20-6
Maximum Hydraulic Operating Pressure.....	05-8	Knot for Twine.....	20-6
Practice Safe Maintenance.....	05-9	Route Twine out of Boxes.....	20-7
Protect People and Animals	05-9	Route Twine Through Guides.....	20-8
Avoid High-Pressure Fluids	05-10	Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp.....	20-9
Service Machines Safely	05-10	Install Bondioli Telescoping Driveline	20-9
Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating.....	05-10	Tire Inflation.....	20-10
Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines	05-11	Check Wheel Nut Torque.....	20-11
Service Accumulator Systems Safely.....	05-11		
Avoid High-Pressure Jet on Safety Decals.....	05-11	Attaching and Detaching	
Avoid High-Pressure Jet on Cylinders.....	05-12	Adjust Tongue to Tractor Trailer Hitch	25-1
Dispose of Waste Properly	05-12	Adjust Tongue to Tractor Drawbar	25-4
		Connect Telescoping Driveline to	
Safety Signs		Tractor PTO Shaft	25-7
Pictorial Safety Signs.....	10-1	Telescoping Driveline Support.....	25-7
Operator's Manual	10-1	Connecting Safety Chain.....	25-8
Repair and Maintenance	10-1	Store Jackstand.....	25-8
Baler Drive Line	10-2	Connect to Tractor Hydraulic System.....	25-9
Raised Gate.....	10-2	Connect Hydraulic Brakes (If Equipped)	25-11
Gate Safety Lock.....	10-2	Connect Pneumatic Brakes (If Equipped)	25-12

Continued on next page

Original Instructions. All information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest information available at the time of publication. The right is reserved to make changes at any time without notice.

COPYRIGHT © 2015
John Deere GmbH & Co. KG Mannheim Regional Center
Zentralfunktionen
All rights reserved.
A John Deere ILLUSTRATION™ Manual
Previous Editions
Copyright © 2011, 2010, 2013

	Page
Connecting Seven-Terminal Trailer Socket	25-13
Connect Round Baler Wiring Harness.....	25-13
Detach Telescoping Driveline from Tractor PTO Shaft	25-14
Store Telescoping Driveline	25-14
Use Jackstand.....	25-15
Store Hydraulic Hoses.....	25-15

Transporting and Parking

Tow Baler on Public Roads.....	30-1
Recommended Warning Lights	30-1
Check Side Doors Are Locked	30-2
Move Pickup Gauge Wheels in Transport Position	30-2
Put Caster Gauge Wheels in Transport Position	30-3
Park the Machine (Baler with Hydraulic Brakes).....	30-3
Park the Machine (Baler with Air Brakes).....	30-3

Break-In Period

Break In Baler.....	32-1
After the First 10 Hours - Wheel Nut Torque	32-1
After the First 50 Hours - Gear Case.....	32-1
After the First 50 Hours - Wheel Nut Torque	32-1

Operating the Baler—General Purposes

Before Each Use of the Baler.....	35-1
Clean the Machine to Prevent Fire	35-1
In Case of Fire Take Following Action	35-1
Operate Pressurized Water Tank	35-2
Crop Preparation	35-3
Open and Close the Side Door.....	35-3
Gate Lock Valve	35-4
Adjust Pickup Height	35-4
Adjust Pickup Gauge Wheels.....	35-4
Adjust Pickup Caster Gauge Wheels	35-5
Adjust Short Crop Deflector.....	35-5
Adjust Windrow Compressor Roll.....	35-6
Select Number of Precutter Knives (if Equipped).....	35-6
Adjust Bale Density	35-7
Bale Density Gauge.....	35-7
Feed the Material.....	35-8
Operate the Baler in Short, Dry, Slick Crops	35-8
Operate the Baler in Cornstalks	35-8
Operate the Baler in Silage and Damp Crops	35-9
Rotate Baler by Hand	35-9
Unplug Baler.....	35-9
Adjust Twine Spacing	35-10
Adjust Twine Guide.....	35-10
Adjust Net Tying Stretch.....	35-11

Operating Baler Application

Baler Application Access	37-1
Units of Measure	37-1

	Page
Baler Main Page Display Description	37-2
Softkey Description.....	37-3
Baler Application Softkey Designation.....	37-3
Set Bale Diameter	37-9
Adjust Near Full Alarm Offset	37-10
Select Tying System	37-10
Select Tying Start Mode	37-11
Adjust Net Tying	37-12
Adjust Twine Tying.....	37-13
Manual Start of an Automatic Tying Cycle.....	37-15
Automatic Start of Tying Cycle	37-16
Operate Soft Core System	37-17
Guidelines to Form a Good Bale	37-19
Make a Bale with Bale Shape Indicators	37-21
Raise or Lower the Pickup.....	37-22
Retract or Engage Precutter Knives	37-22
Unplug Rotary Feeder	37-23
Customer and Field Counters.....	37-25
Task, Season and Machine Total Counters (Baler Up to Software Version 06.10).....	37-27
Season and Machine Total Counters (Baler from Software Version 07.12)	37-28

Operating Baler in Automation Mode

Operate Baler in Automation Mode Safely	38-1
Tractor-Implement Automation Prerequisites	38-1
Baler Automation Main Page Display Description	38-2
Automation Softkey Designation	38-2
Operate Baler in Automation Mode	38-3
Unplug Rotary Feeder in Automation Mode	38-5
Baler Automation Activation Key	38-5
Select Automation Level.....	38-6
Select Rear Gate Selective Control Valve	38-7
Automatic Tractor PTO Disengagement.....	38-8
Manual Bale Unload	38-9
Adjust Tractor Behavior	38-10
Automation Demonstration Mode	38-11
Automation States Pie	38-13
Automation Diagnostic.....	38-14
Automation Deactivation Message List	38-17

Attachments

Find Attachments.....	40-1
Knife Slot Filler Kit	40-1
Top Idler Roll Drive Kit.....	40-1
Battery Harness for Monitor.....	40-2
Monitor Support (6000, 7000 and 8000 Series Tractors Only)	40-2
Cab Wiring Harness for Monitor	40-3

Lubrication and Maintenance

Lubricating and Maintaining Machine Safely	45-1
Observe Service Intervals	45-1
Perform Lubrication and Maintenance.....	45-1
Grease.....	45-2

Continued on next page

Page	Page
High Viscosity Gear Case Oil	45-2
Multiluber Chain Oil	45-3
Alternative and Synthetic Lubricants	45-3
Lubricant Storage	45-3
Mixing of Lubricants	45-3
Chain Oiling Component Location	45-4
Adjust Oil Flow	45-5
As Required - Refill Multiluber Chain Oiling System Reservoir	45-5
As Required - Cleaning Oil Reservoir Filter	45-5
As Required - Clean Hydraulic Coupler Filters	45-6
As Required - Jackstand	45-6
Daily - Fire Prevention	45-7
Daily - Precutter Knives and Drop Floor	45-7
Daily - Check Belt Wires	45-8
After the First 10 Hours - Wheel Nut Torque	45-8
Every 10 Hours - Main Drive Chain Tensioner	45-9
Every 10 Hours - Baler with Walterscheid Standard Maintenance Telescoping Driveline and without Grease Bank	45-10
Every 10 Hours - Baler without Grease Bank	45-11
Every 10 Hours - Baler without Grease Bank	45-11
Every 10 Hours - Baler with Standard Grease Banks	45-12
Every 10 Hours - Baler with Extended Grease Banks	45-13
Every 30 Hours	45-14
Every 30 Hours - Tension Arm Fingers	45-15
Every 30 Hours - Baler without Grease Bank	45-15
Every 30 Hours - Baler with Standard or Extended Grease Banks	45-16
After the First 50 Hours - Wheel Nut Torque	45-16
After the First 50 Hours - Gear Case	45-17
Every 50 Hours - Baler with Walterscheid Extended Maintenance Telescoping Driveline	45-17
Every 50 Hours - Baler with Bondioli Telescoping Driveline	45-18
Weekly - Gear Case Oil Level	45-18
Weekly - Checking and Draining Air Brake Tank	45-19
Monthly - Check Park Brake	45-19
Monthly - Inspection of Pressurized Water Tank	45-20
Every 250 Hours - Baler with Walterscheid Extended Maintenance Telescoping Driveline	45-20
Every 500 Hours or Yearly - Drain and Refill Gear Case	45-21
Yearly - Check Wheel Nut Torque	45-21
Yearly - Air Brake Shafts	45-22
Yearly - Hydraulic Brake Shafts	45-23
Yearly - Air Brake Shoes (Baler from S.N. 120180)	45-24
Yearly - Hydraulic Brake Shoes (Baler from S.N. 120180)	45-24
Yearly - Brake Pivot	45-25
Yearly - Net Tying	45-26
Yearly - Tongue Frame and Hitch	45-27
Yearly - Gear Case	45-28
Yearly - Axle Bearings	45-28
Every 3 Years - Accumulators	45-29
Every 6 Years - Hydraulic Hoses	45-29
Every 10 Years - Accumulators	45-29
Troubleshooting	
Twine Tying	50-1
Feed Difficulties	50-3
Pickup Difficulties	50-4
Bale Quality	50-6
General Baler Difficulties	50-7
Silage Equipment Difficulties	50-9
Net Tying Equipment Difficulties	50-10
Chain Oiling System	50-13
Service	
Metric Bolt and Screw Torque Values	55-1
Before Each Service	55-1
Baler Roll Numbering	55-2
Use Genuine John Deere Parts	55-2
Charge Pressurized Water Tank	55-3
Adjust Pickup Drive Chains	55-5
Adjust Bottom Roll Drive Chain	55-5
Adjust Main Drive Chain	55-6
Adjust Upper Drive Roll Chain	55-6
Adjust Upper Drive Roll Chain Guide	55-7
Adjust Rotary Feeder Drive Chain	55-7
Adjust Top Idler Roll Drive Chain	55-7
Replace Precutter Knives	55-8
Sharpen Precutter Knives	55-9
Replace Pickup Drive Shear Bolt	55-9
Bleed Chain Oiling System Pump	55-9
Adjust Brushes	55-10
Adjust Belt Tracking	55-11
Repairing Belts	55-12
Preparing Damaged Belts	55-12
Install Mato Belt Hooks	55-14
Install Belts	55-15
Route Belts Through the Baler	55-16
Hook Belt Ends (Mato Type)	55-17
Adjust Starter Roll (No. 1) Scraper	55-17
Adjust Scraper of Lower Rear Gate Roll (No. 8)	55-17
Adjust Lower Front Gate Roll (No. 9) Scraper	55-18
Adjust Pickup Auger Scrapers	55-18
Adjust Twine Cutter Anvil	55-19
Adjust Twine Arm Travel	55-20
Set Center Tension Arm Roll Position (No. 12)	55-21
Locate Baler Electrical Components (Baler up to S.N. 134999)	55-22
Locate Baler Electrical Components (Baler from S.N. 135000)	55-24

Continued on next page

Page	Page
Identify Sensor Detection Area (Baler from S.N. 135000).....	55-25
Adjust Oversize Bale Switch SB312.....	55-25
Adjust Oversize Bale Sensor SB317.....	55-26
Adjust Gate Latch Switches SB333 and SB334.....	55-26
Adjust Gate Latch Sensors SB336 and SB337.....	55-27
Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor SB341 or SB342.....	55-27
Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor SB362.....	55-28
Adjust Cleaning Auger Sensor SB363.....	55-28
Adjust Net Cut Switch SB412.....	55-29
Adjust Net Cut Sensor SB414.....	55-29
Adjust Twine Pulley Sensors SB421 and SB422.....	55-30
Adjust Drop Floor Sensor SB532.....	55-30
Adjust Precutter Knife Sensor SB553.....	55-31
Check Net Tying Device.....	55-32
Checking Knife and Counterknife Position (Test 1).....	55-32
Checking Free Motion of Swinging Bar (Test 2).....	55-34
Check Net Feed Roll Pressure (Test 3).....	55-35
Check No. 8 Roll Position (Test 4).....	55-36
Checking Drive Belt Tension (Test 5).....	55-37
Checking Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6).....	55-38
Checking Tension Arms (Test 7).....	55-40
Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 8).....	55-41
Remove and Install Net Feed Roll Drive Belt.....	55-43
Removing and Installing Net Knife.....	55-43
Removing Net Wrapped Around Feed Rolls.....	55-44
Adjust Gate Latch.....	55-44
Adjust Gate Latch Stop.....	55-45
Round Baler Hanging Points.....	55-45
Remove and Install Wheel.....	55-46
Repair Gauge Wheel.....	55-46
Baler Application Service	
Warning Screens.....	57-1
Recent Problems.....	57-2
Test Tractor Battery Voltage.....	57-3
Diagnostic Trouble Code List.....	57-4
Test Sensors and Switches.....	57-8
Test Electro-Hydraulic Components.....	57-9
Test Actuator Electrical Consumption.....	57-10
Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311.....	57-12
Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322.....	57-14
Calibrate Gate Position Potentiometer RB331.....	57-15
Calibrate Twine Tying Actuator MB421.....	57-16
Adjust Bale Shape Sensitivity.....	57-17
Baler Rotation Speed Sensor.....	57-18
Adjust Task Controller (Baler Up to Software Version 06.10).....	57-19
Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor SB341 or SB342.....	57-20
Load Languages (Monitor with Memory Card Reader or USB Port Only).....	57-21
Switch Baler Application from Current Virtual Terminal to Another (Baler Up to Software Version 06.10).....	57-22
Switch Baler Application from Current Virtual Terminal to Another (Baler from Software Version 07.12).....	57-23
Software Parameters.....	57-24
Storage	
Prepare the Baler for Storage.....	60-1
Store Baler at the End of Season.....	60-1
Prepare for Beginning of Season.....	60-2
Specifications	
Specifications for 864 Baler.....	65-1
EC Declaration of Conformity.....	65-2
Customs Union—EAC.....	65-3
Serial Numbers	
Serial Number Plate.....	70-1
Serial Number Plate Description.....	70-1
Baler Serial Number Record.....	70-1
Keep Proof of Ownership.....	70-2
Keep Machines Secure.....	70-2

Identification View

Identification View



CC1031621

864 Premium Round Baler

OUCC006,0001544 -19-12OCT09-1/1

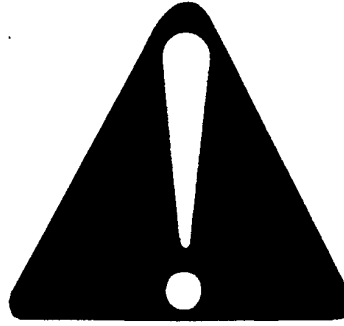
CC1031621 —UN—09OCT09

Safety

Recognize Safety Information

This is a safety-alert symbol. When you see this symbol on your machine or in this manual, be alert to the potential for personal injury.

Follow recommended precautions and safe operating practices.



TB1389 —UN—28JUN13

DX,ALERT -19-29SEP98-1/1

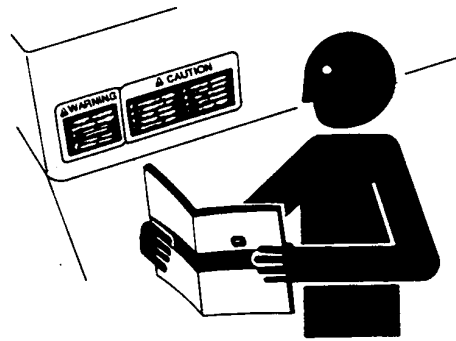
Follow Safety Instructions

Carefully read all safety messages in this manual and on your machine safety signs. Keep safety signs in good condition. Replace missing or damaged safety signs. Be sure new equipment components and repair parts include the current safety signs. Replacement safety signs are available from your John Deere dealer.

There can be additional safety information contained on parts and components sourced from suppliers that is not reproduced in this operator's manual.

Learn how to operate the machine and how to use controls properly. Do not let anyone operate without instruction.

Keep your machine in proper working condition. Unauthorized modifications to the machine may impair the function and/or safety and affect machine life.



TS201 —UN—15APR13

If you do not understand any part of this manual and need assistance, contact your John Deere dealer.

DX,READ -19-16JUN09-1/1

Understand Signal Words

A signal word—DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION—is used with the safety-alert symbol. DANGER identifies the most serious hazards.

DANGER or WARNING safety signs are located near specific hazards. General precautions are listed on CAUTION safety signs. CAUTION also calls attention to safety messages in this manual.

▲ DANGER

▲ WARNING

▲ CAUTION

TS187 —19—30SEP88

DX,SIGNAL -19-03MAR93-1/1

Observe Road Traffic Regulations

Always observe local road traffic regulations when using public roads.



H28930 —UN—30JUN89

FX,ROAD -19-01MAY91-1/1

Store Attachments Safely

Stored attachments such as dual wheels, cage wheels, and loaders can fall and cause serious injury or death.

Securely store attachments and implements to prevent falling. Keep playing children and bystanders away from storage area.



TS219 —UN—23AUG88

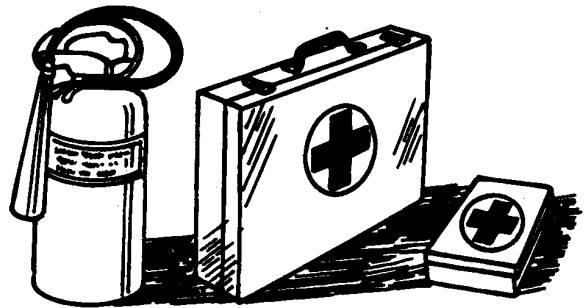
DX,STORE -19-03MAR93-1/1

Prepare for Emergencies

Be prepared if a fire starts.

Keep a first aid kit and fire extinguisher handy.

Keep emergency numbers for doctors, ambulance service, hospital, and fire department near your telephone.



TS291 —UN—15APR13

DX,FIRE2 -19-03MAR93-1/1

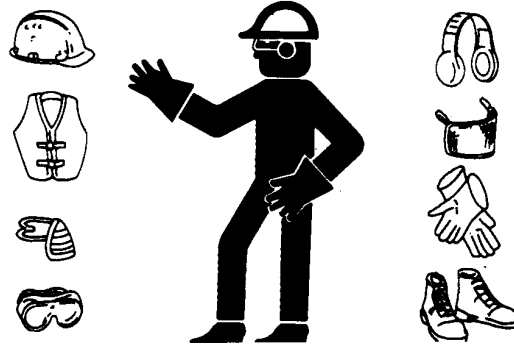
Wear Protective Clothing

Wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate to the job.

Prolonged exposure to loud noise can cause impairment or loss of hearing.

Wear a suitable hearing protective device such as earmuffs or earplugs to protect against objectionable or uncomfortable loud noises.

Operating equipment safely requires the full attention of the operator. Do not wear radio or music headphones while operating machine.

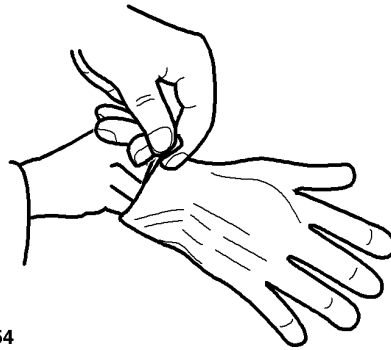


TS206 —UN—15APR13

DX,WEAR -19-10SEP90-1/1

Handling of Knives

Prevent personal injury by wearing safety gloves to handle knives.



CC1026954

CC1026928 —UN—26JAN05

OUCC006,0000DB6 -19-04JAN05-1/1

Check Machine Safety

Always check the road and general operating safety of the machine before using.

FX,READY -19-28FEB91-1/1

Stay Clear of Rotating Drivelines

Entanglement in rotating driveline can cause serious injury or death.

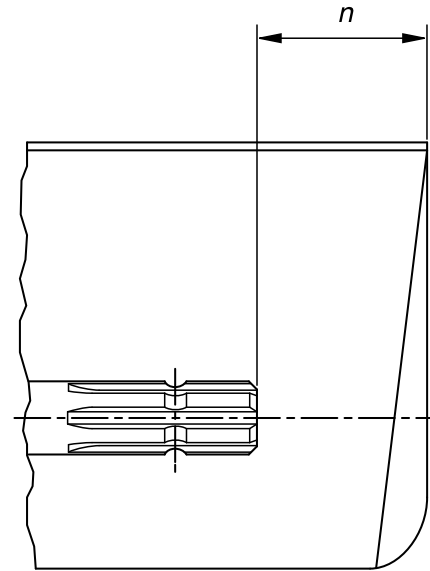
Keep tractor master shield and driveline shields in place at all times. Make sure rotating shields turn freely.

Wear close fitting clothing. Stop the engine and be sure that PTO driveline is stopped before making adjustments, connections, or cleaning out PTO driven equipment.

Do not install any adapter device between the tractor and the primary implement PTO drive shaft that will allow a 1000 rpm tractor shaft to power a 540 rpm implement at speeds higher than 540 rpm.

Do not install any adapter device that results in a portion of the rotating implement shaft, tractor shaft, or the adapter to be unguarded. The tractor master shield shall overlap the end of the splined shaft and the added adaptor device as outlined in the table.

PTO Type	Diameter	Splines	$n \pm 5 \text{ mm (0.20 in.)}$
1	35 mm (1.378 in.)	6	85 mm (3.35 in.)
2	35 mm (1.378 in.)	21	85 mm (3.35 in.)
3	45 mm (1.772 in.)	20	100 mm (4.00 in.)



TS1644—UN—22AUG95

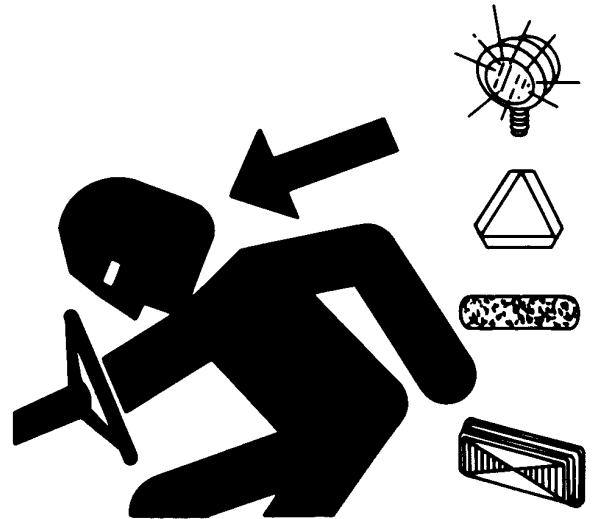
H96219—UN—29APR10

DX,PTO -19-30JUN10-1/1

Use Safety Lights and Devices

Prevent collisions between other road users, slow moving tractors with attachments or towed equipment, and self-propelled machines on public roads. Frequently check for traffic from the rear, especially in turns, and use turn signal lights.

Use headlights, flashing warning lights, and turn signals day and night. Follow local regulations for equipment lighting and marking. Keep lighting and marking visible, clean, and in good working order. Replace or repair lighting and marking that has been damaged or lost. An implement safety lighting kit is available from your John Deere dealer.



TS951—UN—12APR90

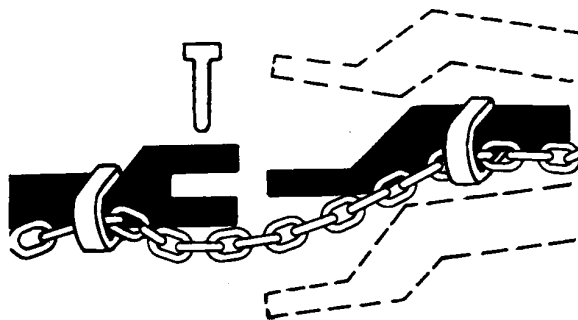
DX,FLASH -19-07JUL99-1/1

Use a Safety Chain

A safety chain will help control drawn equipment should it accidentally separate from the drawbar.

Using the appropriate adapter parts, attach the chain to the tractor drawbar support or other specified anchor location. Provide only enough slack in the chain to permit turning.

See your John Deere dealer for a chain with a strength rating equal to or greater than the gross weight of the towed machine. Do not use safety chain for towing.



TS217 —UN—23AUG88

DX,CHAIN -19-03MAR93-1/1

Observe Maximum Transport Speed

IMPORTANT: Maximum transport speed is determined by local road traffic regulations and speed capability of this implement.

Always observe local road traffic regulations when driving on public roads.

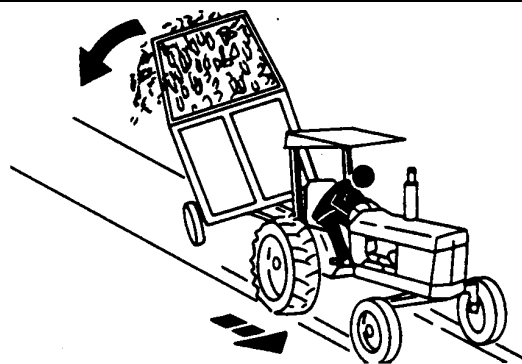
NOTE: See your John Deere dealer for more information.

Do not exceed implement gross weight (PTAC) when towing this implement at transport speed.

Some tractors are capable of operating at speeds that exceed the maximum transport speed capability of this implement. Regardless of the maximum speed capability of the tractor being used to tow this implement, do not exceed the implement's maximum transport speed.

Exceeding the implement's maximum transport speed can result in:

- Loss of control of the tractor/implement combination



TS216 —UN—23AUG88

- Reduced or no braking ability
- Implement tire failure
- Damage to the implement structure or its components

Use additional caution and reduce speed when towing under adverse surface conditions, when turning, and when on inclines.

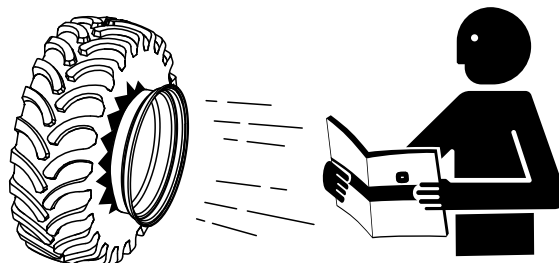
OUC007,00018D5 -19-15DEC10-1/1

Follow Tire Recommendations

Keep your machine in proper working order.

Use only prescribed tire sizes with correct ratings and inflate to the pressure specified in this manual.

Use of other than prescribed tires may decrease stability, affect steering, result in premature tire failure, or cause other durability or safety issues.



H111235 —UN—13MAY14

DX,TIRE,INFO -19-19MAY14-1/1

Service Tires Safely

Explosive separation of a tire and rim parts can cause serious injury or death.

Do not attempt to mount a tire unless you have the proper equipment and experience to perform the job.

Always maintain the correct tire pressure. Do not inflate the tires above the recommended pressure. Never weld or heat a wheel and tire assembly. The heat can cause an increase in air pressure resulting in a tire explosion. Welding can structurally weaken or deform the wheel.

When inflating tires, use a clip-on chuck and extension hose long enough to allow you to stand to one side and NOT in front of or over the tire assembly. Use a safety cage if available.

Check wheels for low pressure, cuts, bubbles, damaged rims, or missing lug bolts and nuts.



RXA0103438 —UN—11JUN09

DX,WW,RIMS -19-19AUG09-1/1

Check Ballast, Wheel Spacing and Tire Inflation

Make sure ballast, wheel spacing and tire inflation are sufficient to ensure tractor and machine stability in all conditions, especially when operating on hilly fields or in other adverse conditions. Refer to the tractor operator's manual.



CC1031622 —UN—29MAY09

OUCC006,0001546 -19-29MAY09-1/1

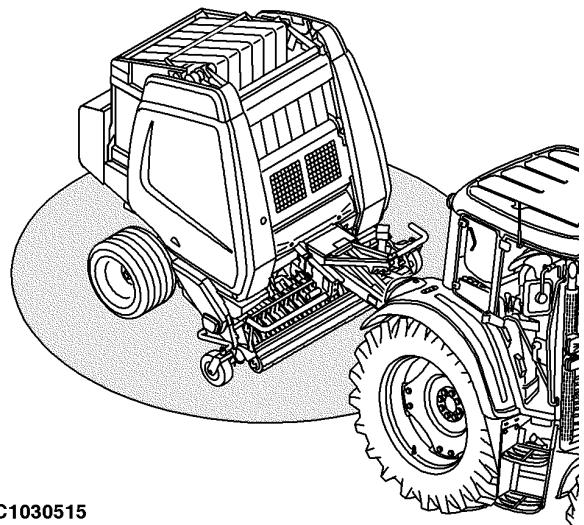
Operate Baler Safely

To avoid injury or death by being pulled into the machine:

DO NOT attempt to feed crop or twine into baler or unplug feed area WHILE BALER IS RUNNING. The baler feeds material faster than you can release it.

Disengage PTO and shut off engine.

Stand clear of baler at all times when machine is operating.



CC1030515

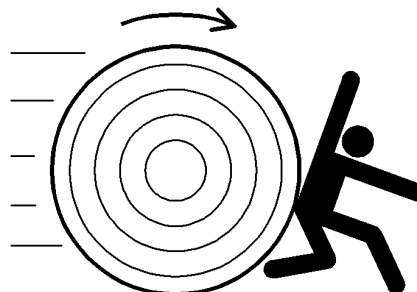
CC1030515 —UN—06APR09

OUCC006,000139F -19-06FEB08-1/1

Operate Baler Safely on Slopes

Be especially careful when operating on hillsides. The baler may tip sideways if it strikes a hole, ditch, or other irregularity.

To prevent injury or damage from a rolling bale, discharge bales on level ground or in such a manner that the bale will not roll.



CC1038683

CC1038683 —UN—19NOV12

OUC006,00019C8 -19-16NOV12-1/1

Operate Baler in Automation Mode Safely

The Baler Automation system is intended to aid the operator in performing field operations more efficiently. The operator is always responsible for controlling the machine's path and behavior as well as the behavior of the bale. To prevent injury to operator and bystanders,

always remain alert and pay attention to the surrounding environment. Do not rely on the system to stop the vehicle when an obstacle or bystander is present.

Read and understand Operating Baler in Automation Mode section before using automation.

OUC006,00015C1 -19-18JAN10-1/1

Fire Prevention

To reduce risk of fire, follow these guidelines, especially in dry crop conditions:

- Clean the machine several times during the baling day depending on baling conditions, see [Clean the Machine to Prevent Fire](#) in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
 - Do not smoke around the baler or in the fields.
 - Never stop baling with crop material in the bale chamber.
 - Promptly eject bales after they have been tied.
 - Do not use the machine to transport bales.
 - Use extreme care if it is necessary to park the machine in a field. Whenever possible, park the machine on bare ground or in an area surrounded by bare ground.
 - Before leaving the machine which has been operating, verify that there are no areas which are hot enough to start a fire.
 - Do not leave the machine unattended near bales which have been baled wet, because spontaneous combustion can occur.
- Check regularly the condition of bearings, see [Daily - Fire Prevention](#) in Lubrication and Maintenance section.



TS227 —UN—15APR13

If noticeable changes in machine performance occur which indicate a part is beginning to fail, stop baling immediately and investigate the cause of any sounds, smells, or sights which are unusual.

- Equip the machine with 9.5 L or more pressurized water tank, see [Operate Pressurized Water Tank](#) in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
- Follow the fire prevention guidelines for service work, see [Before Each Service](#) in Service section.

DC82261,00004DF -19-14AUG14-1/1

In Case of Fire

Stop work immediately at first sign of trouble. This may be a scorched smell, an unusual sound, or the sight of smoke or flame.

CAUTION: Do not risk personal injury. If a fire is too far advanced, do not try to extinguish it. Evacuate as fast as possible the area. Call the fire department.

If you can safely extinguish the fire:

- Position the tractor upwind from the machine to prevent the fire from overtaking the tractor.
- Open the baler gate to eject any crop material from the bale chamber, and drive away from this material.
- Use pressurized water tank or other source of extinguishing agent and direct extinguishing agent at



the base of the flames, and also cool adjacent parts. Do not position yourself under an open baler gate. It may fall if the machine is on fire.

DC82261,00004DA -19-13AUG14-1/1

TS227 —UN—15APR13

Secure Gate Safely

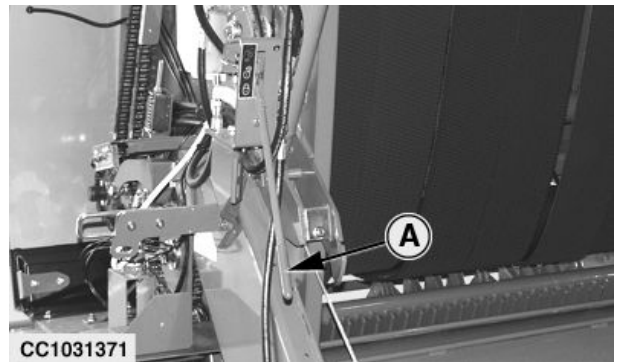
Position gate lock device lever (A) in locked position before working on or around baler with gate in raised position. Refer to Operating the Baler—General Purposes section for gate stop instructions.

To avoid injury, stay clear of gate while it is being raised and lowered.

Make sure area is clear of bystanders before operating the gate.

Remove foreign objects from machine.

A—Gate lock device lever



CC1031371

CC1031371 —UN—31MAR09

OUCC006,0001545 -19-29MAY09-1/1

Service Machine Safely

Use a spanner to turn hexagonal gear case output shaft (A) to aid in servicing. Never use any type of tool or spanner on shaft while tractor engine is running. Always remove tool from shaft as soon as you have finished using it.

A—Gear case output shaft



CC1030518

CC1030518 —UN—23SEP08

OUCC006,00013A2 -19-25NOV08-1/1

Maximum Hydraulic Operating Pressure

The baler is designed for a maximum hydraulic operating pressure of 20000 kPa (200 bar, 2900 psi).

Do not connect baler to a tractor with a maximum hydraulic operating pressure over 20000 kPa (200 bar, 2900 psi).

OUCC006,0000487 -19-05SEP01-1/1

Practice Safe Maintenance

Understand service procedure before doing work. Keep area clean and dry.

Never lubricate, service, or adjust machine while it is moving. Keep hands, feet, and clothing from power-driven parts. Disengage all power and operate controls to relieve pressure. Lower equipment to the ground. Stop the engine. Remove the key. Allow machine to cool.

Securely support any machine elements that must be raised for service work.

Keep all parts in good condition and properly installed. Fix damage immediately. Replace worn or broken parts. Remove any buildup of grease, oil, or debris.

On self-propelled equipment, disconnect battery ground cable (-) before making adjustments on electrical systems or welding on machine.

On towed implements, disconnect wiring harnesses from tractor before servicing electrical system components or welding on machine.



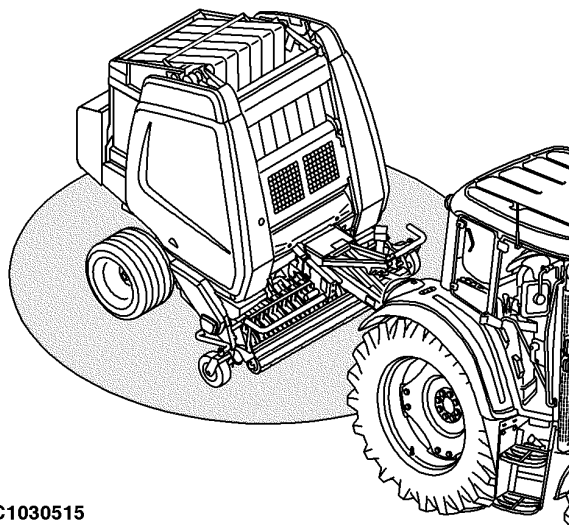
TS218 —UN—23AUG88

DX,SERV -19-17FEB99-1/1

Protect People and Animals

Never allow anyone to walk or work near a running machine.

Be sure that people, livestock or pets are not standing in the working area of the machine while operating.



CC1030515

CC1030515 —UN—06APR09

OUC006,00013A1 -19-06FEB08-1/1

Avoid High-Pressure Fluids

Inspect hydraulic hoses periodically – at least once per year – for leakage, kinking, cuts, cracks, abrasion, blisters, corrosion, exposed wire braid or any other signs of wear or damage.

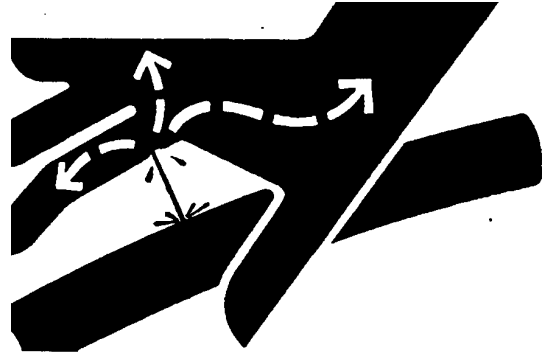
Replace worn or damaged hose assemblies immediately with John Deere approved replacement parts.

Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.

Avoid the hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines. Tighten all connections before applying pressure.

Search for leaks with a piece of cardboard. Protect hands and body from high-pressure fluids.

If an accident occurs, see a doctor immediately. Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within



a few hours or gangrene may result. Doctors unfamiliar with this type of injury should reference a knowledgeable medical source. Such information is available in English from Deere & Company Medical Department in Moline, Illinois, U.S.A., by calling 1-800-822-8262 or +1 309-748-5636.

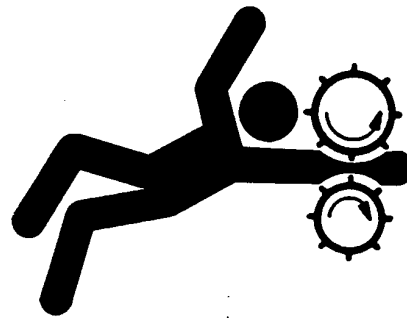
DX,FLUID -19-12OCT11-1/1

X9811—UN—23AUG88

Service Machines Safely

Tie long hair behind your head. Do not wear a necktie, scarf, loose clothing, or necklace when you work near machine tools or moving parts. If these items were to get caught, severe injury could result.

Remove rings and other jewelry to prevent electrical shorts and entanglement in moving parts.



DX,LOOSE -19-04JUN90-1/1

TS228—UN—23AUG88

Remove Paint Before Welding or Heating

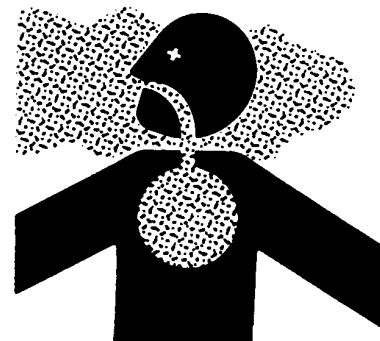
Avoid potentially toxic fumes and dust.

Hazardous fumes can be generated when paint is heated by welding, soldering, or using a torch.

Remove paint before heating:

- Remove paint a minimum of 100 mm (4 in.) from area to be affected by heating. If paint cannot be removed, wear an approved respirator before heating or welding.
- If you sand or grind paint, avoid breathing the dust. Wear an approved respirator.
- If you use solvent or paint stripper, remove stripper with soap and water before welding. Remove solvent or paint stripper containers and other flammable material from area. Allow fumes to disperse at least 15 minutes before welding or heating.

Do not use a chlorinated solvent in areas where welding will take place.



Do all work in an area that is well ventilated to carry toxic fumes and dust away.

Dispose of paint and solvent properly.

DX,PAINT -19-24JUL02-1/1

TS220—UN—15APR13

Avoid Heating Near Pressurized Fluid Lines

Flammable spray can be generated by heating near pressurized fluid lines, resulting in severe burns to yourself and bystanders. Do not heat by welding, soldering, or using a torch near pressurized fluid lines or other flammable materials. Pressurized lines can accidentally burst when heat goes beyond the immediate flame area.



TS953 —UN—15MAY90

DX,TORCH -19-10DEC04-1/1

Service Accumulator Systems Safely

Escaping fluid or gas from systems with pressurized accumulators that are used in air conditioning, hydraulic, and air brake systems can cause serious injury. Extreme heat can cause the accumulator to burst, and pressurized lines can be accidentally cut. Do not weld or use a torch near a pressurized accumulator or pressurized line.

Relieve pressure from the pressurized system before removing accumulator.

Relieve pressure from the hydraulic system before removing accumulator. Never attempt to relieve hydraulic system or accumulator pressure by loosening a fitting.

Accumulators cannot be repaired.



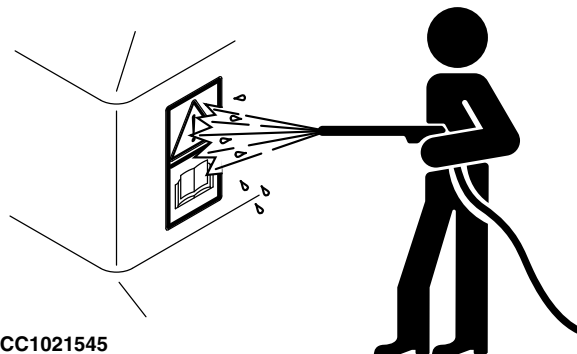
TS281 —UN—15APR13

DX,WW,ACCLA2 -19-22AUG03-1/1

Avoid High-Pressure Jet on Safety Decals

Pressurized water can remove or damage safety decals. Avoid to direct high-pressure jet on safety decals.

Immediately replace missing or damaged safety decals. Replacement safety decals are available from your John Deere dealer.



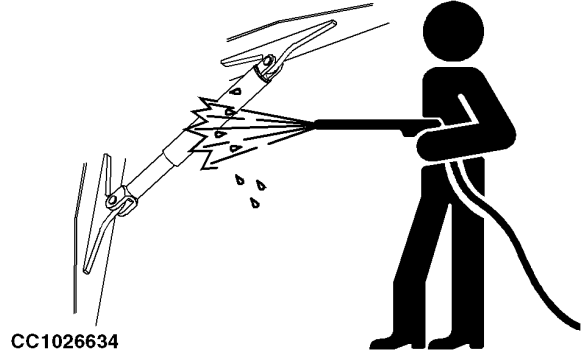
CC1021545

CC1021545 —UN—23APR02

CC03745,0000FD2 -19-08SEP09-1/1

Avoid High-Pressure Jet on Cylinders

Pressurized water can damage cylinders. Avoid to direct high-pressure jet on cylinders.



CC1026634

CC1026634 —UN—03DEC04

CC03745,0000FD3 -19-08SEP09-1/1

Dispose of Waste Properly

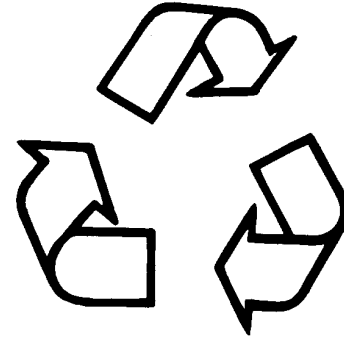
Improperly disposing of waste can threaten the environment and ecology. Potentially harmful waste used with John Deere equipment include such items as oil, fuel, coolant, brake fluid, filters, and batteries.

Use leakproof containers when draining fluids. Do not use food or beverage containers that may mislead someone into drinking from them.

Do not pour waste onto the ground, down a drain, or into any water source.

Air conditioning refrigerants escaping into the air can damage the Earth's atmosphere. Government regulations may require a certified air conditioning service center to recover and recycle used air conditioning refrigerants.

Inquire on the proper way to recycle or dispose of waste from your local environmental or recycling center, or from your John Deere dealer.



TS1133 —UN—15APR13

DX,DRAIN -19-03MAR93-1/1

Safety Signs

Pictorial Safety Signs

At several important places of this machine safety signs are affixed intended to signify potential danger. The hazard is identified by a pictorial in a warning triangle. An adjacent pictorial provides information how to avoid personal injury. These safety signs, their placement on the machine and a brief explanatory text are shown below.

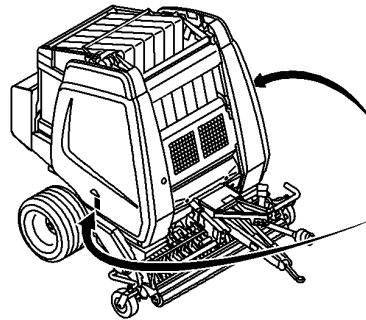


TS231 —19—07OCT88

FX,WBZ -19-19NOV91-1/1

Operator's Manual

This operator's manual contains all important information necessary for safe machine operation. Carefully observe all safety rules to avoid accidents.



CC1030443

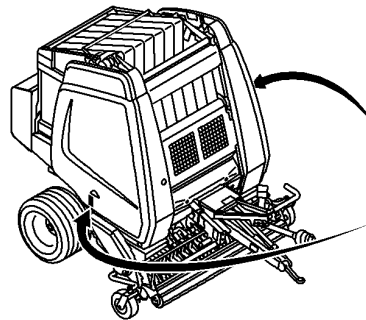


CC1030443 —UN—22OCT08

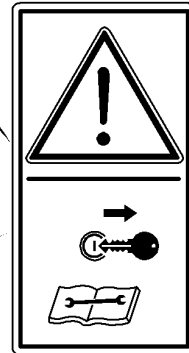
OUCC006,0001391 -19-30JAN08-1/1

Repair and Maintenance

Before carrying out repair and maintenance work, shut off tractor engine and remove key.



CC1030444

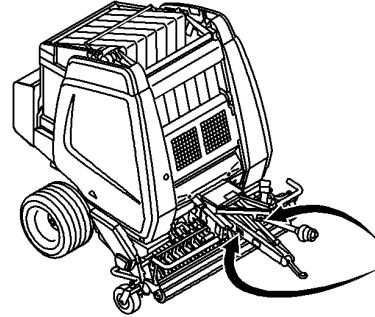


CC1030444 —UN—22OCT08

OUCC006,0001392 -19-30JAN08-1/1

Baler Drive Line

Stay clear of rotating drive line to avoid personal injury.



CC1030445



CC1030445 —UN—22OCT08

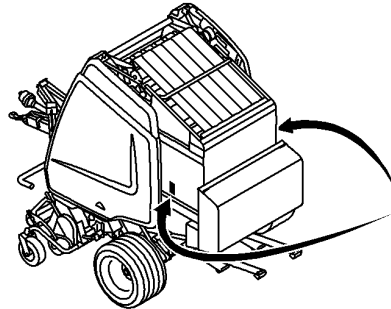
OUC006,0001393 -19-30JAN08-1/1

Raised Gate

Do not allow anyone to walk or work under a raised gate.

Stay clear of raised gate as it could close faster than you can move away and may result in death or serious injury.

Always engage safety lock before working on or around baler with gate in raised position.



CC1030446



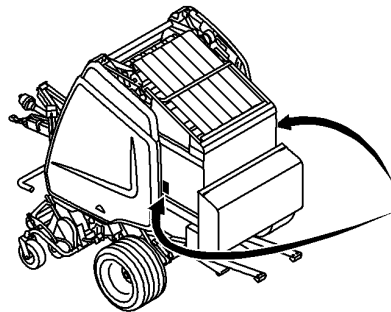
CC1030446 —UN—06NOV08

DC82261,0000475 -19-14MAY14-1/1

Gate Safety Lock

Always engage the gate safety lock before working under or around the gate in raised position.

Stand clear before unlocking the gate safety lock.



CC1030447



CC1030447 —UN—06NOV08

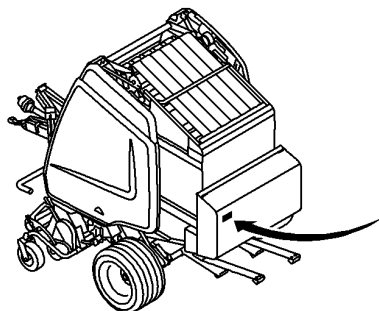
OUC006,0001395 -19-30JAN08-1/1

Gate Opening

Do not allow anyone to walk or work at the rear of the machine.

Stay clear of rear of the baler while the gate is raising.

The gate opens faster than you can move away which may result in death or serious injury.



CC1030508



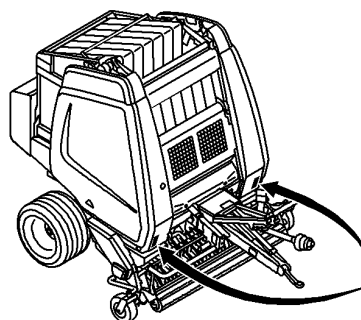
CC1030508 —UN—06NOV08

OUCC006,0001396 -19-30JAN08-1/1

Pickup

Rotating pickup can catch you faster than you can move away.

Stay clear of rotating pickup as it may result in death or serious injury.



CC1030509

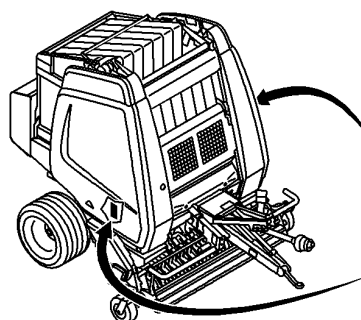


CC1030509 —UN—22OCT08

OUCC006,0001397 -19-30JAN08-1/1

Drive Chains

Do not open or remove guard when the baler is running.



CC1030510

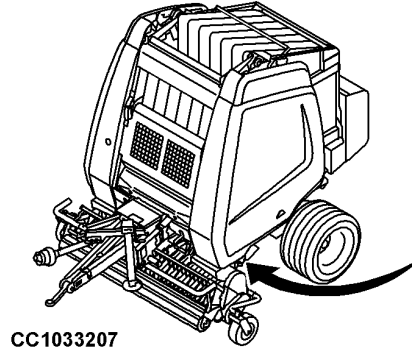


CC1030510 —UN—22OCT08

OUCC006,0001398 -19-06FEB08-1/1

Hydraulic Accumulators

The hydraulic accumulators are under pressure. Have the accumulators removed and maintained by your John Deere dealer only. The dealer must follow the instructions in the Technical Manual.

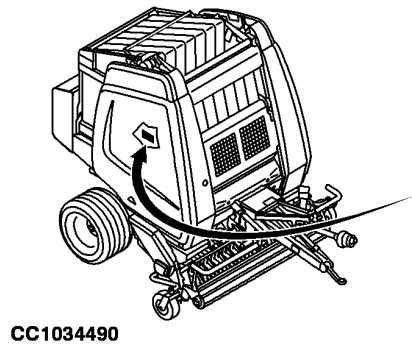


CC1033207 —UN—15OCT10

OUC006,00016C4 -19-04JAN11-1/1

Compressed Air Tank

The compressed air tank is under pressure. Have the tank removed and repaired by a John Deere dealer only.

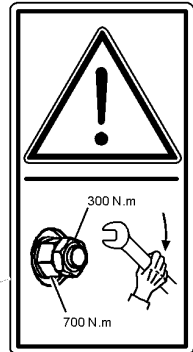
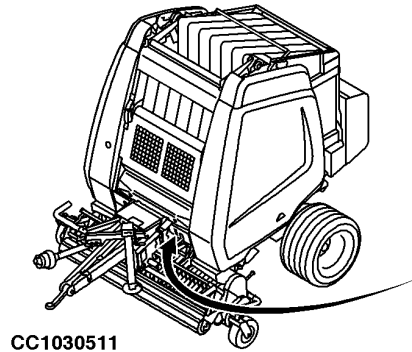


CC1034490 —UN—06JUL11

OUC006,00017CF -19-08JUN11-1/1

Tongue Frame Attaching Screws

Retighten tongue frame attaching screws at specified intervals.

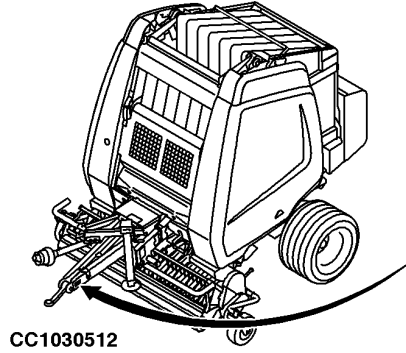


CC1030511 —UN—22OCT08

OUC006,0001399 -19-30JAN08-1/1

Hitch Plate Attaching Screw

Retighten hitch plate attaching screw at specified intervals.



CC1030512—UN—26NOV08

OUCC006,000139A -19-30JAN08-1/1

Preparing the Tractor

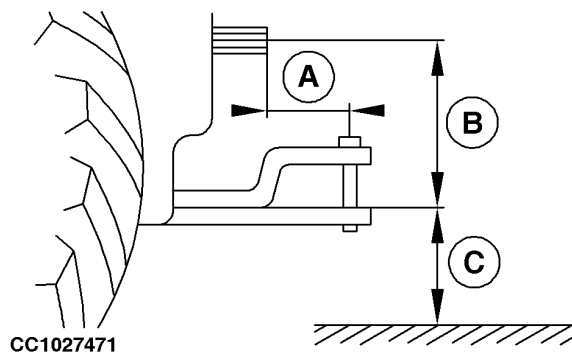
Adjusting Drawbar

IMPORTANT: Before attaching baler, be sure to adjust drawbar. Replace all shields.

Vertically align drawbar hitch pin hole with centerline of tractor PTO shaft.

Set drawbar to the following specifications:

Specification	
End of PTO shaft to drawbar hitch pin hole axis (A)—Distance.....	355 mm (14 in.)
PTO shaft centerline to drawbar upper face (B)—Distance.....	150 — 305 mm (6 — 12 in.)
Ground to drawbar upper face (C)—Distance.....	330 — 510 mm (13 — 20 in.)



A—355 mm (14 in.)
B—150 — 305 mm (6 — 12 in.)
C—330 — 510 mm (13 — 20 in.)

OUC006,0000EF4 -19-19JUL05-1/1

Select Tractor PTO Speed

NOTE: Refer to tag on the front of the baler to select tractor PTO speed.

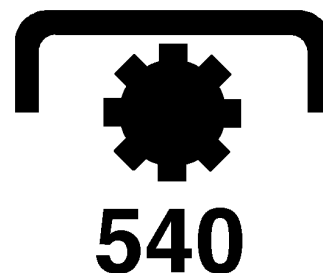
Baler with 540 rpm PTO speed:

IMPORTANT: Under no circumstances should a baler equipped for 540 rpm PTO drive be operated with a tractor at 750 or 1000 rpm PTO speed.

The tractor PTO shaft size must be 3.5 cm (1-3/8 in.).

Always operate the baler with tractor PTO speed at 540 rpm.

Refer to the tractor Operator's Manual to install the appropriate PTO shaft and set the PTO speed.



CC1020007

FS62804,000034F -19-15JUN09-1/2

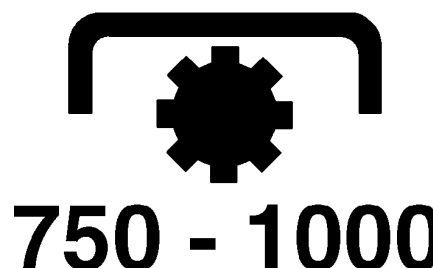
Baler with 750-1000 PTO speed:

IMPORTANT: Do not exceed 1000 rpm PTO speed. Overspeed will damage baler.

The tractor PTO shaft size must be 3.5 cm (1-3/8 in.).

Always operate the baler with tractor PTO speed between 750 and 1000 rpm.

Refer to the tractor Operator's Manual to install the appropriate PTO shaft and set the PTO speed.



CC1031620

FS62804,000034F -19-15JUN09-2/2

Adjust Tractor Selective Control Valves

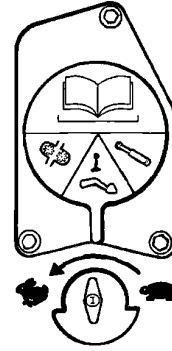
Set tractor selective control valves to approximately 40 L/min (10.55 US gal/min) flow. This flow should allow the gate to open within approximately 5 seconds. See your tractor operator's manual to make adjustments.

For 3000 Series tractors, make sure the SCV lever is in neutral position when SCV is not used.

For 5000 Series tractors, do not push SCV lever fully forward to allow lever to return to neutral when released.

For 6000 and 7000 Series tractors, adjust SCV lever for no detent, so lever returns to neutral when released.

For tractors with detent time, set detent time to 0.



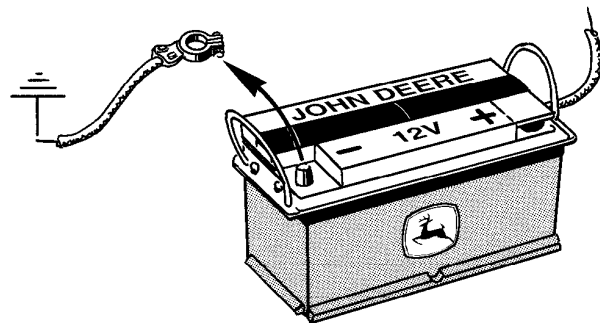
CC000833

CC000833 —UN—05APR95

OUC006,00013A3 -19-02DEC08-1/1

Round Baler Electrical Circuit and Control Power Supply Requirement

The round baler electrical circuit and control are designed for use on 12 V electrical systems with negative ground.



CC1020363

CC1020363 —UN—23AUG01

CC03745,0000288 -19-23AUG01-1/1

Install Virtual Terminal (Display) Portable Harness (If Equipped)

IMPORTANT: The battery harness (C) must be connected to the tractor as shown.

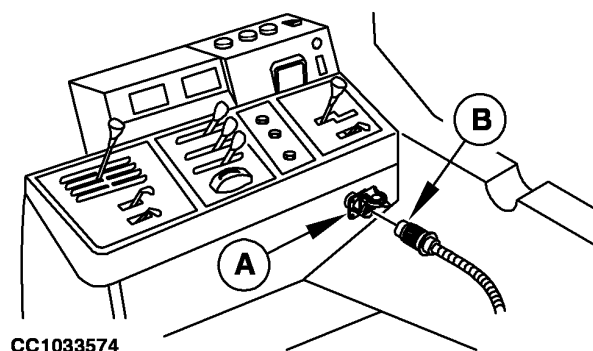
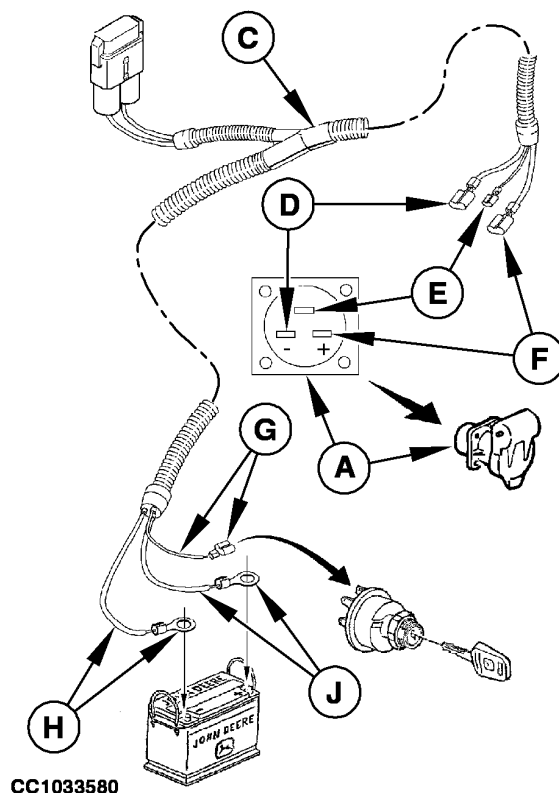
If the tractor is not equipped with the convenient power outlet (A), see your John Deere dealer.

Connect the virtual terminal (display) to the portable harness.

Connect portable harness plug (B) to the convenient power outlet (A).

Place the connector for the machine harness out of the cab.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| A—Convenience Power Outlet | F—Red (6.0 mm ²) |
| B—Portable Harness Plug | G—Red (Positive) Wire (1.5 mm ²) |
| C—Battery Harness | H—Black (Negative) Wire (6.0 mm ²) |
| D—Black (6.0 mm ²) | J—Red (Positive) Wire (6.0 mm ²) |
| E—Red (1.5 mm ²) | |



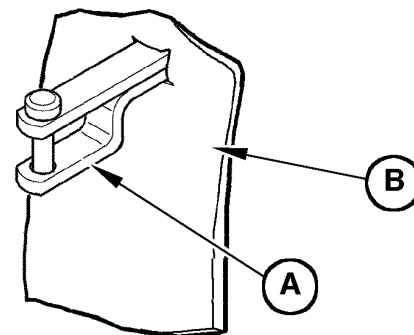
AP00976,0000142 -19-16DEC10-1/1

CC1033580 —UN—05NOV10

CC1033574 —UN—05NOV10

Using Drawbar Shield

If a tractor drawbar (A) catches and disturbs the windrow under the tractor, a drawbar shield (B) can be used.

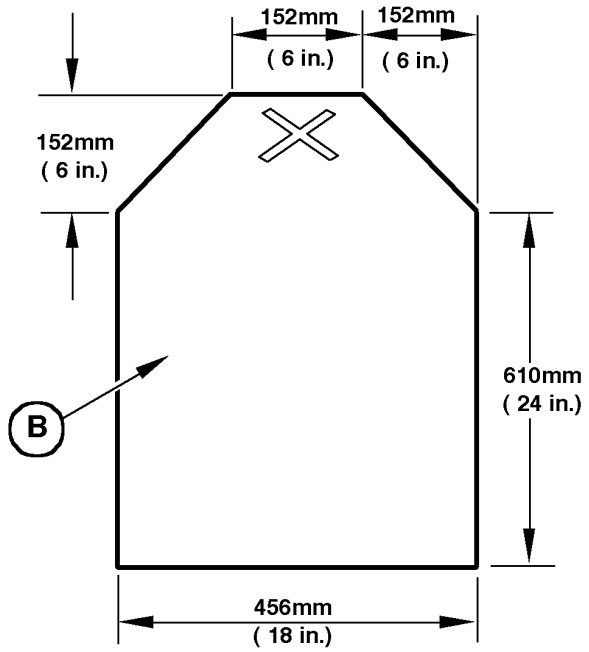


Continued on next page

CC,570RB 003439 -19-15SEP98-1/2

CC007918 —UN—12DEC96

Use the sketch opposite as an example to make a shield (B) using 2 or 4 ply belting.



CC007919

CC007919 —UN—25NOV96

CC,570RB 003439 -19-15SEP98-2/2

Preparing the Baler

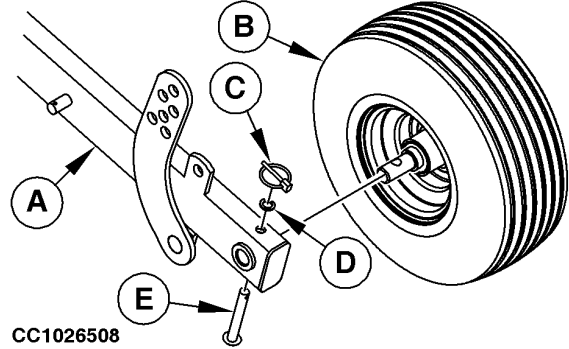
Install Pickup Gauge Wheels

On each side:

Install wheel (B) on arm (A) using pin (E), washer (D) and quick lock pin (C).

A—Gauge wheel arm
B—Wheel
C—Quick lock pin

D—Washer
E—Fastener pin



CC1026508

CC1026508 —UN—04OCT04

OUC006,00013A8 -19-07FEB08-1/1

Select Net Roll

In order to achieve optimum performance, we recommend the use of **John Deere** net roll which meets the following specifications:

- Material width (A) for standard net roll: 1225 ± 10 mm (3 ft. 11.8 in. to 4 ft. 0.6 in.).
- Material width (A) for COVER-EDGE™ net roll: 1295 ± 10 mm (4 ft. 2.6 in. to 4 ft. 3.4 in.).
- Core width (B) for standard net roll: Maximum 1255 mm (4 ft. 1.4 in.).
- Core width (B) for COVER-EDGE™ net roll: Maximum 1320 mm (4 ft. 4 in.).

IMPORTANT: Net roll diameter must not exceed 29 cm (11.4 in.).

Baler net tying system is not compatible with John Deere B-Wrap net.

NOTE: To adjust the number of net turns applied during a tying cycle, see [Adjust Net Tying in Operating Baler Application](#) section.

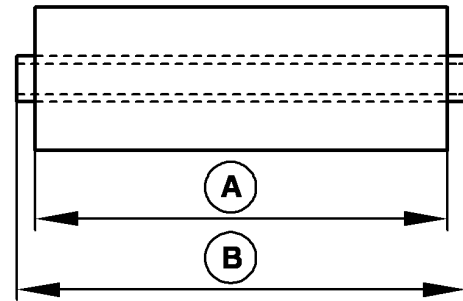
A—Material Width

B—Core Width



CC1033931

CC1033931 —UN—15SEP11



CC1033200

CC1033200 —UN—05AUG10

OUC006,0001A28 -19-24JAN13-1/1

Care of Net Roll

IMPORTANT: Protect net roll material from moisture and damage. Do not remove protective covering until ready for use. Snags can cause erratic

performance and affect bale weatherability. Do not use sticky tape directly on net.

Store in a cool, dry place, away from direct sunlight.

CC,570RB 001466 -19-15SEP98-1/1

Care of Net Tying Device

Before operating the baler proceed as follows:

Wipe off feed rolls and check for any sticky material. NEVER use aggressive cleaning agents such as petrol, benzene, turpentine oil or similar cleaning solvents to clean rubber feed roll.

It is recommended to use the following:

- A cloth dipped in liquid ammonia
- Soap water
- A 1:10 mixture of glycerine and spirits

Apply talcum powder to rubber feed roll.

OUCC006,0000670 -19-29APR02-1/1

Load Net Roll

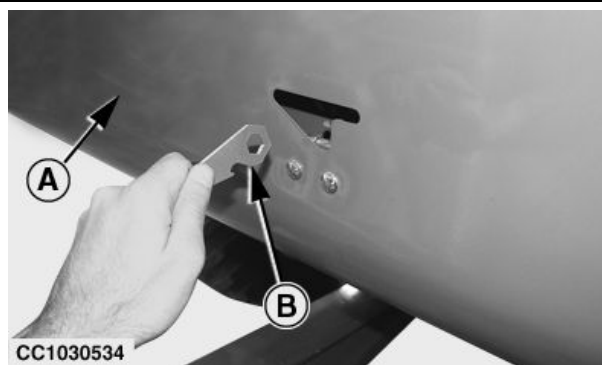
CAUTION: Disengage PTO, engage parking brake and/or place transmission in PARK, shut off tractor engine and remove key before opening cover.

CAUTION: Cover is spring loaded and will move up quickly when released.

1. Open net tying cover (A) by using special tool (B) or a suitable tool (13 mm across flats).

Hold cover (A) in position then unlock it by inserting tool (B) in latch slot as shown.

2. Remove all package material (staples, tape, etc.) from net roll before installing.



A—Net tying cover

B—Special tool

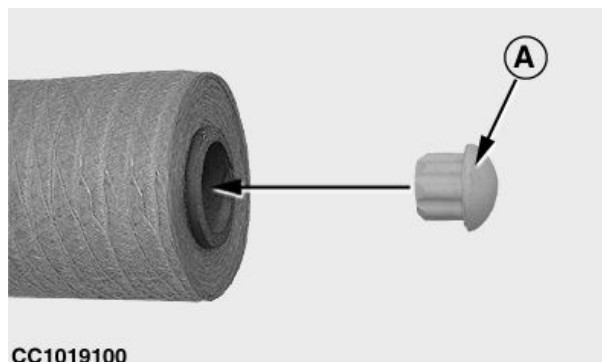
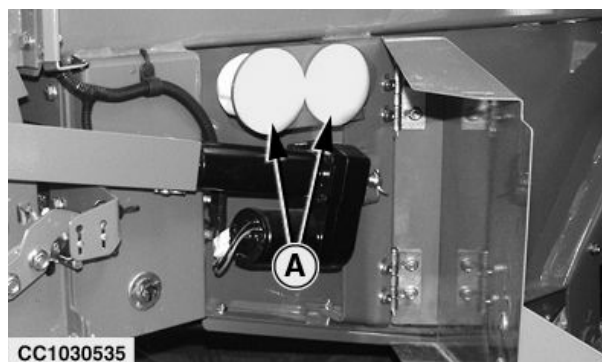
OUCC006,00013AC -19-25NOV08-1/7

3. Install net roll

a. Net roll for standard net tying device:
Remove stops (A) from their bracket.
Install stops (A) on each sides of roll to position roll in the CoverEdge net tying unit.

b. CoverEdge net roll:
Specific CoverEdge net roll does not need stops (A).

A—Stops



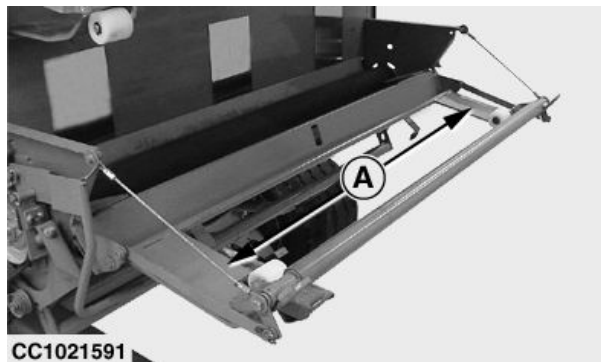
Continued on next page

OUCC006,00013AC -19-25NOV08-2/7

4. Swing lower tension arm out and place net roll to loading position (A) so material is pulled from the top of the roll.

NOTE: John Deere nets have two large colored stripes which must be placed toward the right-hand side of machine.

A—Loading position



CC1021591 —UN—20JUN02

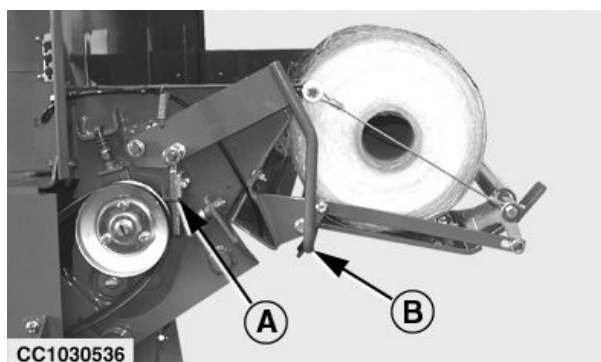
OUCC006,00013AC -19-25NOV08-3/7

5. Release net feed roll brake to allow to rotate feed rolls.
Pull lever (B) down and out, then raise it to disengage brake pad (A).

NOTE: Once unlocked, lever (B) should be kept in upper position as shown.

A—Brake pad

B—Brake release lever



CC1030536 —UN—14OCT08

Continued on next page

OUCC006,00013AC -19-25NOV08-4/7

6. Unroll net and gather the loose ends of net together.
7. Fold net (C) back on itself to form a loop. Thread loop of net between rubber roll (A) and steel roll (B) as illustrated. Rotate feed rolls slightly by hand to feed material between rolls.

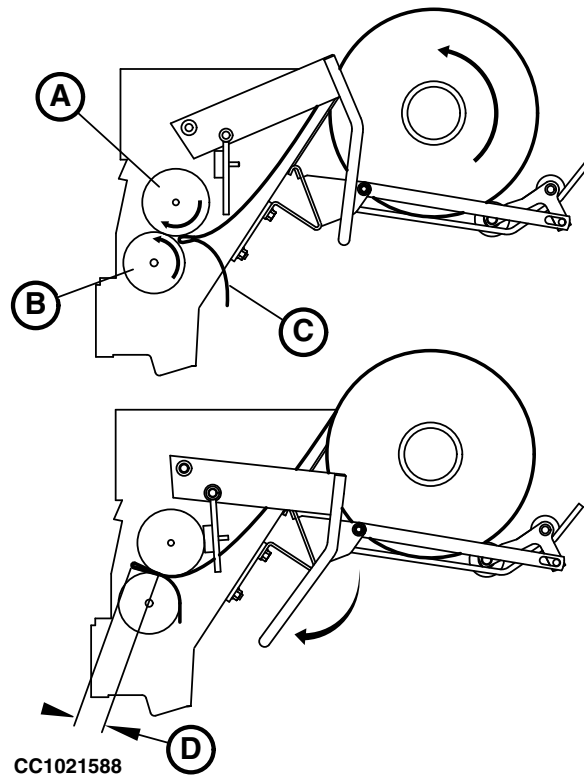
IMPORTANT: Do not thread more than 25 mm (1 in.) of loop (D) between the two rolls as it may cause material to wrap around the rolls.

A—Rubber roll
B—Steel roll

C—Net
D—25 mm (1 in.)



CC1019102 —UN—09FEB01



CC1021588 —UN—20JUN02

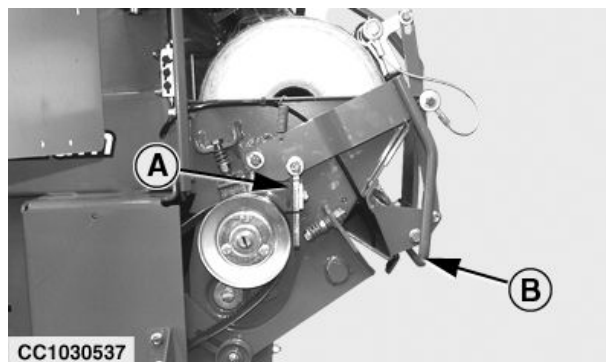
OUC006,00013AC -19-25NOV08-5/7

8. Pull lever (B) down to engage net feed roll brake. Feed rolls should not be able to rotate.

IMPORTANT: If feed rolls can still be rotated with brake engaged, readjust or replace brake pad (A). See Checking Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6) in Service section.

A—Brake pad

B—Brake lever



CC1030537 —UN—14OCT08

Continued on next page

OUC006,00013AC -19-25NOV08-6/7

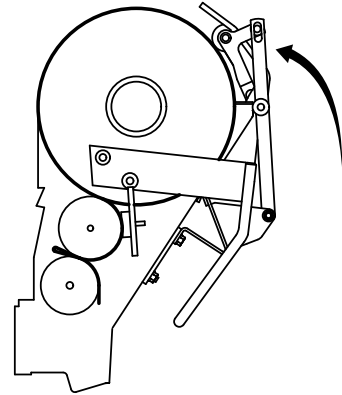
9. Swing lower tension arm up and lift the net roll on the rubber roll, against the stainless steel plates.
10. Rotate net roll to remove slack.
11. Cut excessive material off.
12. Rear net box can contain two net rolls. One for the net tying process (B) and an additional net roll (A) stored on the top.
13. To close cover, pull it down until latch is engaged.

IMPORTANT: It is advisable to take net material off feed rolls at the end of each day! This will avoid net material rubber feed roll incrustation thus avoiding start-up problems.

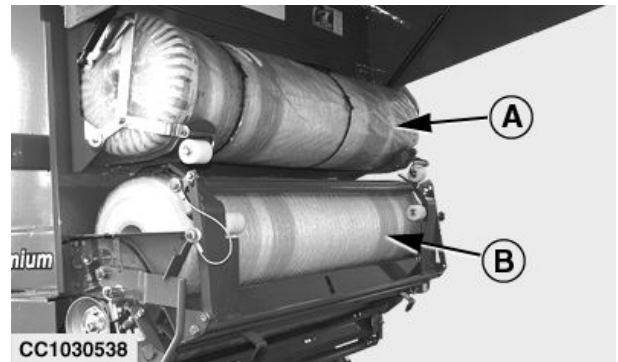
Take net material off feed rolls each time baler is used for twine tying mode.

A—Additional net roll

B—Net for tying process



CC1021589



CC1030538

CC1021589 —UN—20JUN02

CC1030538 —UN—14OCT08

OUC006,00013AC -19-25NOV08-7/7

Select Twine

John Deere twine 1000 or 750 is recommended for optimum performance.

Twine quality plays a critical part in proper baler operation.

Twine of good tensile strength and uniformity in size should be selected for proper baling operation. This will also help prevent twine from breaking during handling and transporting of bales.



CC1033931

CC1033931 —UN—15SEP11

DC82261,000040A -19-21JAN14-1/1

Care of Twine Ball

IMPORTANT: Protect twine ball material from moisture and damage. Do not remove protective covering until ready for use.

Store in a cool, dry place, away from direct sunlight.

DC82261,000040D -19-23JAN14-1/1

Load Twine Boxes

Place one ball of good quality twine in each compartment of the twine box. Be sure twine is pulled from end of the ball marked "top".

Join twine by tying the inside end of one ball to the outside of the other ball. To join the twine ends, use a modified square knot with sisal twine and a sheet bend knot with plastic twine.

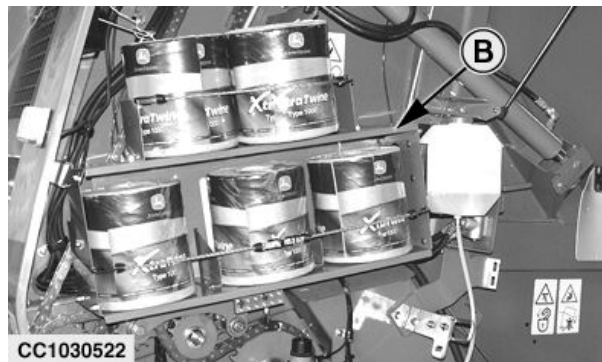
Trim loose ends of twine as close to knot as possible.

A—Right-hand twine box

B—Left-hand twine box



CC1030521—UN—14OCT08



CC1030522—UN—14OCT08

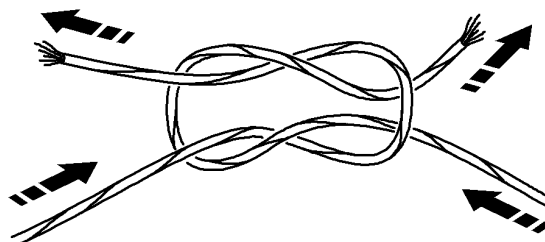
OUCC006,00013A9 -19-07FEB08-1/1

Knot for Twine

IMPORTANT: The knot must be small enough to pass through the guides and twine arm.

We recommend to tie twine balls together with a square or modified square knot as shown. If needed tie twine balls together with a sheet bend knot as shown.

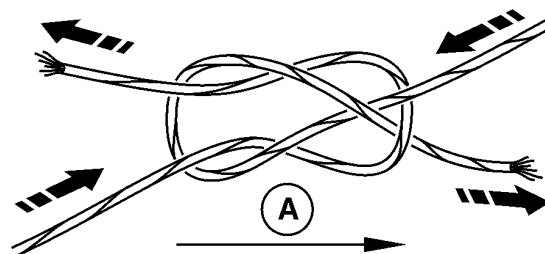
A—Flow Direction of Twine



CC1034420

Modified Square Knot

CC1034420—UN—15SEP11



CC1034421

Sheet Bend Knot

CC1034421—UN—08DEC11

OUCC006,00017BC -19-21APR11-1/1

Route Twine out of Boxes

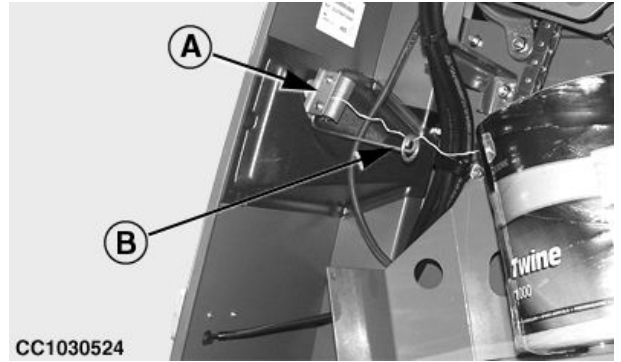
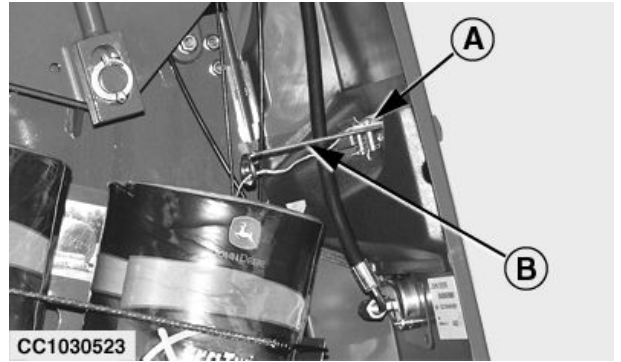
Right-hand side twine box

Pull twine through guide (B), twine tension plate and opening (A) located above right-hand side twine box.

Left-hand side twine box

Pull twine through guide (B), twine tension plate and opening (A) located above left-hand side twine box.

A—Twine tension plate and opening B—Guide



CC1030523—UN—23SEP08

CC1030524—UN—23SEP08

OUC006,00013AB -19-07FEB08-1/1

Route Twine Through Guides

Loop twine (A) from right-hand side twine box around pulley (B) and twine (C) from left-hand side twine box around pulley (D).

IMPORTANT: If only one twine is used and twine pulley sensors are installed, loop this twine around both pulleys (B) and (D) so that the monitor can detect the presence of two twines and then react properly (monitor is set for the use of two twines).

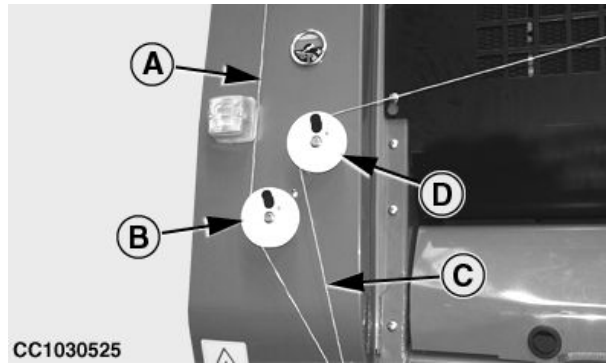
If this is not done, one of the pulleys will not rotate which the monitor will interpret as a twine not being caught during tying cycle. As a consequence, the round baler diagnostic trouble code RBC 3782.07 can appear.

Route twines through guides (E) and (F).

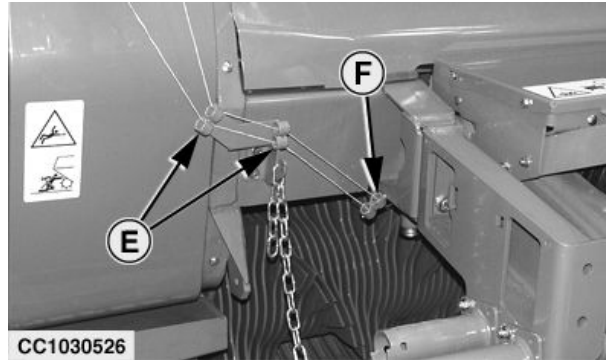
Loop twines between guide pins (G) and place twines under tension plate (H) as shown.

Thread twines through twine arm (I). There must be 300 mm (12 in.) of twine exposed from the end of twine arm.

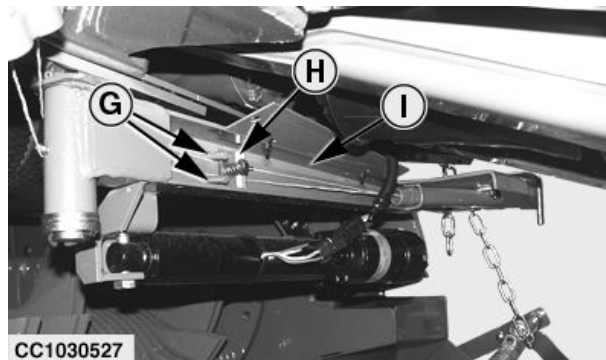
- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|
| A—Twine from Right-Hand Twine Box | F—Guide |
| B—Pulley | G—Guide Pin |
| C—Twine from Left-Hand Twine Box | H—Tension Plate |
| D—Pulley | I—Twine Arm |
| E—Guides | |



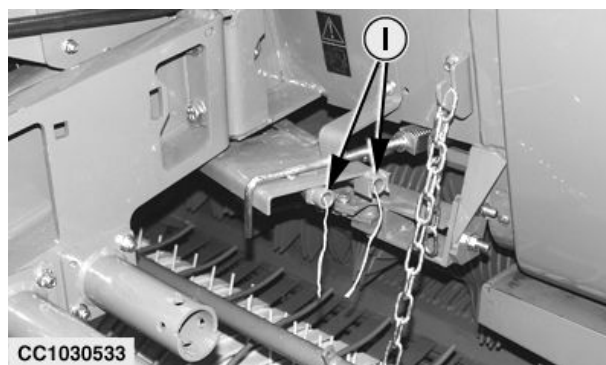
CC1030525—UN—14OCT08



CC1030526—UN—14OCT08



CC1030527—UN—14OCT08



CC1030533—UN—14OCT08

OUCC006,0001548 -19-11JAN10-1/1

Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp

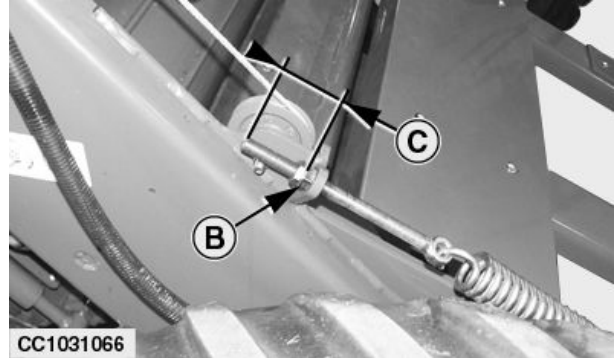
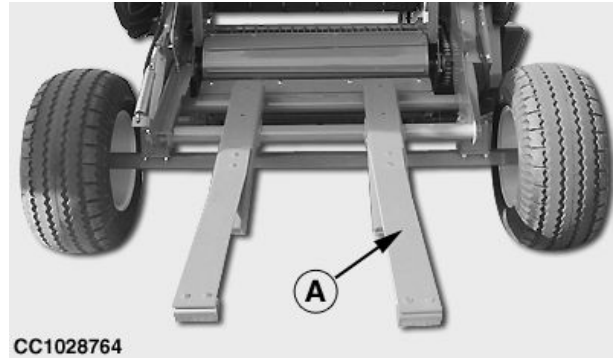
1. Park baler on level ground.
2. Open the gate and secure it with the safety lock device. Engage tractor parking lock, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
3. Adjust nuts (B) to obtain specified distance (C):

Specification	
C—Distance.....	55 ± 5 mm (2.16 ± 0.2 in.)

IMPORTANT: Bale discharging ramp (A) must touch the ground when there is a load on the ramp and the baler is attached to the tractor. Failure to do so can result in discharging ramp damage.

If bale discharging ramp cannot touch the ground, lower the machine by adjusting spacers for axle. See your John Deere dealer.

A—Bale discharging ramp C—Distance
B—Nuts



OUCC006,00013CD -19-18NOV08-1/1

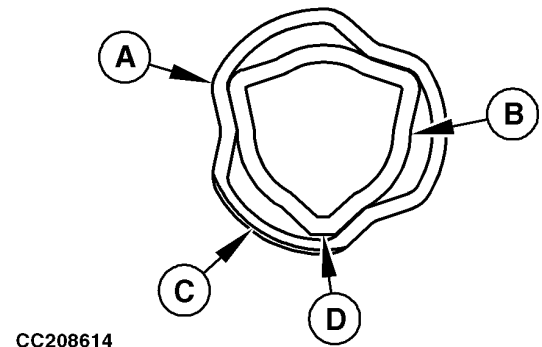
CC1028764—UN—08NOV06

CC1031066—UN—18NOV08

Install Bondioli Telescoping Driveline

Assemble male tube (B) in female tube (A) by aligning plate corner (D) with crushed face (C).

A—Female Tube C—Crushed Face
B—Male Tube D—Plate Corner



Profile view of Bondioli Telescoping Driveline

DC82261,000044B -19-09APR14-1/1

CC208614—UN—11APR14

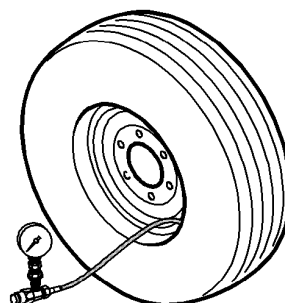
Tire Inflation

Refer to the serial number plate and following tables, to obtain the correct tire pressure according to model designation (A).

IMPORTANT: Always observe local road traffic regulations when driving on public roads. See Observe Maximum Transport Speed in Safety section.

IMPORTANT: Tire size modification requires brake adjustment. See your John Deere dealer.

A—Model Designation



CC1030245

JOHN DEERE		2, Avenue Jean Jaurès 70100 ARC-LES-GRAY (FRANCE)	
Marque : JOHN DEERE (DEERE & COMPANY, ILLINOIS, USA)			
Type/Variante/Version			
Numéro de série			
PTAC	kg		
Masses	1 kg	3 kg	
Maximales			
Admissibles	2 kg	4 kg	
Réceptionné par la DIRE de BESANCON le :			
CE			
Année	Modèle	Année	Modèle
Fabrication	in E.C.		

CC1033208

CC1030245—UN—27SEP07

CC1033208—UN—15OCT10

Tire pressure with maximum transport speed of 30 km/h (19 mph)						
	Tire type and pressure					
Model designation (A)	11.5/80 - 15.3 (10 PR)	15/55 - 17 (10 PR)	19/45 - 17 (10 PR)	500/50 - 17 (10 PR)	500/55 - 20 (150A8)	500/45 - 22.5 (12 PR)
864L	250 kPa (2.5 bar; 36 psi)	200 kPa (2 bar; 29 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)	120 kPa (1.2 bar; 17 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)
864N	300 kPa (3 bar; 43 psi)	200 kPa (2 bar; 29 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)	120 kPa (1.2 bar; 17 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)
864H 864P	not compatible	not compatible	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)	120 kPa (1.2 bar; 17 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)

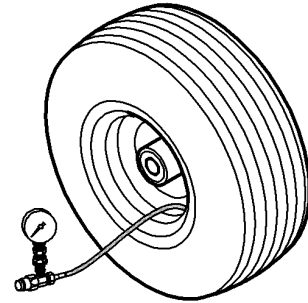
Tire pressure with maximum transport speed of 40 km/h (25 mph)						
	Tire type and pressure					
Model designation (A)	11.5/80 - 15.3 (10 PR)	15/55 - 17 (10 PR)	19/45 - 17 (10 PR)	500/50 - 17 (10 PR)	500/55 - 20 (150A8)	500/45 - 22.5 (12 PR)
864L	not compatible	200 kPa (2 bar; 29 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)	160 kPa (1.6 bar; 23 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)
864N	not compatible	250 kPa (2.5 bar; 36 psi)	200 kPa (2 bar; 29 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)	160 kPa (1.6 bar; 23 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)
864H 864P	not compatible	not compatible	200 kPa (2 bar; 29 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)	160 kPa (1.6 bar; 23 psi)	150 kPa (1.5 bar; 22 psi)

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000553 -19-31MAR15-1/2

Inflate pickup gauge wheels to specified pressure:

	Pressure
Pickup Gauge Wheels	140 kPa (1.4 bar; 20 psi)



CC1030246

CC1030246 —UN—01OCT07

DC82261,0000553 -19-31MAR15-2/2

Check Wheel Nut Torque

IMPORTANT: Whenever a wheel has been removed and installed, check wheel nut torque at intervals specified in **Break-In Period** section.

NOTE: Inspect and replace worn or damaged nuts, and washers if equipped.

Tighten wheel nuts diagonally to the following specification:

Specification	
Wheel Nuts—Torque.....	270 N·m (200 lb.-ft.)



CC1035346

CC1035346 —UN—11OCT11

DC82261,0000552 -19-12NOV14-1/1

Attaching and Detaching

Adjust Tongue to Tractor Trailer Hitch

This hitching method increases clearance between ground and baler tongue. This position is convenient when baling thick windrows.

To meet all tractor trailer hitch configurations, the tongue can be adjusted either at the articulation of the hitch plate or at the tongue base articulation.

IMPORTANT: Before adjusting the tongue, be sure that:

- The tire inflation is correct.
- The gate is closed.

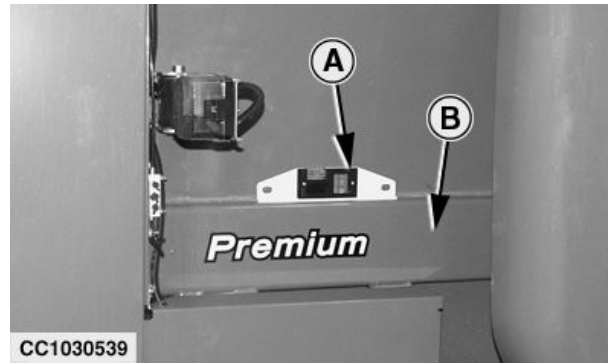
1. Park tractor and baler on a level ground.
2. Detach baler from tractor.
3. Install a spirit level (A) on gate reinforcement (B).
4. Adjust baler in horizontal position using the spirit level and the jackstand.

NOTE: In some conditions, other baler position may improve the crop feeding. If needed, adjust the tongue by lifting the front of the baler in order to increase the pickup opening. See your John Deere dealer for more information.

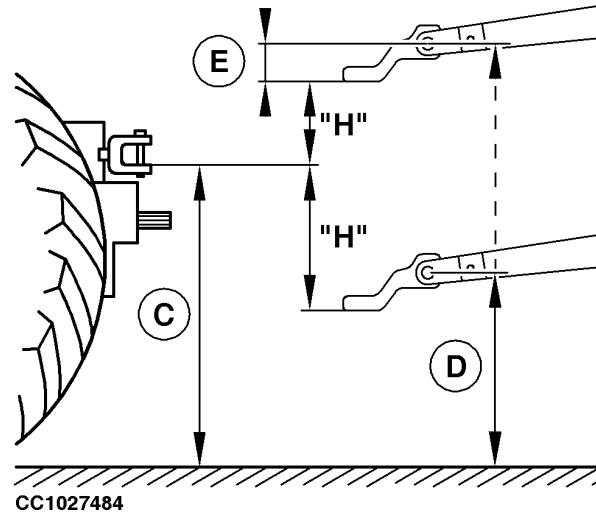
5. Measure distance (C).
6. Measure distance (D).

A—Spirit Level
B—Gate Reinforcement
C—Trailer Hitch Height

D—Hitch Screw Height
E—Hitch Height Correction
H—Distance



CC1030539 —UN—23SEP08



CC1027484 —UN—11JUL05

Continued on next page

OUC006,00017CB -19-24JAN13-1/3

7. Calculate and record the value "H":

$$H = (D) - (E) - (C)$$

NOTE: (E) is the correction for the hitch height.

Select the value (E) according to the hitch type:

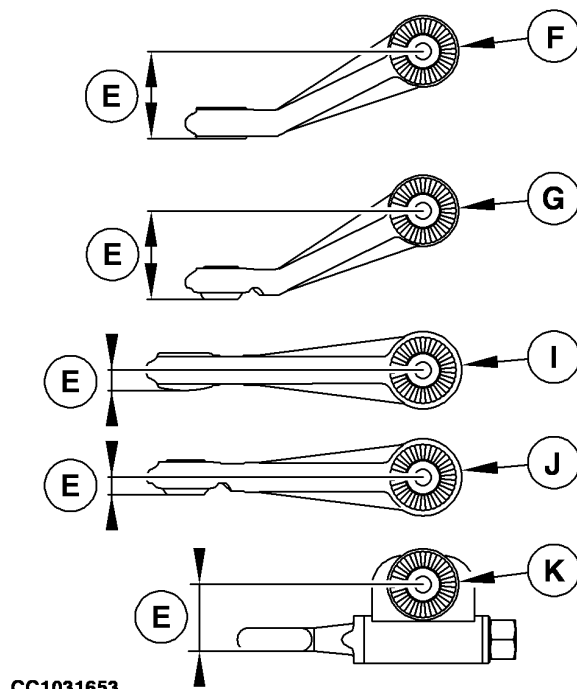
Specification	
Hitch (F) Height	
Correction (E)—Height.....	122 mm (4.8 in.)
Hitch (G) Height	
Correction (E)—Height.....	122 mm (4.8 in.)
Hitch (I) Height Correction	
(E)—Height.....	26 mm (1 in.)
Hitch (J) Height	
Correction (E)—Height.....	22 mm (0.86 in.)
Hitch (K) Height	
Correction (E)—Height.....	84 mm (3.31 in.)

- If $H \leq 80$ mm (3.15 in.), go to step 18.
- If $H > 80$ mm (3.15 in.), continue.

8. Calculate and record the value "T":

$$T = H / 140 \text{ mm (5.5 in.)}$$

"T" is the number of tongue frame teeth to jump. "T" must be rounded to the closer unit.



CC1031653

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| E—Hitch Height Correction | I— Straight Hitch without Ball Joint |
| F—Angled Hitch without Ball Joint | J— Straight Hitch with Ball Joint |
| G—Angled Hitch with Ball Joint | K—Swivel Hitch |

Continued on next page

OUC006,00017CB -19-24JAN13-2/3

CC1031653 —UN—29SEP09

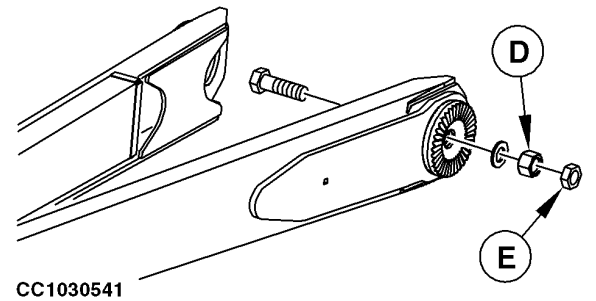
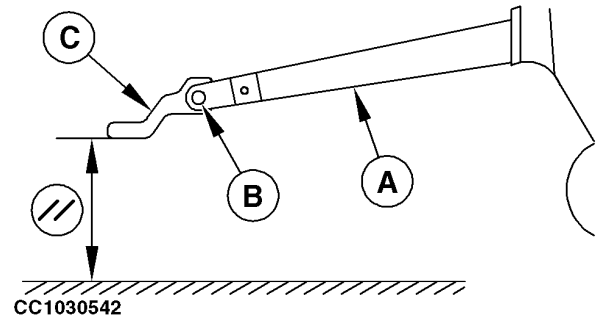
9. Remove hitch (C).
10. Draw a mark between the machine frame and each tongue frame.
11. Remove lock nut (E) of left tongue frame (A).
12. Loosen nut (D).
13. Raise or lower tongue frame by "T" teeth, using the mark as a start point.
14. Tighten nut (D).
15. Repeat steps 11 to 14 to adjust the right-hand tongue frame.
16. Check that the two tongue frames are at the same level.
17. Install hitch (C).
18. Set hitch (C) as horizontal as possible with baler attached to the tractor.
19. Tighten tongue frame fixing nuts (D), lock nuts (E) and hitch fixing screw (B) to specified torque:

Specification

Tongue Frame Fixing	
Nuts—Torque.....	700 N·m (516 lb.-ft.)
Tongue Frame Lock	
Nut—Torque.....	300 N·m (221 lb.-ft.)
Hitch Fixing	
Screw—Torque.....	620 N·m (450 lb.-ft.)

NOTE: Make sure that all rings are engaged (not standing tip to tip) when tightening screw (B) and nuts (D)-(E).

IMPORTANT: Slowly and carefully perform a short test with baler attached to the tractor. Check that



A—Tongue Frame
B—Hitch Fixing Screw
C—Hitch

D—Nut
E—Lock Nut

there is no interference between tongue frame (A) and telescoping driveline in short turns. Major damage to telescoping driveline could occur.

20. Adjust bale discharging ramp. See [Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp](#) in Preparing the Baler section.

OUC006,00017CB -19-24JAN13-3/3

Adjust Tongue to Tractor Drawbar

IMPORTANT: Before adjusting the tongue, be sure that:

- The tire inflation is correct.
- The gate is closed.

NOTE: It is recommended to attach the machine to the tractor trailer hitch.

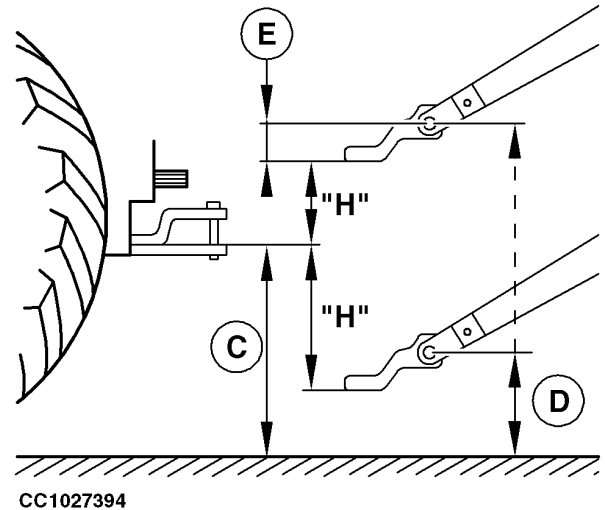
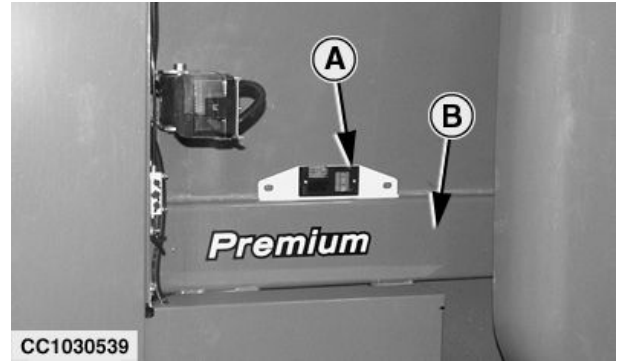
1. Park tractor and baler on a level ground.
2. Detach baler from tractor.
3. Install a spirit level (A) on gate reinforcement (B).
4. Adjust baler in horizontal position using the spirit level and the jackstand.

NOTE: In some conditions, other baler position may improve the crop feeding. If needed, adjust the tongue by lifting the front of the baler in order to increase the pickup opening. See your John Deere dealer for more information.

5. Measure distance (C).
6. Measure distance (D).

A—Spirit Level
B—Gate Reinforcement
C—Drawbar Height

D—Hitch Screw Height
E—Hitch Height Correction
H—Distance



Continued on next page

OUC006,00017CC -19-24JAN13-1/4

CC1030539 —UN—23SEP08

CC1027394 —UN—21JUN05

7. Calculate and record the value "H":

$$H = (D) - (E) - (C)$$

NOTE: (E) is the correction for the hitch height.

Select the value (E) according to the hitch type:

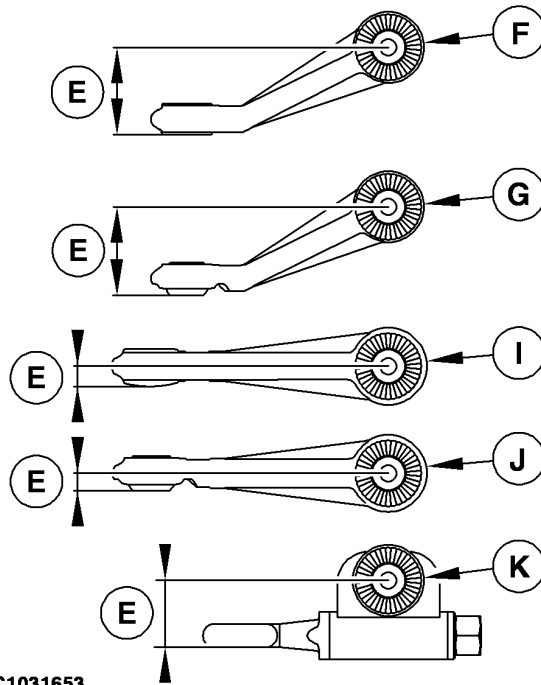
Specification	
Hitch (F) Height	
Correction (E)—Height.....	122 mm (4.8 in.)
Hitch (G) Height	
Correction (E)—Height.....	122 mm (4.8 in.)
Hitch (I) Height Correction	
(E)—Height.....	26 mm (1 in.)
Hitch (J) Height	
Correction (E)—Height.....	22 mm (0.86 in.)
Hitch (K) Height	
Correction (E)—Height.....	84 mm (3.31 in.)

- If $H \leq 80$ mm (3.15 in.), go to step 18.
- If $H > 80$ mm (3.15 in.), continue.

8. Calculate and record the value "T":

$$T = H / 140 \text{ mm (5.5 in.)}$$

"T" is the number of tongue frame teeth to jump. "T" must be rounded to the closer unit.



CC1031653

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| E—Hitch Height Correction | I—Straight Hitch without Ball Joint |
| F—Angled Hitch without Ball Joint | J—Straight Hitch with Ball Joint |
| G—Angled Hitch with Ball Joint | K—Swivel Hitch |

CC1031653 —UN—29SEP09

Continued on next page

OUC006,00017CC -19-24JAN13-2/4

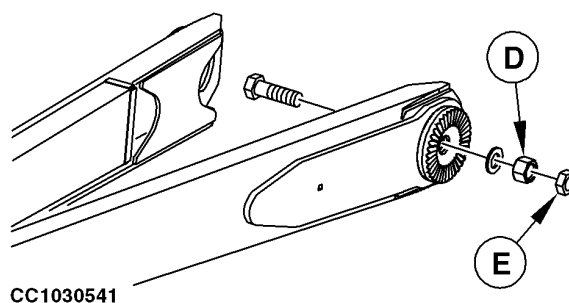
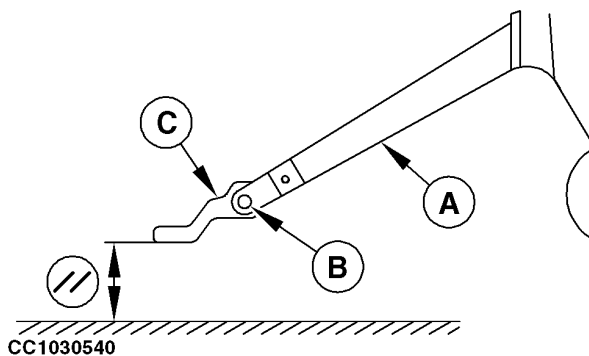
9. Remove hitch (C).
10. Draw a mark between the machine frame and each tongue frame.
11. Remove lock nut (E) of left tongue frame (A).
12. Loosen nut (D).
13. Raise or lower tongue frame by "T" teeth, using the mark as a start point.
14. Tighten nut (D).
15. Repeat steps 11 to 14 to adjust the right tongue frame.
16. Check that the two tongue frames are at the same level.
17. Install hitch (C).
18. Set hitch (C) as horizontal as possible with baler attached to the tractor.
19. Tighten tongue frame fixing nuts (D), lock nuts (E) and hitch fixing screw (B) to specified torque:

Specification

Tongue Frame Fixing	
Nuts—Torque.....	700 N·m (516 lb.-ft.)
Tongue Frame Lock	
Nut—Torque.....	300 N·m (221 lb.-ft.)
Hitch Fixing	
Screw—Torque.....	620 N·m (450 lb.-ft.)

NOTE: Make sure that all rings are engaged (not standing tip to tip) when tightening screw (B) and nuts (D)-(E).

IMPORTANT: Slowly and carefully perform a short test with baler attached to the tractor. Check that



A—Tongue Frame
B—Hitch Fixing Screw
C—Hitch

D—Nut
E—Lock Nut

there is no interference between tongue frame (A) and telescoping driveline in short turns. Major damage to telescoping driveline could occur.

OUCC006,00017CC -19-24JAN13-3/4

IMPORTANT: Maximum allowed offset (B) between tongue base articulation and hitch (A) must be within specification.

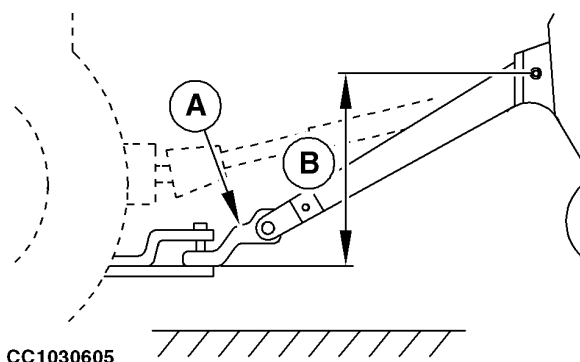
Specification

Hitch to Tongue Base Articulation—Maximum	
offset.....	700 mm (2 ft. 3.5 in.)

20. Adjust bale discharging ramp. See [Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp](#) in Preparing the Baler section.

A—Hitch

B—Offset



OUCC006,00017CC -19-24JAN13-4/4

Connect Telescoping Driveline to Tractor PTO Shaft

CAUTION: Never attach telescoping driveline while the tractor is running.

Never use a steel hammer to connect or disconnect the telescoping driveline on PTO shaft.

IMPORTANT: Keep telescoping driveline and PTO shaft splines free from paint, dirt, chaff and burrs.

1. Disengage the PTO, engage park brake and/or place transmission in PARK, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
2. Pull back on locking collar (A). Locking collar (A) will "click" and remains in open position.
3. Connect telescoping driveline to tractor 540, 750 or 1000 rpm PTO shaft. Refer to tag on baler to select tractor PTO speed. Push telescoping driveline onto tractor PTO shaft until locking collar (A) snaps forward. Locking collar (A) will "click".

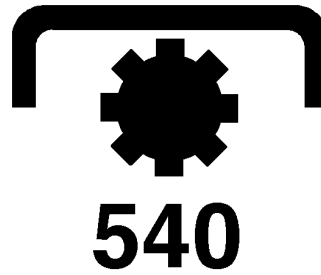
IMPORTANT: For Walterscheid telescoping driveline only, locking collar (A) must rotate freely to indicate that the telescoping driveline is correctly latched to the tractor PTO shaft.

4. To check if telescoping driveline is latched, pull back on guard (B). Do not pull on locking collar (A), as this will release latch.

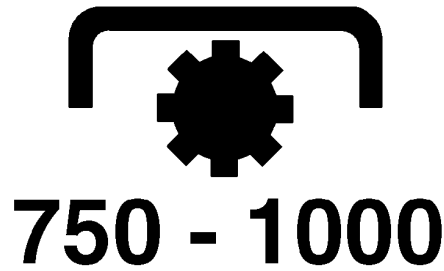
NOTE: Refer to the basic telescoping driveline Operator's Manual to properly connect telescoping driveline to the tractor PTO shaft.

A—Locking Collar

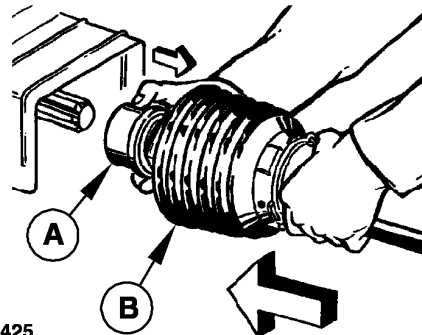
B—Guard



CC1020007



CC1031620



CC1034425

CC1020007—UN—09JUL01

CC1031620—UN—12MAY09

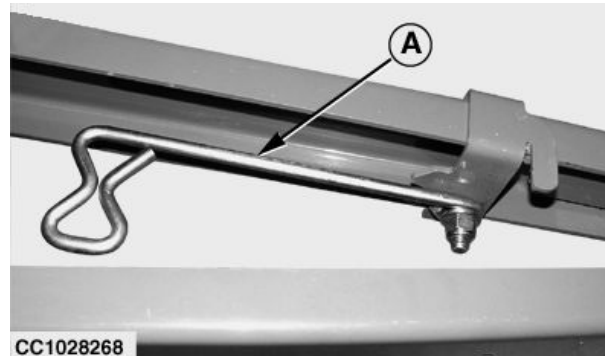
CC1034425—UN—15SEP11

OUC006,00017CD -19-24JAN13-1/1

Telescoping Driveline Support

During baler operation store support (A) along the side tongue frame as shown.

A—Support



CC1028268

CC1028268—UN—21SEP06

OUC006,0001AD9 -19-03SEP13-1/1

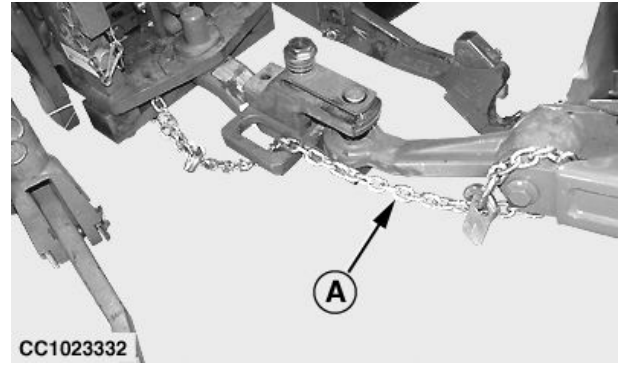
Connecting Safety Chain

If machine is equipped with a safety chain (A), connect and fasten safety chain (A) to tractor. Leave only slack needed for turns.

CAUTION: The chain must prevent the tongue from hitting the ground in case the baler accidentally detaches from the tractor.

IMPORTANT: Always observe local road traffic regulations when driving on public roads.

A—Safety chain



CC1023332 —UN—04AUG03

OUC006,0000DB0 -19-31JAN05-1/1

Store Jackstand

After attaching baler to tractor, secure jackstand (A) in its storage position as shown.

Secure jackstand (A) with pin (B) as follows:

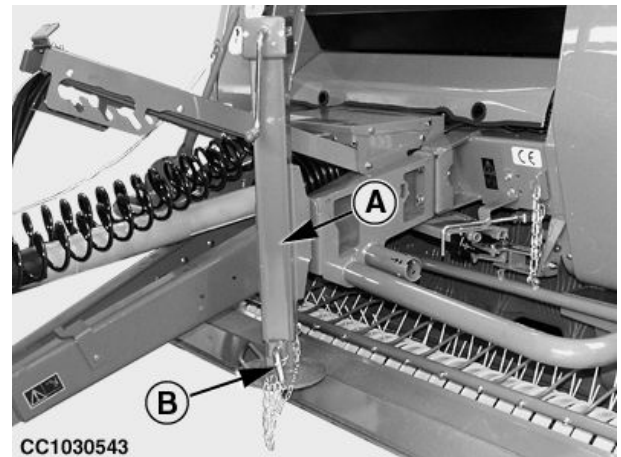
1. Insert pin (B) as shown in step (I).
2. Turn pin (B) as shown in step (II) to secure jackstand in storing position.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that cotter pin (C) is correctly inserted.

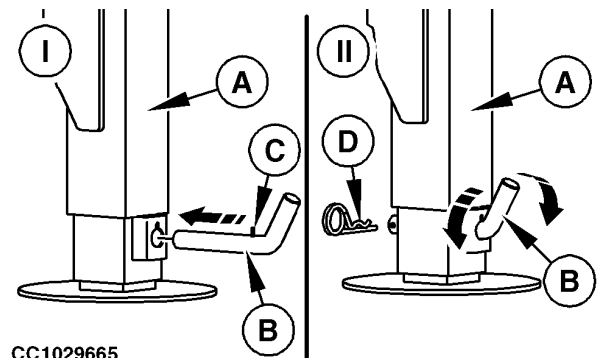
3. Insert quick-lock pin (D) in pin (B) as shown in step (II).

A—Jackstand
B—Pin

C—Cotter pin
D—Quick-lock pin



CC1030543 —UN—23SEP08



CC1029665 —UN—05SEP07

OUC006,00013B8 -19-08FEB08-1/1

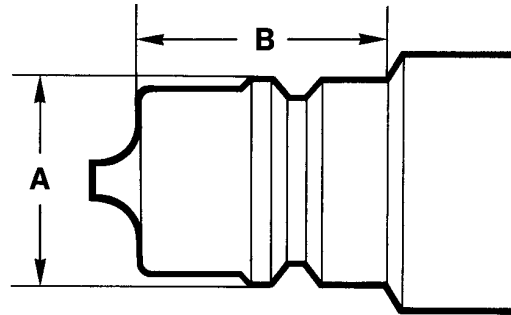
Connect to Tractor Hydraulic System

CAUTION: Maximum working pressure of baler hydraulic hoses is about 20000 kPa (200 bar; 2900 psi). To avoid injury from escaping fluid under pressure, stop engine and relieve the pressure in the system before disconnecting or connecting hydraulic or other lines. Tighten all connections before applying pressure.

IMPORTANT: All hydraulic couplers must be clear of debris, dust and sand. Use protective caps on fluid openings until ready to make connection. Foreign material can damage the hydraulic system.

NOTE: ISO hydraulic couplers are standard with the baler. If they do not fit the tractor, see your John Deere dealer for correct coupler.

Specification	
A—Diameter.....	23.66 — 23.74 mm (0.931 — 0.934 in.)



LX 006613

A—Diameter

B—Length

B—Length..... 24 mm
(0.945 in.)

OUCC006,00015BC -19-11JAN10-1/4

1. Lock tractor SCV

- Tractor with mechanical selective control valves:
If equipped, push tractor SCV (Selective Control Valve) lever lockouts (A) to the right (transport lock) before attaching an implement to prevent implement movement and possible personal injury.
- Tractor with electronic selective control valves (E-SCVs):
Press E-SCVs transport lock button (B) to lock all SCV (transport lock) before attaching an implement to prevent implement movement and possible personal injury.

A—SCV lever lockouts

B—E-SCVs transport lock button



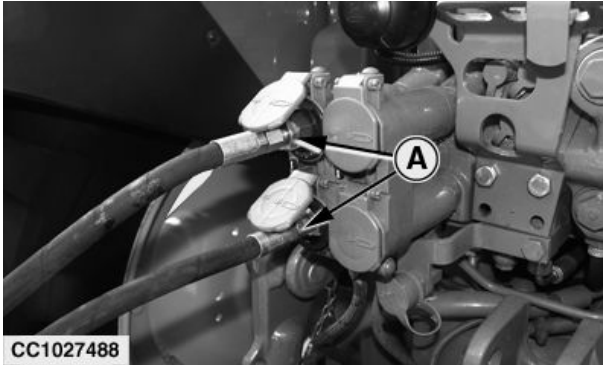
Mechanical SCV



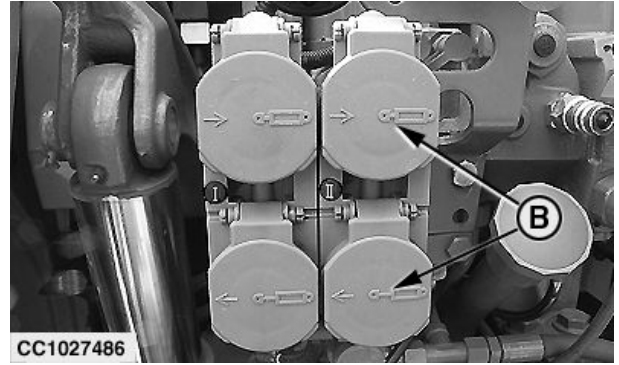
Electronic SCV

Continued on next page

OUCC006,00015BC -19-11JAN10-2/4



CC1027488 —UN—11JUL05



CC1027486 —UN—11JUL05

2. Connect gate lift hydraulic hoses

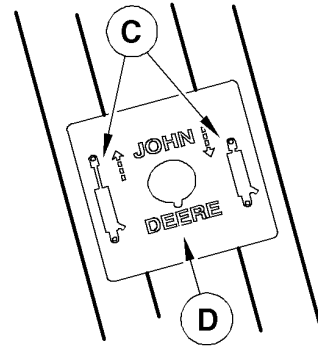
Connect gate hydraulic hoses (A) to a double-acting SCV to operate the gate.

Check to be sure symbols (B) on covers, indicating cylinder movement, match symbols (C) on hose identification plate (D).

Push hoses firmly into tractor receptacles.

A—Gate Hydraulic Hoses
B—SCV Symbols

C—Identification Plate Symbols
D—Hose Identification Plate



CC1026711

CC1026711 —UN—03DEC04

OUCC006,00015BC -19-11JAN10-3/4

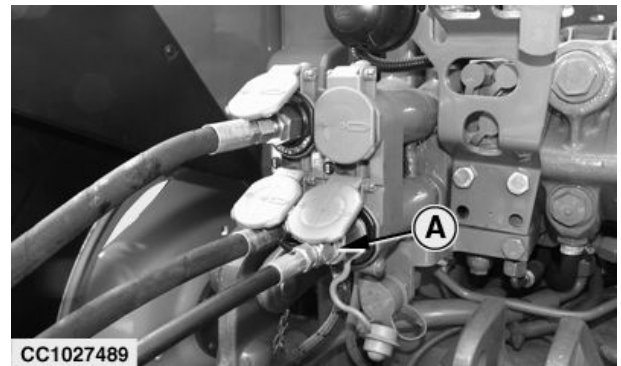
3. Connect pickup lift hydraulic hose

Connect pickup lift hydraulic hose (A) to a single-acting SCV.

Push hose firmly into tractor receptacle.

NOTE: Refer to your tractor operator's manual to connect pickup hydraulic hose to the recommended outlet.

A—Pickup Lift Hydraulic Hose



CC1027489

CC1027489 —UN—11JUL05

OUCC006,00015BC -19-11JAN10-4/4

Connect Hydraulic Brakes (If Equipped)

Remove cap from trailer brake coupler (A) and connect pressure hose, making sure connections are absolutely clean.

Press down on brake pedals to operate hydraulic trailer brake. The braking effect depends on pressure applied to the brake pedals.

IMPORTANT: To prevent undue wear on the brakes, observe the following:

Make sure that the pressure hose is connected.

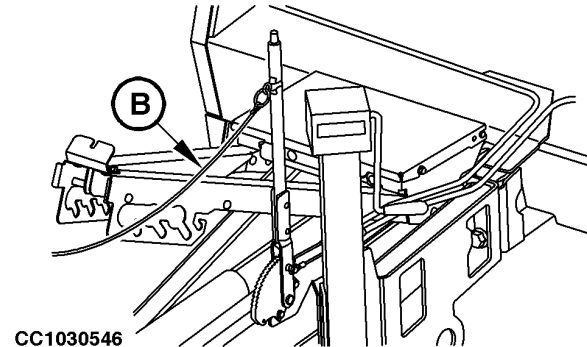
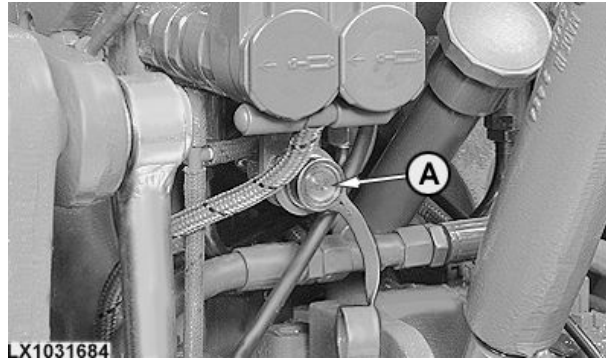
When driving downhill, select the same gear you would for driving uphill.

Check the hydraulic trailer brake regularly to make sure that it is functioning correctly.

Connect safety rope (B) to tractor. The safety rope engages the parking brake in case the machine accidentally detaches from the tractor.

A—Trailer brake coupler

B—Safety rope



LX1031684—UN—03APR03

CC1030546—UN—22OCT08

OUCC006,00013C1 -19-13FEB08-1/1

Connect Pneumatic Brakes (If Equipped)

IMPORTANT: Follow the colors of the couplers.

NOTE: Couplers and colors comply with 1728 ISO standard.

Ensure that the connections are clean before joining the compressed air hoses. Seal the connections with the dust caps whenever the hoses are disconnected.

Connect yellow hose at connection (A) then red hose at connection (C). Disconnect in reverse order.

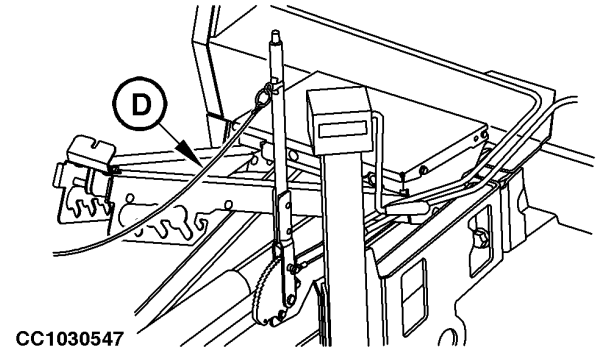
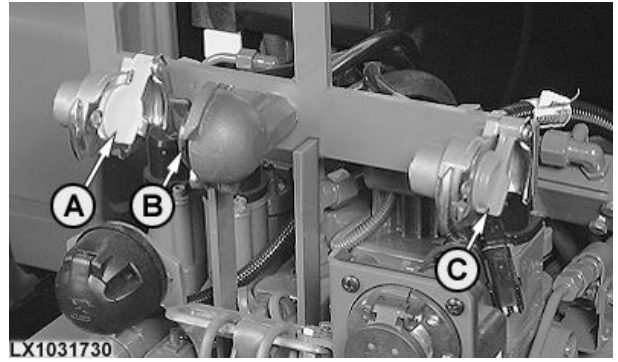
IMPORTANT: To prevent undue wear on the brakes, observe the following:

- Make sure that the pressure hoses are connected.
- When driving downhill, select the same gear you would for driving uphill.
- Check the air brake on the trailer regularly to make sure that it is functioning correctly.

NOTE: When the brake hoses are disconnected from the tractor brake system, the brakes of the machine are automatically engaged. See Park the Machine (Baler with Air Brakes) in Transporting and Parking section.

When the pressure is too low, the brakes of the machine are automatically engaged.

If equipped, connect safety rope (D) to tractor. The safety rope engages the park brake in case the machine accidentally detaches from the tractor.



A—Yellow (Dual-line Brake)
B—Black (Single-line Brake)

C—Red (Dual-line Brake, Supply)
D—Safety Rope

DC82261,0000537 -19-20OCT14-1/1

LX1031730 —UN—13AUG03

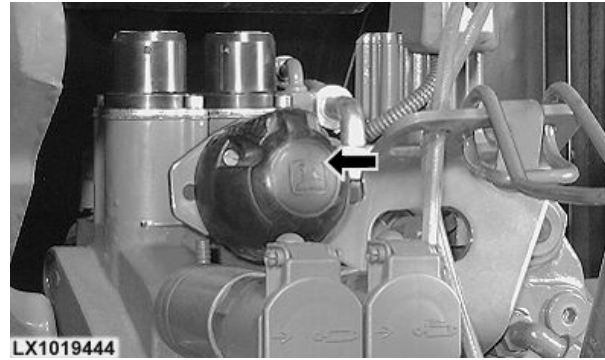
CC1030547 —UN—22OCT08

Connecting Seven-Terminal Trailer Socket

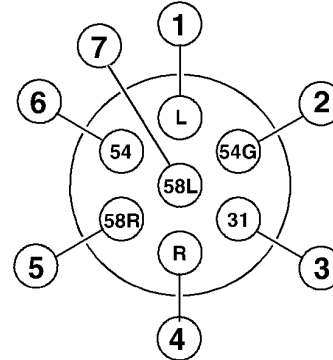
Connect road light plug to seven terminal socket of the tractor.

The road light wiring harness of this machine complies with 1724 ISO standard.

Terminal	Function	Reference
1	Left-Hand Turn Signal Light	L
2	—	54G
3	Ground	31
4	Right-Hand Turn Signal Light	R
5	Right-hand rear position and marker lights	58R
6	Brake Lights	54
7	Left-hand rear position and marker lights	58L



Tractor seven-terminal socket



CC017032

LX1019444 —UN—17SEP99

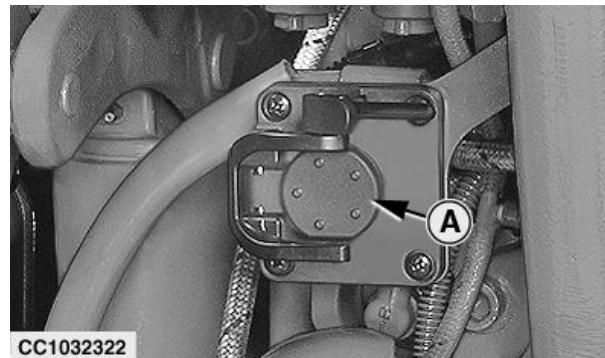
CC017032 —UN—25FEB00

OUC006,00010BA -19-22SEP06-1/1

Connect Round Baler Wiring Harness

Connect machine wiring harness plug to the ISOBUS implement breakaway connector (A).

A—ISOBUS Implement
Breakaway Connector



CC1032322 —UN—17DEC09

OUC0849,000014B -19-16DEC10-1/1

Detach Telescoping Driveline from Tractor PTO Shaft

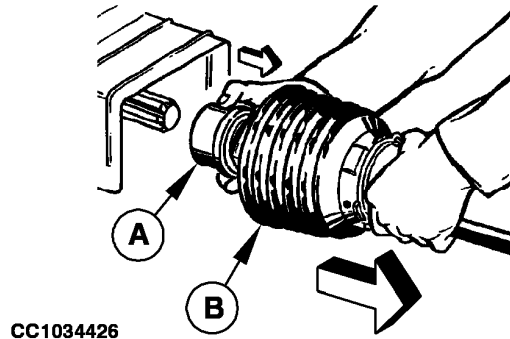
CAUTION: Never detach telescoping driveline while the tractor is running.

Never use a steel hammer to connect or disconnect the driveline on PTO shaft.

IMPORTANT: Keep driveline and PTO shaft splines free from paint, dirt, chaff and burrs.

1. Disengage the PTO, engage park brake and/or place transmission in PARK, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
2. Hold guard (B) and pull back on locking collar (A). Slide telescoping driveline off tractor PTO shaft.
3. Reinstall all shields, if removed.

NOTE: Refer to the basic telescoping driveline Operator's Manual to properly detach telescoping driveline from the tractor PTO shaft.



CC1034426

A—Locking Collar

B—Guard

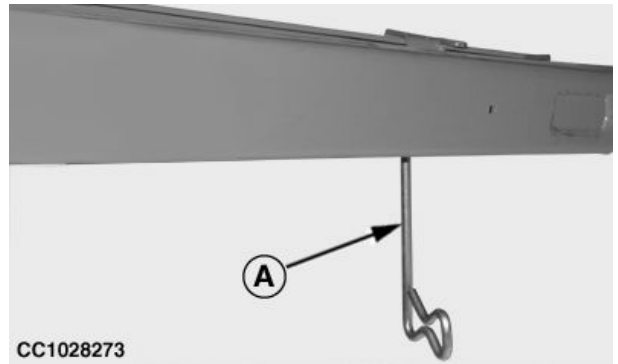
CC1034426 —UN—15SEP11

OUCC006,00017BF -19-24OCT11-1/1

Store Telescoping Driveline

When baler tongue is adjusted for the use of the tractor trailer hitch, position support (A) as shown so that telescoping driveline can be stored on it.

A—Support



CC1028273

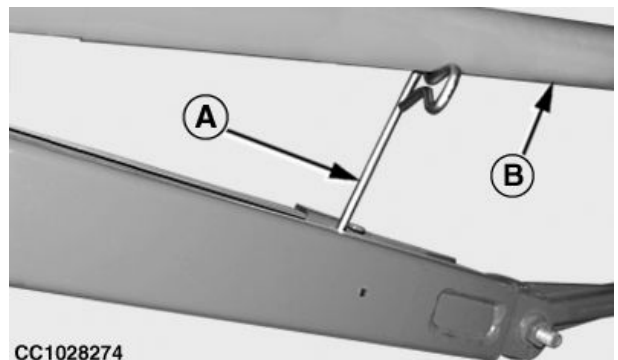
CC1028273 —UN—21SEP06

OUCC006,0001ADA -19-03SEP13-1/2

When baler tongue is adjusted for the use of the tractor drawbar, position support (A) as shown so that telescoping driveline (B) can be stored on it.

A—Support

B—Telescoping Driveline



CC1028274

CC1028274 —UN—21SEP06

OUCC006,0001ADA -19-03SEP13-2/2

Use Jackstand

Before detaching baler from tractor, remove jackstand (A) from storage position and place it in position as shown.

Secure jackstand (A) with pin (B) as follow:

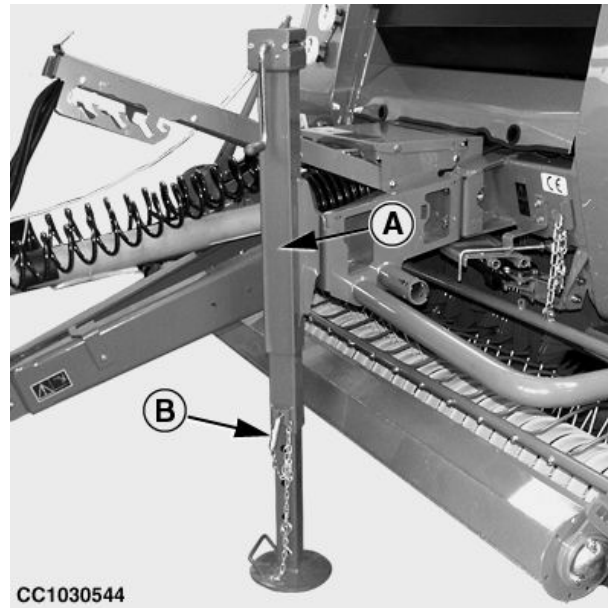
1. Insert pin (B) as shown in step (I).
2. Turn pin (B) as shown in step (II) to secure jackstand.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that cotter pin (C) is correctly inserted.

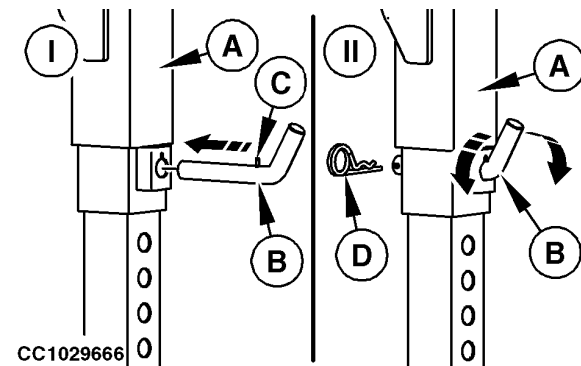
3. Insert quick-lock pin (D) in pin (B) as shown in step (II).

A—Jackstand
B—Pin

C—Cotter pin
D—Quick-lock pin



CC1030544 —UN—23SEP08



CC1029666 —UN—05SEP07

OUCC006,00013BB -19-08FEB08-1/1

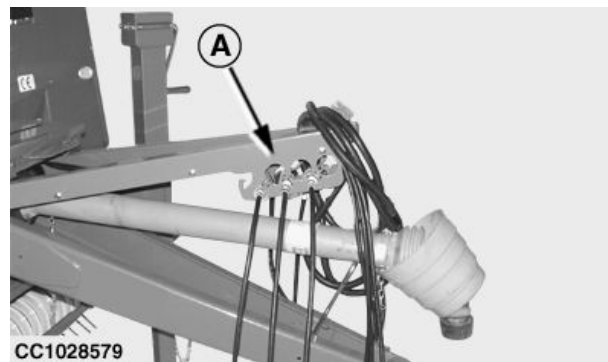
Store Hydraulic Hoses

CAUTION: Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Avoid the hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines.

Disconnect hydraulic hoses and install protective caps on couplers.

Store hydraulic hoses in the provided support (A) to keep them clean by avoiding contact with the ground.

A—Support



CC1028579 —UN—03OCT06

OUCC006,00013BC -19-08FEB08-1/1

Transporting and Parking

Tow Baler on Public Roads

CAUTION: Use of flashing warning lights and turn signals is recommended when towing this equipment on public roads. An implement safety lighting kit is available from your John Deere dealer.

Before towing the baler at transport speed, close gate and raise pickup.

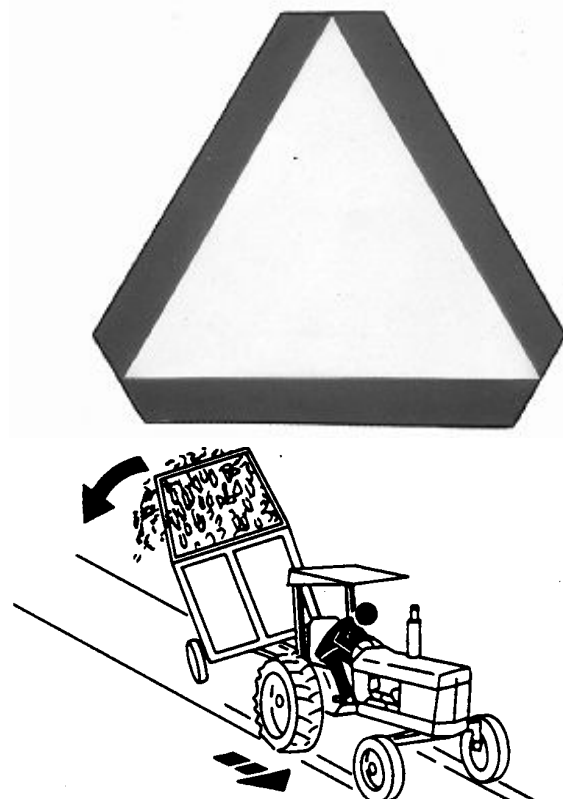
CAUTION: Use care when towing baler at transport speeds. Reduce speed if the weight of baler exceeds weight of tractor. Baler must be empty when towing it on roads.

IMPORTANT: Do not make sharp turns when towing baler. Damage could result if tongue strikes tractor tire.

IMPORTANT: Maximum transport speed is determined by local road traffic regulations and speed capability of the implement. To determine the appropriate tire pressure, see Tire Inflation in Preparing the Baler section.

Always observe local road traffic regulations when driving on public roads.

When transporting baler at high speeds, a rocking motion may occur. Reduce speed until rocking stops.



H28930 —UN—30JUN89

TS216 —UN—23AUG88

OUCC007,00018D6 -19-22DEC10-1/1

Recommended Warning Lights

CAUTION: Use of flashing warning lights and turn signals are recommended when towing this equipment on public roads.

NOTE: A safety lighting kit is available from your John Deere dealer.



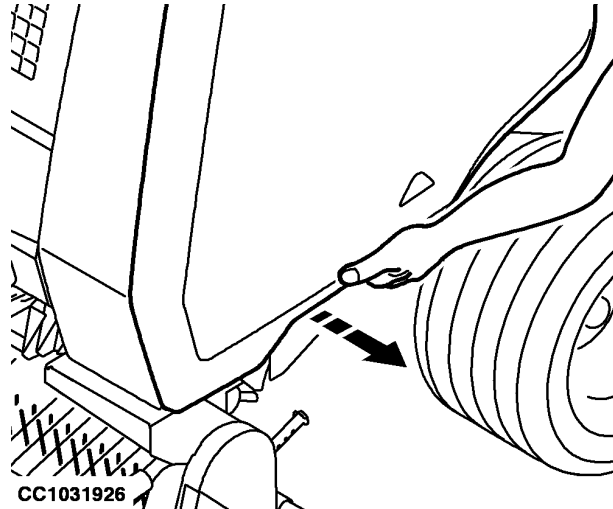
CC1031055

CC1031055 —UN—22OCT08

OUCC006,00014B8 -19-22OCT08-1/1

Check Side Doors Are Locked

⚠ CAUTION: Pull on side doors to make sure they are locked.



CC1031926 —UN—30NOV09

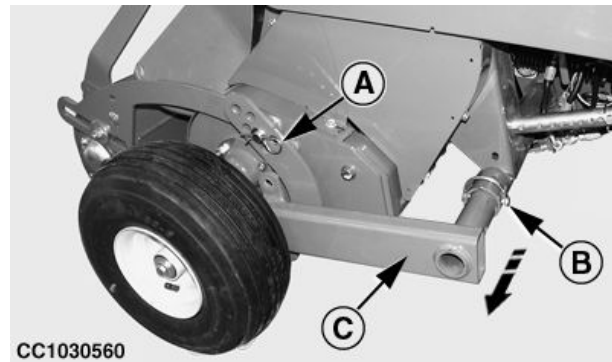
OUCC006,000159E -19-27JAN10-1/1

Move Pickup Gauge Wheels in Transport Position

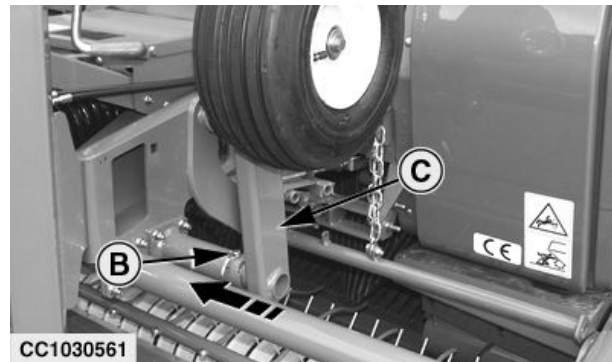
1. Remove shaft locking pin (B).
2. Remove spring-locking pin (A).
3. Remove gauge wheel arm (C).
4. Position gauge wheel arm (C) as shown. Secure it with shaft locking pin (B).
5. Replace spring-locking pin (A) in the initial position.
6. Repeat procedure on opposite side.

A—Spring-locking pin
B—Shaft locking pin

C—Gauge wheel arm



CC1030560 —UN—26NOV08



CC1030561 —UN—26NOV08

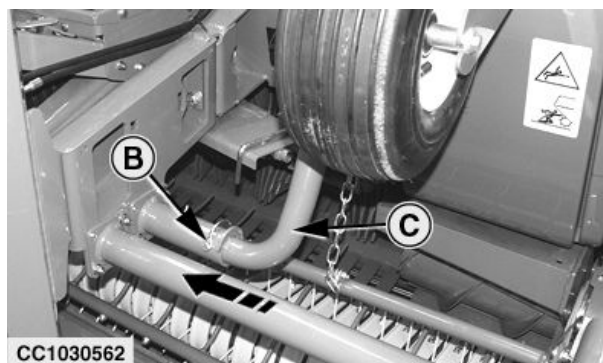
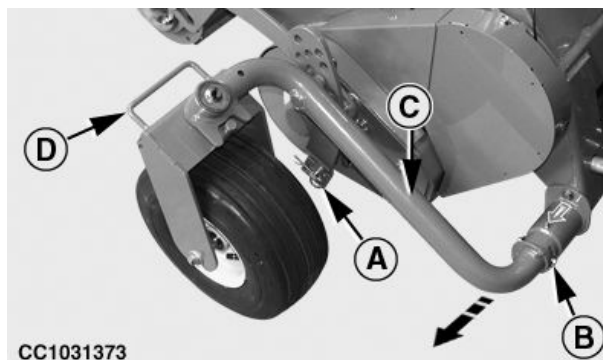
OUCC006,00013DC -19-26NOV08-1/1

Put Caster Gauge Wheels in Transport Position

1. Remove shaft locking pin (B).
2. Remove spring-locking pin (A).
3. Remove caster gauge wheel arm (C) by using handle (D).
4. Position caster gauge wheel arm (C) as shown and secure it with shaft locking pin (B).
5. Repeat procedure on opposite side.

A—Spring-locking Pin
B—Shaft Locking Pin

C—Caster Gauge Wheel Arm
D—Caster Gauge Wheel Handle



CC1031373 —UN—30MAR09

CC1030562 —UN—14OCT08

CC03745,0000F98 -19-12MAY09-1/1

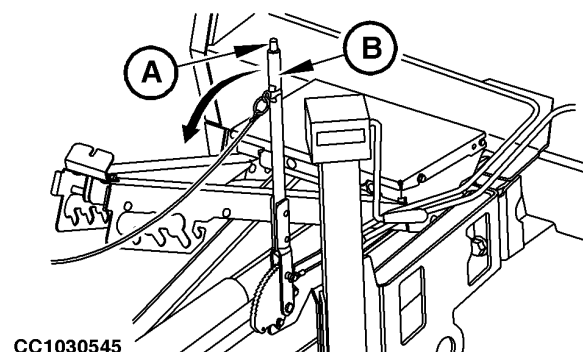
Park the Machine (Baler with Hydraulic Brakes)

Pull lever (B) to engage parking brake.

To disengage parking brake, pull lever (B), push button (A) then release lever.

A—Button

B—Lever



CC1030545 —UN—22OCT08

OUC006,00013BF -19-13FEB08-1/1

Park the Machine (Baler with Air Brakes)

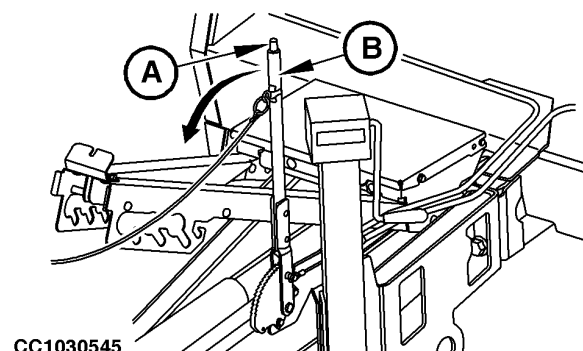
Parking brake

Pull lever (B) to engage parking brake.

To disengage parking brake, pull lever (B), push button (A) then release lever.

A—Button

B—Lever



CC1030545 —UN—22OCT08

Continued on next page

OUC006,00013C0 -19-13FEB08-1/2

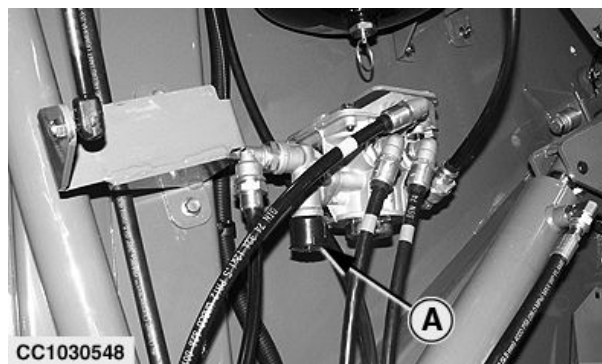
Air Brake Valve

When the air brake hoses are not connected or accidentally disconnected from the tractor, the round baler brakes are automatically engaged.

To release round baler brakes manually, press on button (A).

The round baler brakes are automatically released when the air brake hoses are reconnected to the tractor brake system.

A—Button



CC1030548 —UN—23SEP08

OUC006,00013C0 -19-13FEB08-2/2

Break-In Period

Break In Baler

IMPORTANT: Belt and drive loads increase as the bale size approaches maximum diameter. Frequent forming of oversize bales can lead to premature failures.

Consider the period necessary to form approximately the first fifty bales as the break-in period, i.e. until paint inside bale chamber has worn off.

Before operation, lubricate telescoping members of telescoping driveline liberally.

IMPORTANT: If slippage occurs during action on cam-type cut out clutch, disengage PTO and re-engage at low idle until cam clutch re-engages, then operate again at rated PTO speed.

OUC006,000182F -19-11FEB13-1/1

After the First 10 Hours - Wheel Nut Torque

Check wheel nut torque after the first 10 hours of use. See [Check Wheel Nut Torque](#) in Preparing the Baler section.

IMPORTANT: Repeat the procedure each time a wheel has been removed and installed.

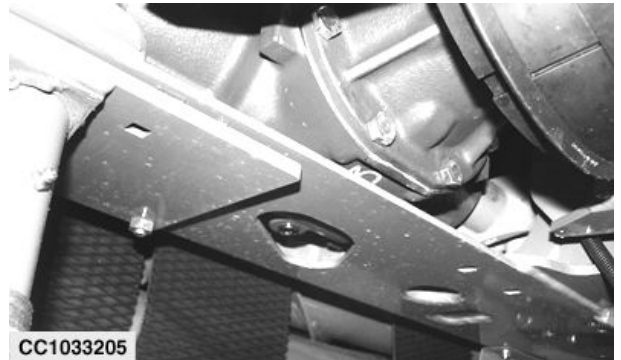


CC1035346 —UN—11OCT11

OUC006,000182E -19-20DEC12-1/1

After the First 50 Hours - Gear Case

Change the oil in the gear case after the first 50 hours of operation. See [Every 500 Hours or Yearly - Drain and Refill Gear Case](#) in Lubrication and Maintenance section.



CC1033205 —UN—06OCT10

OUC006,0001830 -19-11FEB13-1/1

After the First 50 Hours - Wheel Nut Torque

Check wheel nut torque after the first 50 hours of use. See [Check Wheel Nut Torque](#) in Preparing the Baler section.

IMPORTANT: Repeat the procedure each time a wheel has been removed and installed.



CC1035346 —UN—11OCT11

OUC006,0001839 -19-20DEC12-1/1

Operating the Baler—General Purposes

Before Each Use of the Baler

Adjust the Baler:

1. Adjust the pickup height. See [Adjust Pickup Height](#) in this section.
2. Adjust the pickup gauge wheels. See [Adjust Pickup Gauge Wheels](#) or [Adjust Pickup Caster Gauge Wheels](#) in this section.
3. Adjust the bale density. See [Adjust Bale Density](#) in this section.
4. Adjust the short crop deflector or adjust the windrow compressor roll. See [Adjust Short Crop Deflector](#) or [Adjust Windrow Compressor Roll](#) in this section.
5. If equipped, select the number of precutter knives. See [Select Number of Precutter Knives \(if Equipped\)](#) in this section.

Set Control Monitor Functions:

1. Check that the drop floor is in raised position. See [Baler Main Page Display Description](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
2. Adjust the bale diameter. See [Set Bale Diameter](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
3. Select the tying system. See [Select Tying System](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
4. Adjust net and/or twine tying system. See [Adjust Net Tying](#) and/or [Adjust Twine Tying](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
5. Select tying start mode. See [Select Tying Start Mode](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
6. Adjust the soft core diameter. See [Operate Soft Core System](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
7. Select the customer and field number. See [Customer and Field Counters](#) in Operating Baler Application section.

DC82261,0000554 -19-12NOV14-1/1

Clean the Machine to Prevent Fire

CAUTION: Before working on the machine, disengage PTO, engage parking brake, shut off tractor engine and remove key. Wait for all moving parts to come to a standstill.

To reduce risk of fire, clean the machine several times per day, adjust cleaning frequency based on baling conditions.

Remove buildup of crop material and other debris by hand or using any other available tools, especially near bearings and moving parts.

DC82261,00004F8 -19-12AUG14-1/1

In Case of Fire Take Following Action

Stop baling immediately at the first sign of flames, smoke, scorched smell, or an unusual sound.

CAUTION: Do not risk personal injury. Burning tires and heated gas springs can explode unexpectedly. Avoid burns or smoke inhalation. Do not attempt to extinguish a fire that is too far advanced, move safely away from the fire.

If the fire can be extinguished or contained safely, proceed carefully and follow these guidelines.

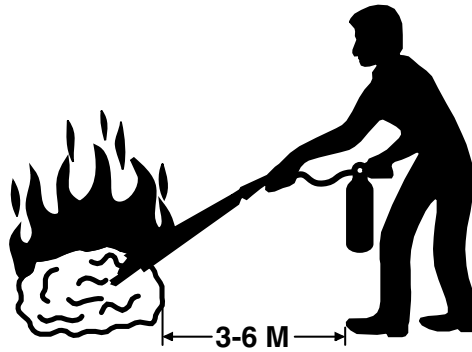
1. Position the tractor upwind from the baler to avoid the fire overtaking the tractor.
2. Open the baler gate, eject any crop material from the bale chamber, drive away from the material.
3. Disengage PTO, engage parking brake, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
4. Pull the draw pin, detach safety chains, disconnect electrical harness.
5. Drive the tractor away from the baler (letting the driveline, and hydraulic connections pull free).
6. Call the fire department and give them your location.
7. Do not position yourself under an open baler gate. It may fall if the baler is on fire.
8. Stay upwind of the fire; follow instructions on your fire extinguisher when available.



TS227—UN—15APR13

CC03745,000114C -19-25SEP14-1/1

Operate Pressurized Water Tank



⚠ CAUTION: Do not risk personal injury. If a fire is too far advanced, do not try to extinguish it.

If a fire can be safely extinguished, proceed carefully and follow these guidelines:

1. Remove water pressurized tank from bracket and carry to area of fire.
2. Approach area of fire with wind to your back.
3. Pull the safety pin out of the actuating lever.
4. Hold water pressurized tank upright and aim hose at base of flames.
5. Squeeze lever of pressurized water tank to direct water on fire.
6. Move hose to cover the source of the fire evenly with water.

After each use, refill pressurized water tank, see Charge Pressurized Water Tank in Service section.

DC82261,00004D9 -19-13AUG14-1/1

H90363—UN—05DEC07

Crop Preparation

Windrow Size

Good, uniform bales are made by feeding either full pickup width windrows or narrow windrows having a width of half or less than half of the pickup width.

Avoid medium-sized windrows. As the operator crosses this size windrow to crowd material into the ends of the pickup, material is continuously being fed to the center. As a result, more material will be fed into the center of the bale than in the ends. This results in barrel-shaped bales with low density at the ends and high density in the center.

Preparing the Hay Crops for Baling

The crop to be baled can be prepared in a number of ways, depending on your preference and equipment available. The most desirable bales are produced when the crop is cut, conditioned and then raked into windrows of the proper size. This allows the operator to weave and properly position the material in the baler, producing compact, uniform bales. See Windrow Size above.

If moisture content is too high, spoilage can be expected.

If moisture content is too low, excessive leaf loss and shatter will occur.

Cut the crop as long as possible. In most crops, longer material is easier to bale and results in smoother finished, more weather-resistant bales.

Do not overcondition the material, particularly legume-type crops such as alfalfa and clover.

Overconditioning will cause the leaves to dry too quickly and break off where they are damaged, resulting in losses. If the bales are to be stored outside, excessive shattering of stems will invite moisture absorption.

Underconditioning can also cause spoilage, particularly when baling cane-type crops and other heavy-stemmed materials.

NOTE: Excessively dry, slippery material sometimes encountered in maize stalks, certain grasses, and various type of grain straws can be successfully baled provided the material is of sufficient length to hold the bale together.

NOTE: Difficulties can be experienced, especially when forming the core, if the material is excessively dry and the fibres too short. If baling this type material, best results can be obtained by reducing the PTO speed to approximately 1/2 while the core is being formed and then increasing the speed as the bale grows.

Preparing the Silage Crops for Baling

The crop can be cut and prepared with the usual equipment such as mower or a mower-conditioner and a tedder rake.

Produce uniform windrows. A flat, full windrow is desirable. The best results for conservation are obtained when the crop is baled at a dry matter content between 40 and 50%.

OUC006,00019B0 -19-21NOV12-1/1

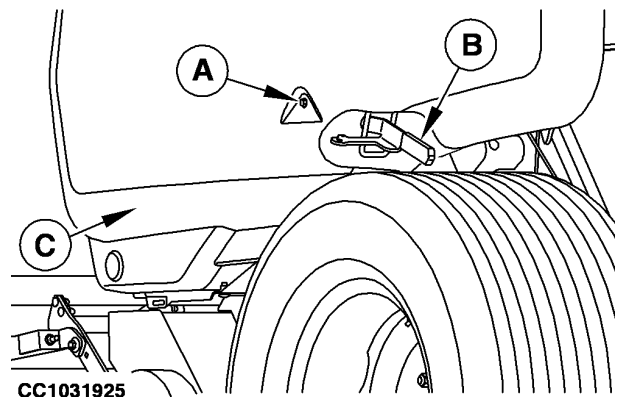
Open and Close the Side Door

1. Turn lock (A).
2. Pull latch (B).
3. Open the side door (C).

After closing a side door, pull on door to make sure it is locked.

A—Lock
B—Latch

C—Side Door



CC1031925

CC1031925 —UN—30NOV09

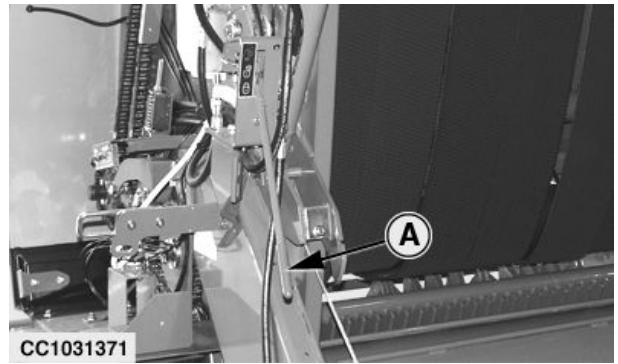
OUC006,000159F -19-20NOV09-1/1

Gate Lock Valve

CAUTION: Before working inside or around baler with an open gate, gate lock lever (A) must be moved to locked position. Use this safety feature any time gate is open. Close gate when leaving baler unattended.

The gate lock valve locks each gate lift cylinder independently with the gate in any position.

A—Gate Lock Lever



CC1031371

CC1031371—UN—31MAR09

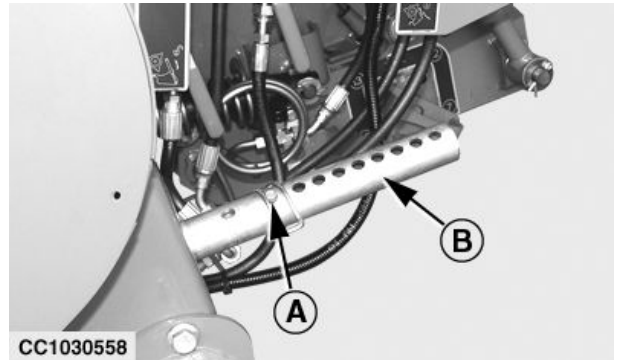
OUCC006,000154D -19-03JUN09-1/1

Adjust Pickup Height

1. Act on selective control valve lever to raise the pickup.
2. Remove shaft locking pin (A) then engage it through one hole of the downstop (B).
3. Act on selective control valve lever to fully lower the pickup.
4. Check pickup height.
5. Repeat procedure until the desired height is obtained.

A—Shaft locking pin

B—Downstop



CC1030558

CC1030558—UN—14OCT08

OUCC006,00013DA -19-23OCT08-1/1

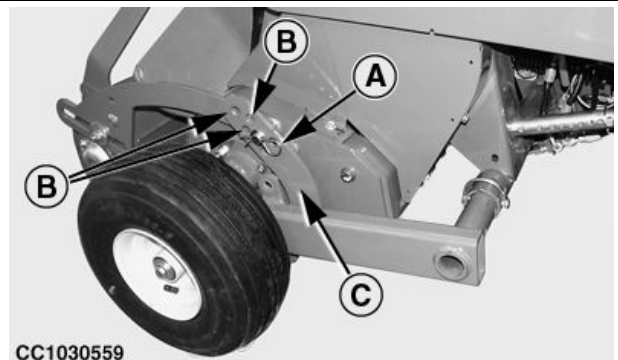
Adjust Pickup Gauge Wheels

IMPORTANT: Gauge wheels are not designed to be in constant contact with the ground.

1. Adjust the pickup height.
2. Act on selective control valve lever to fully lower the pickup.
3. Remove spring-locking pin (A) then choose one of the positioning holes (B) to fix support (C) so that gauge wheel is just above the ground.

NOTE: Gauge wheel must be approximately at the same height as pickup teeth.

4. Install spring-locking pin (A).
5. Repeat procedure on opposite side.



CC1030559

A—Spring-locking pin
B—Positioning holes

C—Support

CC1030559—UN—23SEP08

OUCC006,00013DB -19-07MAR08-1/1

Adjust Pickup Caster Gauge Wheels

IMPORTANT: Caster gauge wheels are not designed to be in constant contact with the ground.

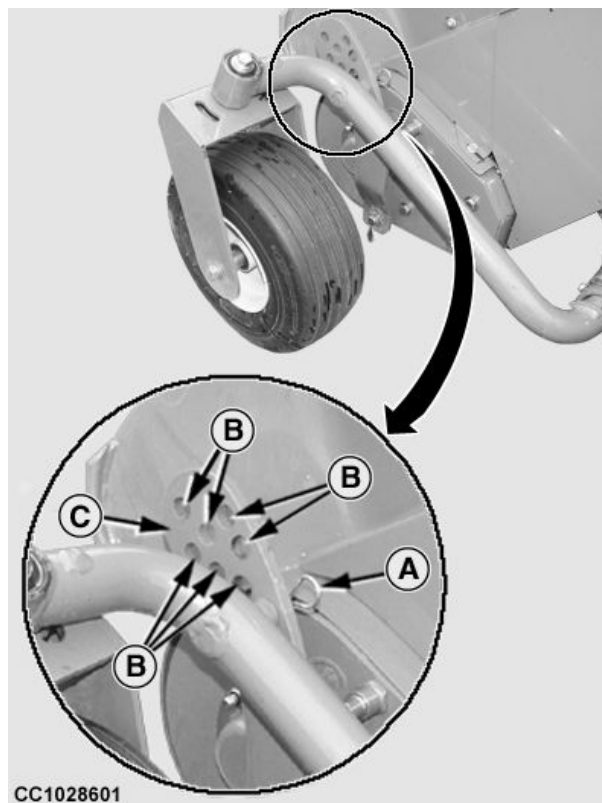
1. Adjust the pickup height.
2. Act on selective control valve lever to fully lower the pickup.
3. Remove spring-locking pin (A) then choose one of the positioning holes (B) to fix support (C) so that caster gauge wheel is just above the ground.

NOTE: Caster gauge wheel must be approximately at the same height as pickup teeth.

4. Install spring-locking pin (A).
5. Repeat procedure on opposite side.

A—Spring-locking pin
B—Positioning holes

C—Support



CC1028601

CC1028601—UN—19SEP06

OUC006,00013DD -19-07MAR08-1/1

Adjust Short Crop Deflector

The short crop deflector (A) can be set in several operating positions when baling short crops or set in storage position when baling normal crops.

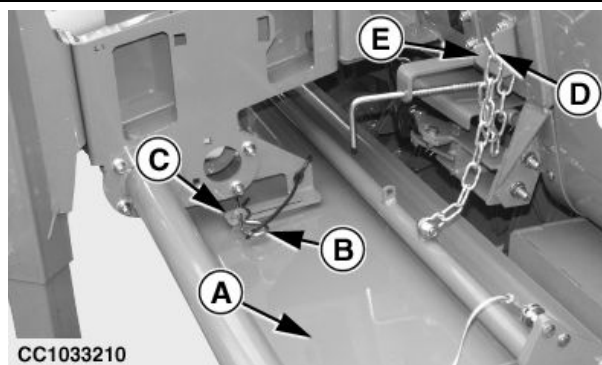
Moving from Storage to Operating Position:

1. Hold short crop deflector (A) by hand, then remove spring locking pin (B).
2. Let the short crop deflector (A) fall down.
3. Store spring locking pin (B) on strap (C).
4. Depending on the windrow thickness, attach chain link (D) on chain anchor (E) to obtain the desired space between tip of pickup teeth and short crop deflector (A).

Moving from Operating to Storage Position:

1. Remove spring locking pin (B) from strap (C).
2. Raise short crop deflector (A) and secure it with spring locking pin (B) on strap (C).

NOTE: Chain can stay attached on anchor to recover the same short crop deflector (A) adjustment for next utilization.



CC1033210

A—Short Crop Deflector
B—Spring Locking Pin
C—Strap

D—Chain
E—Anchor

CC1033210—UN—11OCT10

OUC006,00016C9 -19-07OCT10-1/1

Adjust Windrow Compressor Roll

Adjust height of windrow compressor roll (A):

1. Fully raise the pickup with selective control valve lever.
2. Remove chain (B) from anchor (C) on both sides.
3. Slowly lower the pickup until the middle of windrow compressor roll (A) and the top of the windrow are aligned.
4. Attach chain (B) on anchor (C) as shown, leaving the minimum of chain links (B) hanging.

NOTE: Check that the number of chain links (B) is the same on both sides.

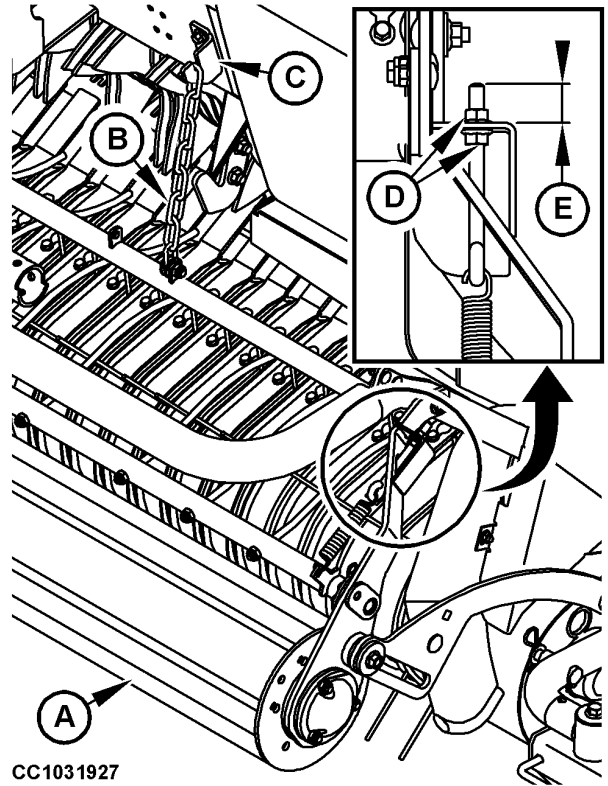
5. Fully lower the pickup.
6. Check windrow compressor roll (A) height, repeat procedure if needed.

Adjust spring load of crop compressor rods:

Adjust nuts (D) to obtain specified length (E) on both sides.

	Specification
E—Length.....	16 ± 1 mm (0.63 ± 0.04 in.)

A—Windrow Compressor Roll D—Nuts
B—Chain E—Length
C—Anchor



CC1031927 —UN—21DEC09

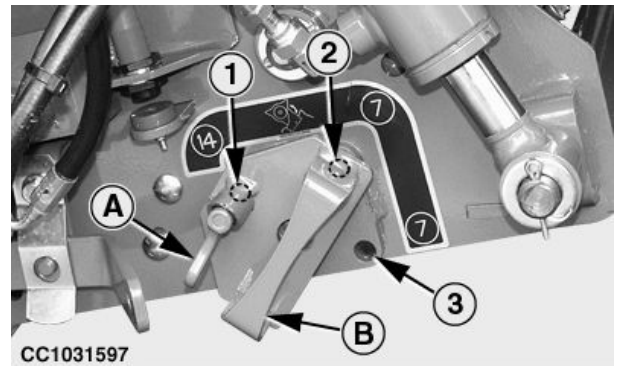
OUC006,0001812 -19-11FEB13-1/1

Select Number of Precutter Knives (if Equipped)

IMPORTANT: Precutter knives must be retracted before modifying their number. See **Retract or Engage Precutter Knives**, in **Operating Baler Application** section.

Baler with Precutter, 14 Knives:

1. Place latch (A) in unlock position.
2. Turn handle (B) clockwise or counterclockwise to select the desired number of knives.
3. Align latch (A) with one of the positioning holes (1-2-3).
4. Place latch (A) in lock position.



Precutter, 14 Knives

A—Latch
B—Handle
1—14 Knives

2—7 Knives (First Set)
3—7 Knives (Second Set)

CC1031597 —UN—23JUN09

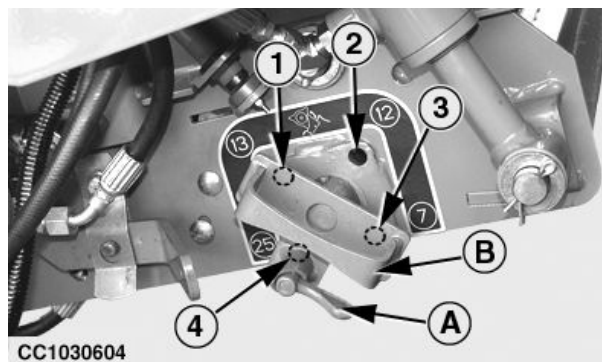
Continued on next page

OUC006,0001662 -19-12JUL10-1/2

Baler with Precutter, 25 Knives:

1. Place latch (A) in unlock position.
2. Turn handle (B) clockwise or counterclockwise to select the desired number of knives.
3. Align latch (A) with one of the positioning holes (1-2-3-4).
4. Place latch (A) in lock position.

A—Latch
B—Handle
1—13 Knives
2—12 Knives
3—7 Knives
4—25 Knives



Precutter, 25 Knives

OUCC006,0001662 -19-12JUL10-2/2

CC1030604—UN—02OCT08

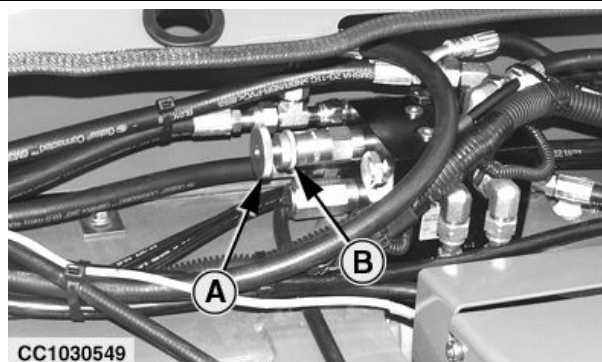
Adjust Bale Density

NOTE: To adjust bale density, close gate and lower belt tension arm to turn knob (A) more easily.

To obtain maximum bale density, loosen locking ring (B) and turn knob (A) clockwise until seated. If less compact bales are required, turn knob counterclockwise (maximum four turns from seated position). Tighten locking ring (B).

For initial adjustment on a new baler:

Loosen locking ring (B) and turn knob (A) clockwise until seated. Turn knob (A) counterclockwise 1 1/2 turns and tighten locking ring (B).



OUCC006,00013C9 -19-15FEB08-1/1

CC1030549—UN—14OCT08

Bale Density Gauge

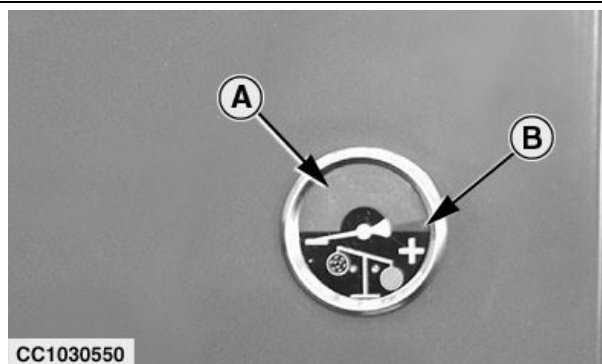
The gauge indicates the relative pressure within the hydraulic bale tensoning system while forming a bale.

NOTE: The gauge will not display a higher density setting until more material is fed into the baler.

The green band (A) represents normal baler operating pressure range.

If the needle reaches the red band (B):

- Reduce bale density.
- Check for faulty gauge.



A—Green Band

B—Red Band

OUCC006,00017EA -19-13SEP11-1/1

CC1030550—UN—23SEP08

Feed the Material

Full Pickup Width Windrows:

This is the ideal windrow width.

This windrow should be even with little or no crown. Too much crown will result in barrel-shaped bales.

Full-width windrows are desirable since no weaving or crossing the windrow is necessary.

Narrow Windrows:

Due to their self-cleaning tread, belts grip material and ensure a quick compact core formation. This avoids weaving at the start of baling procedure.

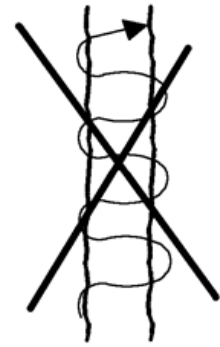
Once the core is formed (after 2 to 3 m; 8 to 10 ft. of forward travel), start the weaving pattern to feed material alternately into the sides of the pickup.

Refer to the information given in [Guidelines to Form a Good Bale](#) in Operating Baler Application section to correctly feed the material.

Bales formed in this way will be more uniform than bales formed by continuously driving the tractor in a weaving pattern as shown. Continuous weaving results in



CC1033565



CC1033565—UN—16DEC10

excessive material being placed in the center of the bale, and may cause belt tracking problems.

Medium-Sized Windrows:

Whenever possible, avoid medium-sized windrows.

When the operator crosses this type of windrow to feed the ends of the pickup, material continues to be fed into the center. As a result, more material will be fed into the center of the bale than at the ends. This results in barrel-shaped bales.

DC82261,000058D -19-12DEC14-1/1

Operate the Baler in Short, Dry, Slick Crops

In case of plugging or irregular bale shape:

Try one or more of the following methods:

- Raise pickup as high as practical.
- Reduce tractor PTO speed.
- Reduce bale density as necessary.
- Make larger windrows (rake together as necessary).
- Reducing number of knives can improve the bale shape (if equipped).

- In case of bale start difficulties in dry conditions, soft core function can be used during the first 80 cm (2 ft 7.5 in.) of bale diameter to help in bale core formation.
- Reinstall belt tension arm fingers, if removed.

In case of baling extremely short dry hay:

It may be necessary to lower the baler as much as possible.

FS62804,0000353 -19-11MAY09-1/1

Operate the Baler in Cornstalks

Cut stalks prior to baling to improve pickup tooth life.

Raise machine and lower the pickup (teeth must not touch the ground) to increase the feed opening.

Do not rake more than six rows together or plugging may occur at the pickup area. Higher productivity can be obtained by baling smaller windrows at faster ground speeds.

Be sure to maintain rated PTO speed.

In case of baler with precutter device:

If stalks have not been cut prior to baling, put precutter knives in cutting position and slowly drive over the windrow to improve pickup tooth life.

CC03745,0000F94 -19-11MAY09-1/1

Operate the Baler in Silage and Damp Crops

IMPORTANT: When baling silage, the bale diameter must not exceed 1.20—1.30 m (3 ft. 11 in. to 4 ft. 3 in.). Bigger bales could result in belt damage.

Always start the bale with pickup centered on the windrow.

Reduce tractor engine speed to low idle before entering the windrow. Select a gear ratio which gives a speed of 6—10 km/h (4—6 mph) at rated PTO speed.

Do not stop forward travel for at least 2—3 m (8—10 ft.) once you have entered the crop, so as to feed enough material to force the bale to start.

To ensure smooth feeding, make sure that tractor drawbar does not catch or disturb windrow.

In first cut or in case of long crop, use soft core function during the first 80 cm (2 ft. 7.5 in.) of bale diameter.

In wet conditions and when using the soft core option, install the upper roll drive bundle if belt slippage occurs. See Attachments section.

OUC006,00013C6 -19-27JUN08-1/1

Rotate Baler by Hand

CAUTION: DO NOT TAKE CHANCES! Never use any type of tool or spanner on shaft while tractor engine is running. Shut off tractor engine, remove key and wait for moving parts to come to a standstill. Always remove tool from shaft as soon as you have finished using it.

A spanner can be positioned on gear case output shaft (A) of baler if it is necessary to rotate baler by hand.

A—Gear case output shaft



CC1030518 —UN—23SEP08

OUC006,00013C5 -19-13FEB08-1/1

Unplug Baler

Unplug rotary feeder from the tractor cab:

See [Unplug Rotary Feeder](#) in Operating Baler Application section to unplug the baler safely.

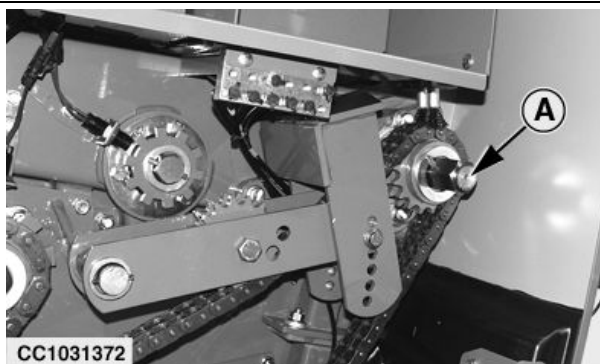
Unplug rotary feeder manually:

CAUTION: DO NOT TAKE CHANCES! Never use any type of tool or spanner on shaft while tractor engine is running. Shut off tractor engine, remove key and wait for moving parts to come to a standstill. Always remove tool from shaft as soon as you have finished using it.

In some cases of plugging, it is necessary to unplug baler manually.

To unplug baler manually, place a spanner on gear case output shaft (A) in order to rotate the rotary feeder in reverse direction.

NOTE: Place tractor PTO in neutral position before rotating gear case output shaft (A). See your tractor operator's manual to place PTO in neutral position.



A—Gear Case Output Shaft

CC1031372 —UN—31MAR09

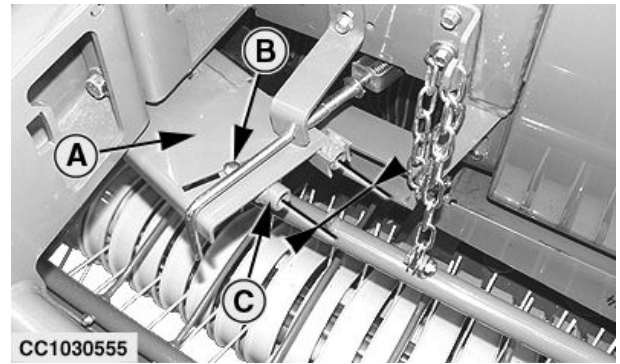
OUC006,000195C -19-11FEB13-1/1

Adjust Twine Spacing

The double twine arm (A) can be adjusted to allow more or less space between twines around bale.

Loosen nut (B) and push arm (C) forward or backward to allow more or less space. Tighten nut (B).

IMPORTANT: The spacing chosen must be the same as the one set with the monitor. See **Adjust Twine Tying in Operating Baler Application** section.



CC1030555

CC1030555—UN—14OCT08

OUCC006,000154F -19-19NOV09-1/1

Adjust Twine Guide

Twine guide (A) allows the operator to adjust distance (C) between the twine and the left end of the bale.

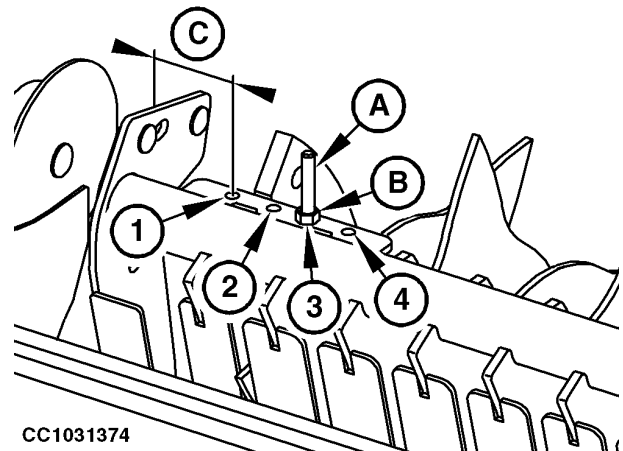
NOTE: Check that the twine guide position matches the monitor setting. See **Adjust Twine Tying in Operating Baler Application** section.

Baler without Precutter, 25 Knives:

1. Loosen lock nut (B).
2. Remove twine guide (A).
3. Install twine guide (A) in one of holes (1-2-3-4) and tighten lock nut (B).

NOTE: When using the baler for dry, slick crops such as straw or flax, use hole (4).

When using the baler in normal operating conditions, use hole (1), (2) or (3).



CC1031374

CC1031374—UN—30MAR09

A—Twine Guide
B—Lock Nut
C—Distance
1— 80 mm (3.15 in.)
2— 120 mm (4.72 in.)
3— 150 mm (5.91 in.)
4— 190 mm (7.48 in.)

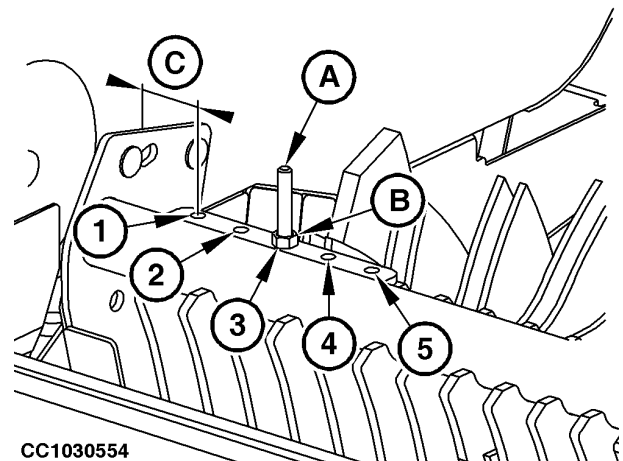
OUCC006,00016CB -19-20OCT10-1/2

Baler with Precutter, 25 Knives:

1. Loosen lock nut (B).
2. Remove twine guide (A).
3. Install twine guide (A) in one of holes (1-2-3-4-5) and tighten lock nut (B).

NOTE: When using the baler for dry, slick crops such as straw or flax, use hole (4) or (5).

When using the baler in normal operating conditions, use hole (1), (2) or (3).



CC1030554

CC1030554—UN—22OCT08

A—Twine Guide
B—Lock Nut
C—Distance
1— 60 mm (2.36 in.)
2— 100 mm (3.94 in.)
3— 140 mm (5.51 in.)
4— 180 mm (7.09 in.)
5— 220 mm (8.66 in.)

OUCC006,00016CB -19-20OCT10-2/2

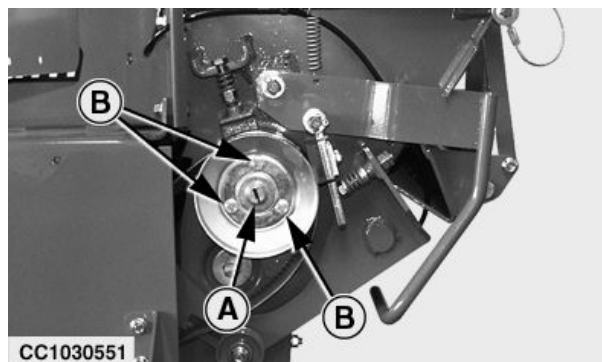
Adjust Net Tying Stretch

To adjust net tying stretch, proceed as follows:

1. Loosen cap screws (A) and (B).

A—Cap Screw

B—Cap Screws



CC1030551—UN—23SEP08

CC03745,0001026 -19-26JAN11-1/5

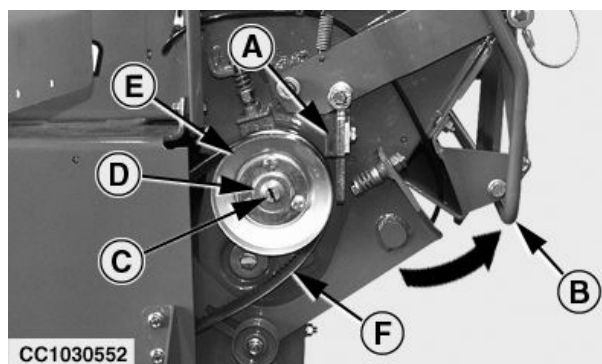
2. Remove cap screw (C) with washers (D).
3. Release net feed roll brake lever (B). Push lever (B) down and out, then raise it to disengage brake pad (A).

NOTE: Once unlocked, lever (B) is kept in upper position as shown.

4. Remove sheave (E) and belt (F).

A—Brake Pad
B—Brake Lever
C—Cap Screw

D—Washers
E—Sheave
F—Belt



CC1030552—UN—23SEP08

CC03745,0001026 -19-26JAN11-2/5

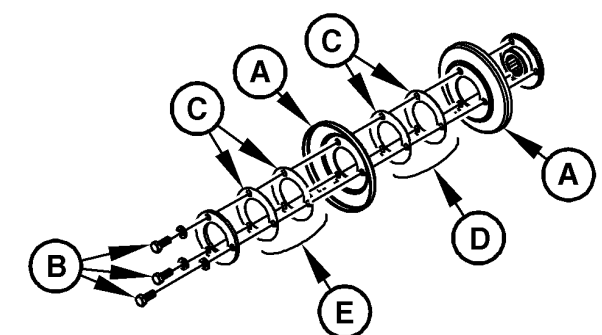
5. Remove cap screws (B) and separate sheave (A).

NOTE: During removal, record number and location of shims (C).

6. Net tying stretch depends on number of shims (C) in position (D).
 - To increase net tying stretch, transfer shims (C) from position (D) to position (E).
 - To decrease net tying stretch, transfer shims (C) from position (E) to position (D).

NOTE: Factory setting is two shims (C) in position (D).

Once the number of shims is adjusted, reassemble sheave.



A—Sheave
B—Cap Screws
C—Shims

D—Adjustment Position
E—Storage Position

CC1031067—UN—24NOV08

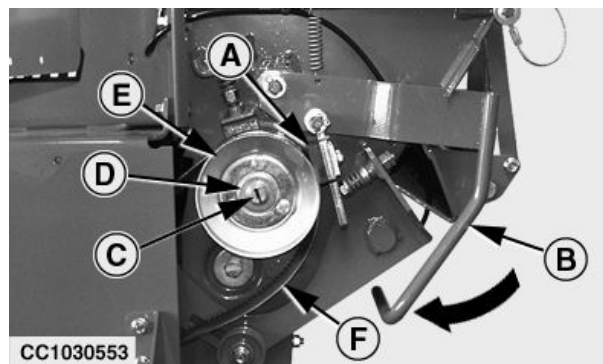
Continued on next page

CC03745,0001026 -19-26JAN11-3/5

7. Reinstall sheave (E) and belt (F).
8. Apply net feed roll brake lever (B).
Pull lever (B) up and out, then lower it to engage brake pad (A).
9. Install cap screw (C) with washers (D).

A—Brake Pad
B—Brake Lever
C—Cap Screw

D—Washers
E—Sheave
F—Belt



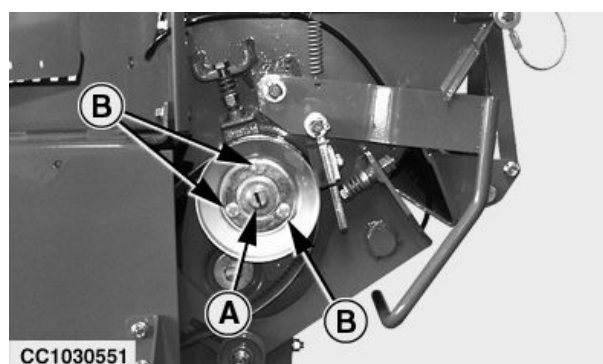
CC1030553 —UN—23SEP08

CC03745.0001026 -19-26JAN11-4/5

10. Tighten cap screws (A) and (B).

A—Cap Screw

B—Cap Screws

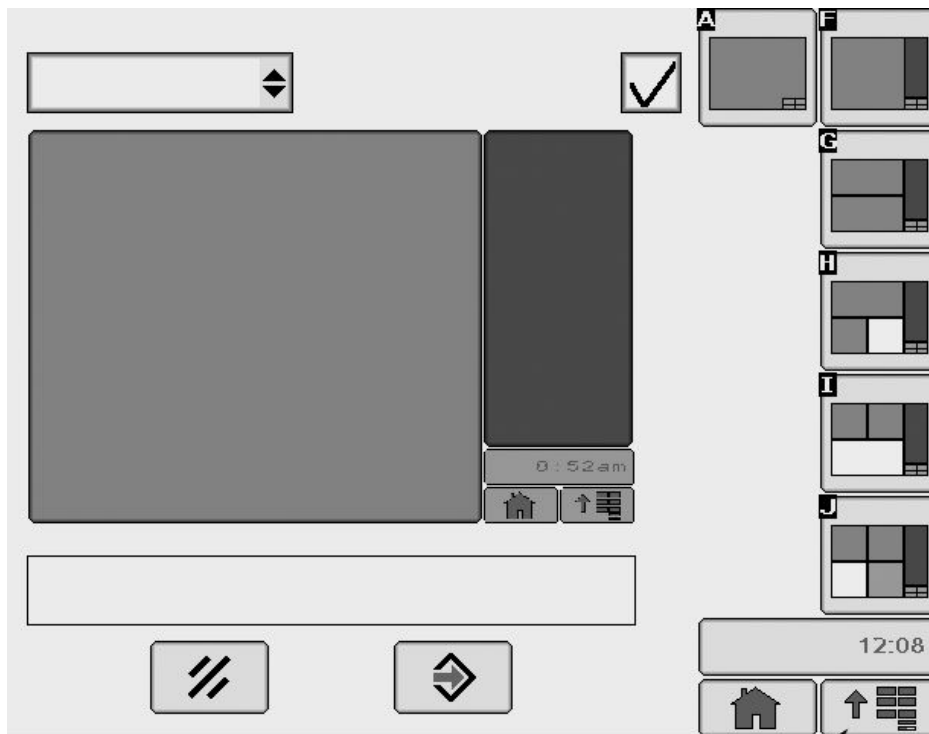


CC1030551 —UN—23SEP08

CC03745.0001026 -19-26JAN11-5/5

Operating Baler Application

Baler Application Access



CC1032323

GREENSTAR 2600 display shown

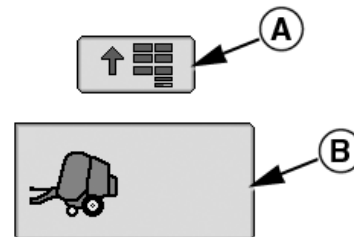
NOTE: John Deere monitors are automatically switched ON when the ignition key is turned ON.

The first time baler is connected to the monitor or after a software update, it is necessary to wait until the baler application is loaded (2 to 4 minutes).

If the baler application is not automatically displayed, select display menu softkey or button (A), then select baler application softkey (B).

NOTE: For more information about the display menu access, see your monitor operator's manual.

CC1031377



A—Display Menu Softkey or Button

B—Baler Application Softkey

OUCC006,0001518 -19-13JAN10-1/1

CC1032323 —UN—21DEC09

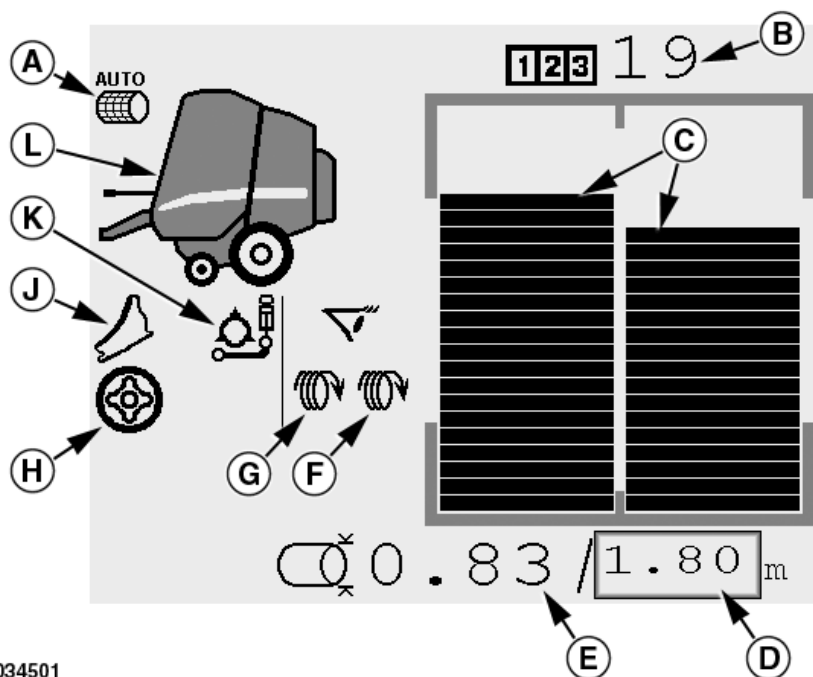
CC1031377 —UN—30SEP09

Units of Measure

In the baler application, units of measure depend on the monitor settings. Refer to your monitor operator's manual to select the desired units of measure.

OUCC006,00015A0 -19-15DEC09-1/1

Baler Main Page Display Description



CC1034501

A—Tying Mode
 B—Current Field Bale Counter
 C—Bale Shape Indicators

D—Bale Diameter (Target)
 E—Bale Diameter (Current)
 F—Right Twine Pulley Status

G—Left Twine Pulley Status
 H—Soft Core Status
 J—Precutter Knife Status

K—Drop Floor Position
 L—Baler Status

The main page allows the main baler functions to be controlled and monitored while operating in the field.

Symbol (A) indicates the selected tying mode Net or Twine and Automatic or Manual. Symbol (A) is crossed out when the selected tying start mode is automatic but unavailable. See [Select Tying System](#) and [Select Tying Start Mode](#) in this section.

Bale counter (B) indicates the total number of bales done for the selected field. See [Customer and Field Counters](#) in this section.

Bale shape indicators (C) allow the bale shape to be visualized on both sides. See [Guidelines to Form a Good Bale](#) and [Make a Bale with Bale Shape Indicators](#) in this section.

Input box (D) is used to adjust the bale diameter. See [Set Bale Diameter](#) in this section.

Current bale diameter (E) indicates the bale diameter measured during bale formation (no value displayed below 0.8 m (2 ft. 7.5 in.)).

Symbols (F) and (G) are used to monitor the rotation of twine pulleys and indicate if twine is fed during twine tying cycle. Symbols (F) and (G) are not displayed if twine pulley sensors are disabled. See [Adjust Twine Tying](#) in this section.

Symbol (H) is displayed only if soft core function is enabled. See [Operate Soft Core System](#) in this section.

Symbol (J) indicates the precutter knife position, Retracted or Engaged. Symbol (J) is crossed out when the precutter knives are retracted. See [Retract or Engage Precutter Knives](#) in this section.

Symbol (K) indicates the drop floor position, Raised or Lowered. Symbol (K) is crossed out when the drop floor is lowered. See [Unplug Rotary Feeder](#) in this section.

Baler status (L) is used to monitor the bale size, the tying processes and the rear gate position.

DC82261,000058E -19-12DEC14-1/1

CC1034501 —UN—21JAN13

Softkey Description

CC1032341 —UN—15JAN10

In the baler application, softkeys allows to navigate, start a process and enable or disable an associated function.

NOTE: Some softkeys have a triangle (A) on the upper right corner. This triangle (A) indicates that a new page will be displayed if this softkey is activated.



CC1032341

A—Triangle

OUCC006,00015C0 -19-15JAN10-1/1

Baler Application Softkey Designation

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12

Main Page softkey.

This softkey provides direct access to baler application main page. See [Baler Main Page Display Description](#) in this section.

NOTE: This softkey is available on each page of the baler application.



CC1038505

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-1/34

Soft Core softkey.

CC1031617 —UN—16SEP09

See [Operate Soft Core System](#) in this section.



CC1031617

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-2/34

Counters softkey.

CC1031613 —UN—16SEP09

See [Customer and Field Counters, Task, Season and Machine Total Counters \(Baler Up to Software Version 06.10\)](#) and [Season and Machine Total Counters \(Baler from Software Version 07.12\)](#) in this section.

NOTE: This softkey is available on each page of the baler application.



CC1031613

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-3/34

Remove Bales and Add Bales softkeys.

CC1031852 —UN—30SEP09



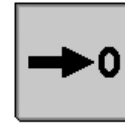
CC1031852

Continued on next page

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-4/34

Clear Current Counter softkey.

CC1031815 —UN—16SEP09

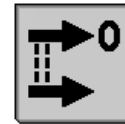


CC1031815

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-5/34

Clear All Counters softkey.

CC1031816 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031816

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-6/34

Customer and Field Counter softkey (Baler from Software Version 07.12).

CC222031 —UN—07NOV14



CC222031

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-7/34

Season and Total Counter softkey (Baler from Software Version 07.12).

CC222032 —UN—07NOV14



CC222032

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-8/34

Start Net Tying Cycle softkey.

CC1031615 —UN—16SEP09

See [Manual Start of an Automatic Tying Cycle](#) and [Automatic Start of Tying Cycle](#) in this section.



CC1031615

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-9/34

Start Twine Tying Cycle softkey.

CC1033937 —UN—15SEP11

See [Manual Start of an Automatic Tying Cycle](#) in this section.



CC1033937

Continued on next page

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-10/34

Stop Tying Cycle softkey.

CC1031890 —UN—19OCT09

See [Manual Start of an Automatic Tying Cycle](#) in this section.



CC1031890

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-11/34

Net Tying Start Mode softkey.

CC1032324 —UN—21DEC09

See [Select Tying Start Mode](#) in this section.



CC1032324

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-12/34

Twine Tying Start Mode softkey.

CC1031798 —UN—16SEP09

See [Select Tying Start Mode](#) in this section.



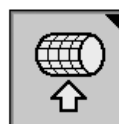
CC1031798

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-13/34

Net Tying Settings softkey.

CC1031616 —UN—16SEP09

See [Adjust Net Tying](#) in this section.



CC1031616

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-14/34

Twine Tying Settings softkey.

CC1032325 —UN—21DEC09

See [Adjust Twine Tying](#) in this section.



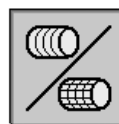
CC1032325

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-15/34

Tying System softkey.

CC1031800 —UN—16SEP09

See [Select Tying System](#) in this section.



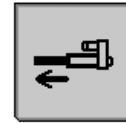
CC1031800

Continued on next page

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-16/34

Retract Actuator and Extend Actuator softkeys.

CC1031854 —UN—30SEP09



CC1031854

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-17/34

Drop Floor and Precutter Knife Management softkey.

CC1031618 —UN—16SEP09

See Retract or Engage Precutter Knives and Unplug Rotary Feeder in this section.



CC1031618

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-18/34

Drop Floor and Precutter Knife softkey.

CC1031805 —UN—16SEP09

See Unplug Rotary Feeder in this section.



CC1031805

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-19/34

Drop Floor softkey.

CC1031806 —UN—16SEP09

See Unplug Rotary Feeder in this section.



CC1031806

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-20/34

Precutter Knife softkey.

CC1031807 —UN—16SEP09

See Retract or Engage Precutter Knives in this section.



CC1031807

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-21/34

Settings softkey.

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

See this section, Operating Baler in Automation Mode section (if equipped) and Baler Application Service section.

NOTE: This softkey is available on each page of the baler application.



CC1031612

Continued on next page

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-22/34

Operating Baler Application

Next Page and Previous Page softkeys.

CC1031853 —UN—30SEP09



CC1031853

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-23/34

Baler Diagnostic softkey.

See Baler Application Service section.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09



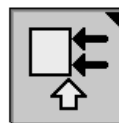
CC1031614

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-24/34

Input Test softkey.

See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.

CC1031803 —UN—16SEP09



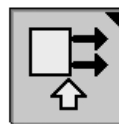
CC1031803

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-25/34

Output Test softkey.

See Test Electro-Hydraulic Components in Baler Application Service section.

CC1031804 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031804

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-26/34

Baler Calibration softkey.

See Baler Application Service section.

CC1031658 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031658

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-27/34

Twine Tying Actuator Calibration softkey.

See Calibrate Twine Tying Actuator MB421 in Baler Application Service section.

CC1031808 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031808

Continued on next page

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-28/34

Bale Diameter Calibration softkey.

CC1031809 —UN—16SEP09

See [Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311](#) in Baler Application Service section.



CC1031809

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-29/34

Left Bale Shape Calibration softkey.

CC1031810 —UN—16SEP09

See [Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322](#) in Baler Application Service section.



CC1031810

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-30/34

Right Bale Shape Calibration softkey.

CC1031811 —UN—16SEP09

See [Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322](#) in Baler Application Service section.



CC1031811

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-31/34

Gate Position Calibration softkey.

CC1031812 —UN—16SEP09

See [Calibrate Gate Position Potentiometer RB331](#) in Baler Application Service section.



CC1031812

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-32/34

Move Application to Next Screen softkey (Baler from Software Version 07.12).

CC228077 —UN—02DEC14

See [Switch Baler Application from Current Virtual Terminal to Another \(Baler from Software Version 07.12\)](#) in Baler Application Service section.



CC228077

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-33/34

Advanced Settings softkey.

CC1034498 —UN—07JUL11

See your John Deere dealer.



CC1034498

DC82261,000056D -19-17DEC14-34/34

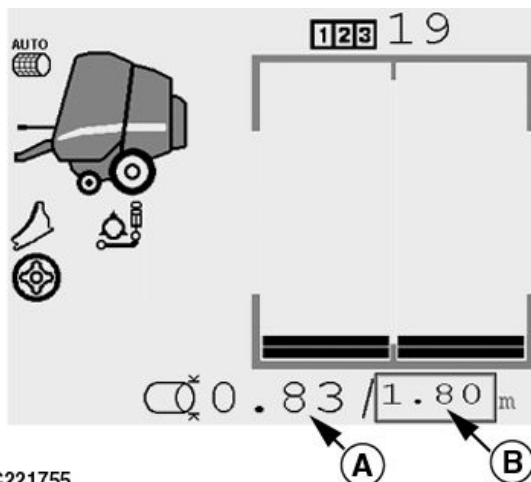
Set Bale Diameter

This adjustment will determine the diameter at which the tying cycle will automatically start.

1. On the Main page, select input box (B) and set bale diameter from 0.8 to 1.80 m (31.5 in. to 51.2 in.). The current bale diameter (A) allows the measured bale diameter to be monitored while baling.

NOTE: If bale diameter (B) is modified while baling, the new value is applied instantaneously.

A—Bale Diameter (Current) B—Bale Diameter (Target)



CC221755

DC82261,000056F -19-03APR15-1/4

2. The bale diameter may also be adjusted on the baler settings page. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09



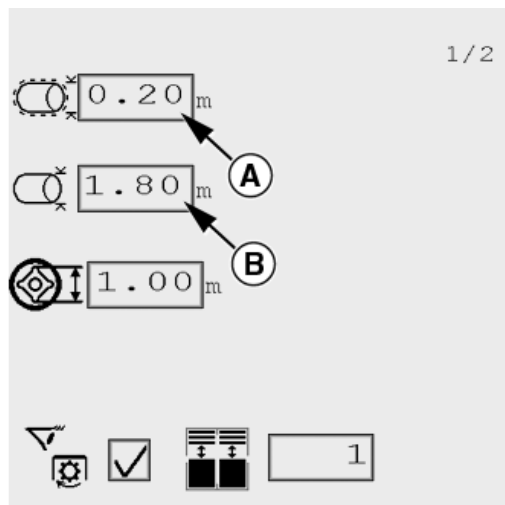
CC1031612

DC82261,000056F -19-03APR15-2/4

3. Select input box (B) and set bale diameter from 0.8 to 1.80 m (31.5 in. to 51.2 in.).

NOTE: On the baler settings page, use input box (A) to adjust the near full alarm offset. See Adjust Near Full Alarm Offset in this section.

A—Near Full Alarm Offset B—Bale Diameter



CC221758

DC82261,000056F -19-03APR15-3/4

4. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

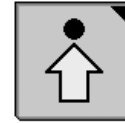
DC82261,000056F -19-03APR15-4/4

Adjust Near Full Alarm Offset

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

The near full alarm offset represents the distance below the preset bale diameter at which the near full symbol will be displayed.

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.



CC1031612

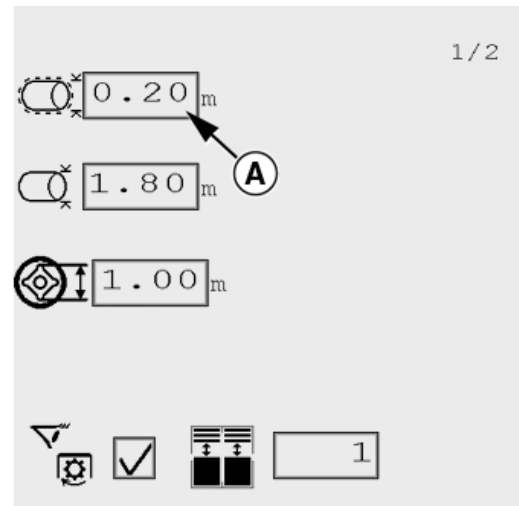
DC82261,0000576 -19-26NOV14-1/3

2. Select input box (A) and set distance from 0 to 0.3 m (0 to 11.8 in.).

NOTE: The initial factory value is 0.2 m (7.9 in.).

See Automatic Start of Tying Cycle in this section for more information about near full symbol.

A—Near Full Alarm Offset



CC221759

CC221759 —UN—02DEC14

DC82261,0000576 -19-26NOV14-2/3

3. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



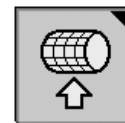
CC1038505

DC82261,0000576 -19-26NOV14-3/3

Select Tying System

CC1031616 —UN—16SEP09

1. Select Net Tying Settings or Twine Tying Settings softkey.



Net Tying Settings Softkey

CC1031616

CC1032325 —UN—21DEC09



Twine Tying Settings Softkey

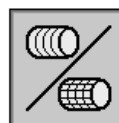
CC1032325

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000577 -19-02DEC14-1/4

2. Select and activate Tying System softkey to choose between Net or Twine tying system. The corresponding tying system setting page is displayed according to the selected tying system.

CC1031800 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031800

DC82261,0000577 -19-02DEC14-2/4

3. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

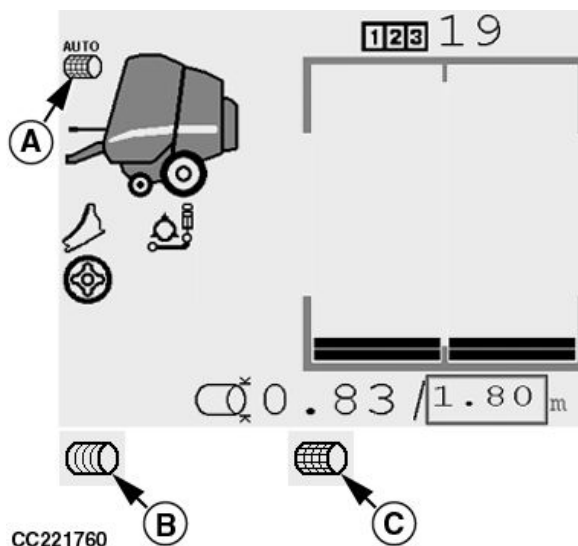
DC82261,0000577 -19-02DEC14-3/4

4. On the main page, symbol (A) indicates the selected tying system.

- Symbol (B) indicates that twine tying system is selected.
- Symbol (C) indicates that net tying system is selected.

A—Tying System
B—Twine Tying

C—Net Tying



CC221760

CC221760 —UN—02DEC14

DC82261,0000577 -19-02DEC14-4/4

Select Tying Start Mode

CC1032324 —UN—21DEC09

1. From the baler application main page, select and activate Net Tying Start Mode or Twine Tying Start Mode softkey to choose between automatic and manual mode.

NOTE: See *Select Tying System* in this section to select the desired tying system.



CC1032324

Net Tying Start Mode Softkey

CC1031798 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031798

Twine Tying Start Mode Softkey

Continued on next page

OUC006,00017E6 -19-11FEB13-1/2

2. Symbol (A) indicates the selected tying start mode.

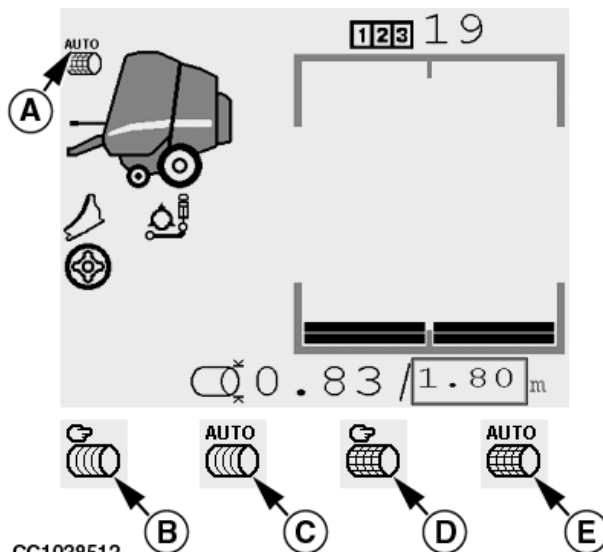
If automatic is selected, the tying cycle starts automatically when the adjusted bale diameter is reached. See [Automatic Start of Tying Cycle](#) in this section.

NOTE: Symbol (A) is crossed out when the selected tying start mode is automatic but unavailable if any of the following conditions exist:

- Automatic tying cycle is already running.
- Baler gate is not closed and latched.
- Diagnostic trouble code relating to the gate or the selected tying system is active.

If manual is selected, the tying cycle must be started manually. See [Manual Start of an Automatic Tying Cycle](#) in this section.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| A—Tying Start Mode | D—Manual Start (Net Tying) |
| B—Manual Start (Twine Tying) | E—Automatic Start (Net Tying) |
| C—Automatic Start (Twine Tying) | |

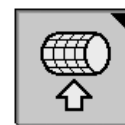


OUC006,00017E6 -19-11FEB13-2/2

Adjust Net Tying

CC1031616 —UN—16SEP09

NOTE: Before adjusting the net tying system, see [Select Tying System](#) in this section to select net tying system.



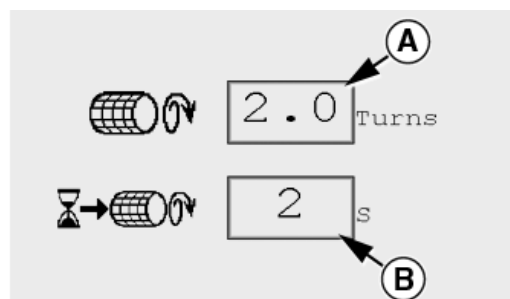
CC1031616

1. From the baler application main page, select Net Tying Settings softkey.

DC82261,000056E -19-31MAR15-1/3

2. Set net tying as follows:

- **Net Tying Density (A):**
Set net tying density between 1.2 and 10 net turns in input box (A).
- **Net Tying Delay (B):**
Set net tying delay between 0 and 9 seconds in input box (B).
The net tying delay is the time between the tying start indication on the monitor and the activation of the net actuator.
The net tying delay provides time to stop tractor forward travel and to avoid crop getting trapped between net layers.



CC1033660

A—Net Tying Density

B—Net Tying Delay

Continued on next page

DC82261,000056E -19-31MAR15-2/3

3. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,000056E -19-31MAR15-3/3

Adjust Twine Tying

CC1032325 —UN—21DEC09

NOTE: Before adjusting the twine tying system, see *Select Tying System* in this section to select twine tying system.



CC1032325

1. From the baler application main page, select "Twine Tying Settings" softkey.

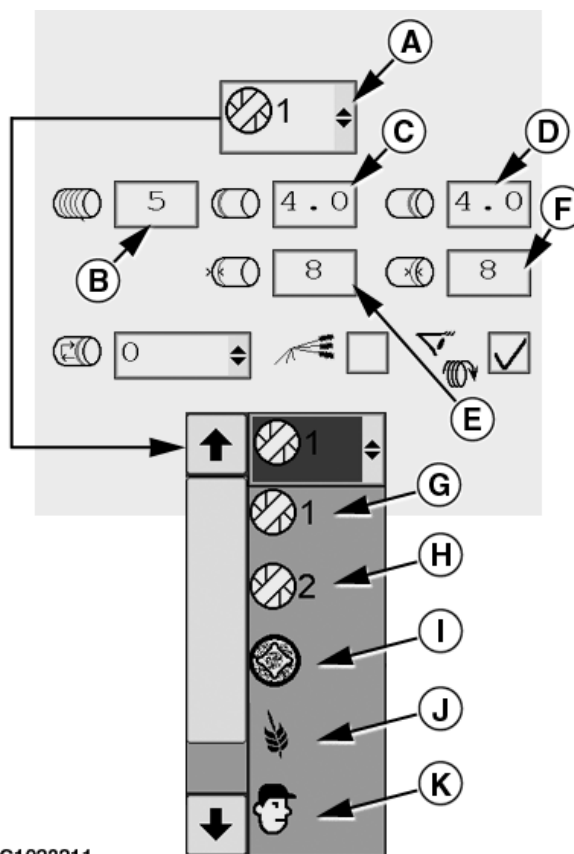
OUC006,00016CD -19-11JAN11-1/4

2. Select and activate drop-down list (A).
3. Select desired program according to crop type. The following table shows the default settings of each twine tying program.

Twine Tying Programs (Default settings)					
	Silage 1 (G)	Silage 2 (H)	Hay (I)	Straw (J)	Custom (K)
Twine spacing (B)	5 cm (2 in.)	10 cm (4 in.)	5 cm (2 in.)	2 cm (0.8 in.)	5 cm (2 in.)
Number of twine coils on left side (C)	4 turns	3 turns	2 turns	4 turns	2 turns
Number of twine coils on right side (D)	4 turns	3 turns	2 turns	4 turns	2 turns
Distance of tying end on left side (E)	8 cm (3 in.)	10 cm (4 in.)	8 cm (3 in.)	8 cm (3 in.)	10 cm (4 in.)
Distance of tying end on right side (F)	8 cm (3 in.)	10 cm (4 in.)	8 cm (3 in.)	8 cm (3 in.)	10 cm (4 in.)

A—Twine Tying Program List
B—Twine Spacing
C—Number of Twine Coils on Left Side
D—Number of Twine Coils on Right Side
E—Distance of Tying End on Left Side
F—Distance of Tying End on Right Side

G—Silage 1
H—Silage 2
I—Hay
J—Straw
K—Custom



CC1033211

CC1033211 —UN—10JAN11

Continued on next page

OUC006,00016CD -19-11JAN11-2/4

4. Each program can be customized depending on crop conditions.

• **Twine Spacing (A):**

Set value between 2 and 20 cm (0.8 and 8 in.) in input box (A).

The twine spacing (A) displayed is given for two-twine tying. When using only one twine, real twine spacing is the double of the value displayed.

NOTE: When using two twines, the distance selected on monitor must be the same as the space (J) between the two tubes of the twine arm (I). See *Adjust Twine Spacing in Operating the Baler—General Purposes* section.

• **Number of Twine Coils on Left Side (B):**

Set value between 1 and 7 in input box (B).

• **Number of Twine Coils on Right Side (C):**

Set value between 1 and 7 in input box (C).

• **Distance of Tying End on Left Side (D):**

Set value between 8 and 25 cm (3 and 10 in.) in input box (D).

NOTE: Check that the distance of tying end on left side (D) matches the twine guide adjustment. See *Adjust Twine Guide in Operating the Baler—General Purposes* section.

• **Distance of Tying End on Right Side (E):**

Set value between 8 and 25 cm (3 and 10 in.) in input box (E).

NOTE: When switching from one program to another, the customized settings will be lost. Modifications made in "Custom" program are permanently saved.

Two other specific twine tying modes are available:

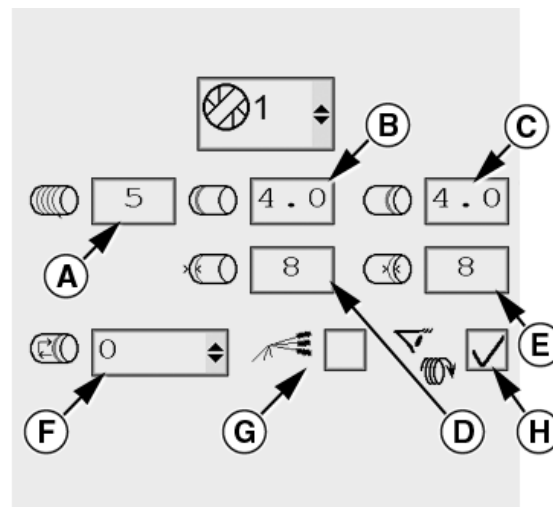
• **Re-Extension Tying Mode (F):**

Set the desired re-extension distance in drop-down list (F) to 0, 20, 40 or 60 cm (0, 8, 16 or 24 in.). When the re-extension distance value is 0, the mode is disabled.

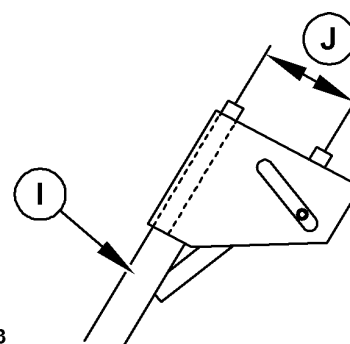
This mode is used to have more twine coils at the end of the bale tying and may help prevent twine unrolling. After the set number at tying end has been applied, the twine arm is extended again towards the center of the bale to the set distance and then, it is completely retracted.

• **Dry Straw Tying Mode (G):**

Check box (G) is used to enable or disable dry straw tying mode.



CC1033212



CC1033213

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| A—Twine Spacing | F—Re-Extension Tying Mode |
| B—Number of Twine Coils on Left Side | G—Dry Straw Tying Mode |
| C—Number of Twine Coils on Right Side | H—Twine Pulley Sensors |
| D—Distance of Tying End on Left Side | I— Twine Arm |
| E—Distance of Tying End on Right Side | J— Space |

This mode provides full speed twine arm movement from left to right, then from right to left. Then, the twine arm comes back to the right, pauses to place the set number at tying start, and continues to apply twines as set in the monitor.

5. Check box (H) is used to enable or disable the twine pulley sensors.

Continued on next page

OUCC006,00016CD -19-11JAN11-3/4

6. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1031611 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031611

OUCC006,00016CD -19-11JAN11-4/4

Manual Start of an Automatic Tying Cycle

CC1031615 —UN—16SEP09

An automatic net or twine tying cycle can be manually started at any time.

NOTE: If tying start mode is automatic, the tying cycle starts automatically when the adjusted bale diameter is reached. See [Automatic Start of Tying Cycle](#) in this section.

1. To start an automatic tying cycle, select Start Net Tying Cycle or Start Twine Tying Cycle softkey from the baler application main page.



CC1031615

Start Net Tying Cycle Softkey

CC1033937 —UN—15SEP11



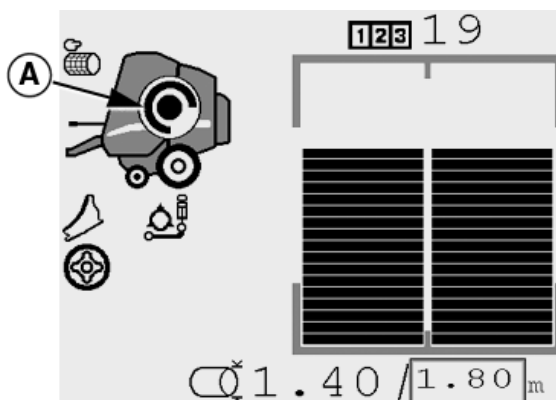
CC1033937

Start Twine Tying Cycle Softkey

OUCC006,00017E5 -19-11FEB13-1/4

2. Tying process graphic (A) allows the tying cycle to be monitored.

A—Tying Process Graphic



CC1038513

CC1038513 —UN—26SEP12

OUCC006,00017E5 -19-11FEB13-2/4

3. If a problem occurs during tying cycle, select Stop Tying Cycle softkey to interrupt tying cycle and retract actuator.

CC1031890 —UN—19OCT09



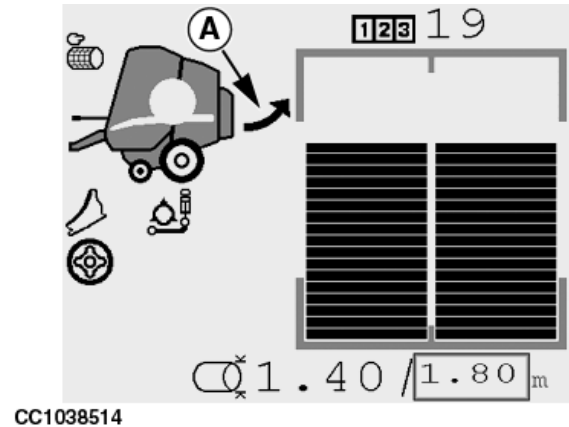
CC1031890

Continued on next page

OUCC006,00017E5 -19-11FEB13-3/4

- When the tying cycle is completed, the bale ejection symbol (A) is displayed and the monitor beeps four times.
- Open the rear gate of the baler with the tractor selective control valve lever to dump the bale. Use the display to monitor the rear gate position.

A—Bale Ejection Symbol



CC1038514

CC1038514—UN—26SEP12

OUC006,00017E5 -19-11FEB13-4/4

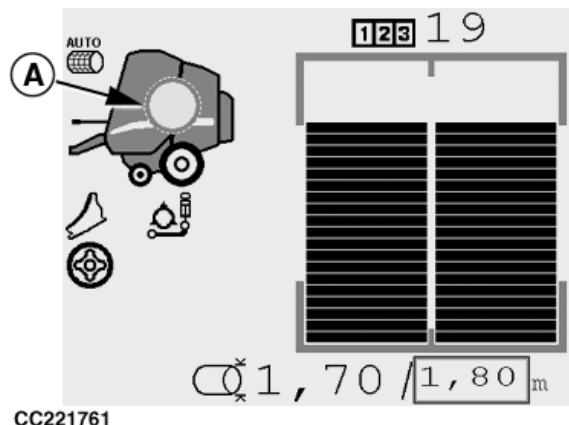
Automatic Start of Tying Cycle

NOTE: To allow automatic start of tying cycle, tying start mode must be Automatic. See Select Tying Start Mode in this section.

- Just before the bale diameter is reached, the near full symbol (A) is displayed and the monitor beeps twice. To adjust near full alarm offset, see Adjust Near Full Alarm Offset in this section.
- When the adjusted bale diameter is reached, the monitor beeps continuously for 3 seconds. Immediately stop the tractor. The tying process graphic (B) shows the net or twine tying progress.
- When the tying cycle is completed, the bale ejection symbol (C) is displayed and the monitor beeps four times.
- Open the rear gate of the baler with the tractor selective control valve lever to dump the bale. Use the display to monitor the rear gate position.

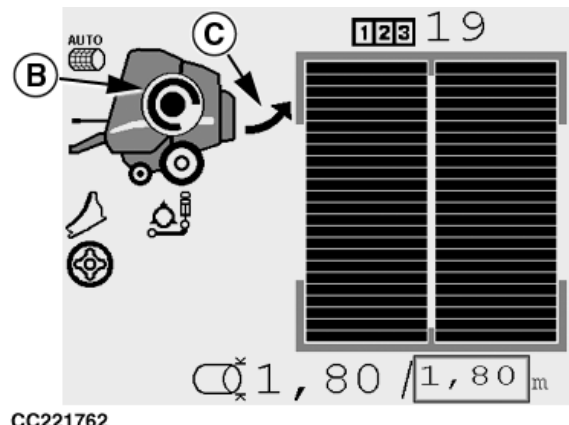
A—Near Full Symbol
B—Tying Process Graphic

C—Bale Ejection Symbol



CC221761

CC221761—UN—02DEC14



CC221762

CC221762—UN—11DEC14

DC82261,0000578 -19-31MAR15-1/2

- If a problem occurs during tying cycle, select Stop Tying Cycle softkey to interrupt tying cycle and retract actuator.

CC1031890 —UN—19OCT09



CC1031890

DC82261,0000578 -19-31MAR15-2/2

Operate Soft Core System

CC1031617 —UN—16SEP09

With soft core ON, the solenoid prevents full system pressure from reaching the tension cylinders until diameter setting is reached.

When bale size reaches core diameter setting, the solenoid allows full system pressure to flow to the tension cylinders. The bale is finished at full system pressure forming tighter and denser outer layers. This results in a lower density at the center of the bale.

Enable or Disable Soft Core System:



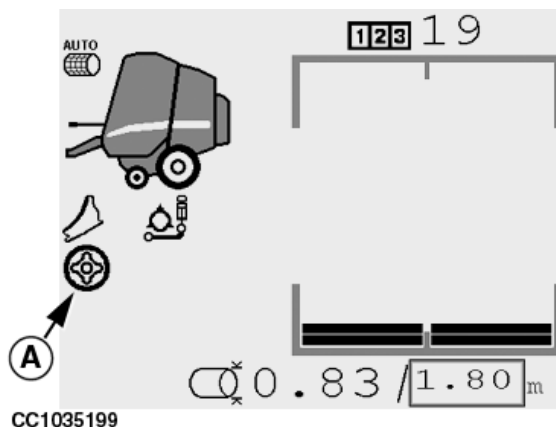
CC1031617

1. From the baler application main page, select and activate Soft Core softkey to enable soft core system.

DC82261,0000579 -19-03APR15-1/5

2. The soft core symbol (A) is displayed when the soft core system is enabled.
3. Select again Soft Core softkey to disable soft core system. The soft core symbol (A) disappears.

A—Soft Core Symbol



CC1035199

CC1035199 —UN—26SEP12

DC82261,0000579 -19-03APR15-2/5

Adjust Soft Core Diameter:

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. Select Settings softkey.



CC1031612

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000579 -19-03APR15-3/5

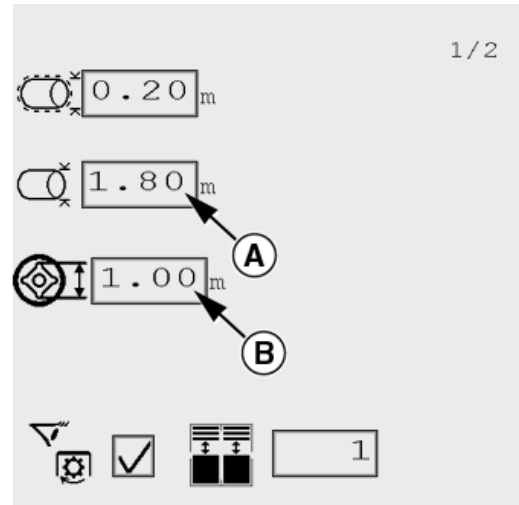
2. Select input box (B) and set desired soft core diameter.

IMPORTANT: The soft core solenoid is not power supplied if PTO driveline is disengaged.

NOTE: The soft core diameter can be adjusted from 0.8 m (31.5 in.) up to the desired bale diameter (A) minus 0.1 m (4 in.).

A—Bale Diameter

B—Soft Core Diameter



CC221763

CC221763 —UN—02DEC14

DC82261,0000579 -19-03APR15-4/5

3. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,0000579 -19-03APR15-5/5

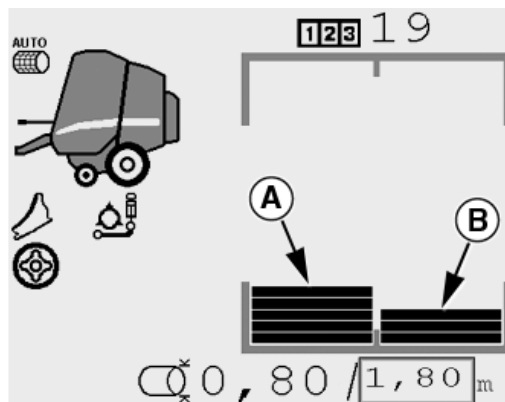
Guidelines to Form a Good Bale

1. Start feeding windrow in the center of baler.
2. Move quickly to one side feeding the baler for several meters, as close as possible to the side sheet, without leaving hay in the field.

NOTE: Weaving back and forth across the windrow should be done quickly in a crisp zigzag fashion to balance crop intake side-to-side. Weaving too often or too slowly puts too much crop in the center of the bale and should be avoided.

3. Move quickly to the other side feeding the baler for several meters, as close as possible to the side sheet, without leaving hay in the field.
4. Move quickly back to the other side feeding the baler, as close as possible to the side sheet. Continue feeding this side until bale shape indicator (A) or (B) corresponding to feeding side rises.
5. Then quickly drive to the other side and continue feeding this side until bale shape indicator (A) or (B) corresponding to feeding side rises.
6. Continue to feed in this manner until the near full indicator is displayed. Then finish up the bale by getting the bale shape indicators on both sides as high and as even as possible before reaching full size. Both sides should be in the green zone when finished and, if possible, finish bale by feeding the left side.

As bale diameter increases, bale shape indicators are less sensitive to rise and fall as hay is fed into the baler.



CC228073

A—Left Bale Shape Indicator B—Right Bale Shape Indicator

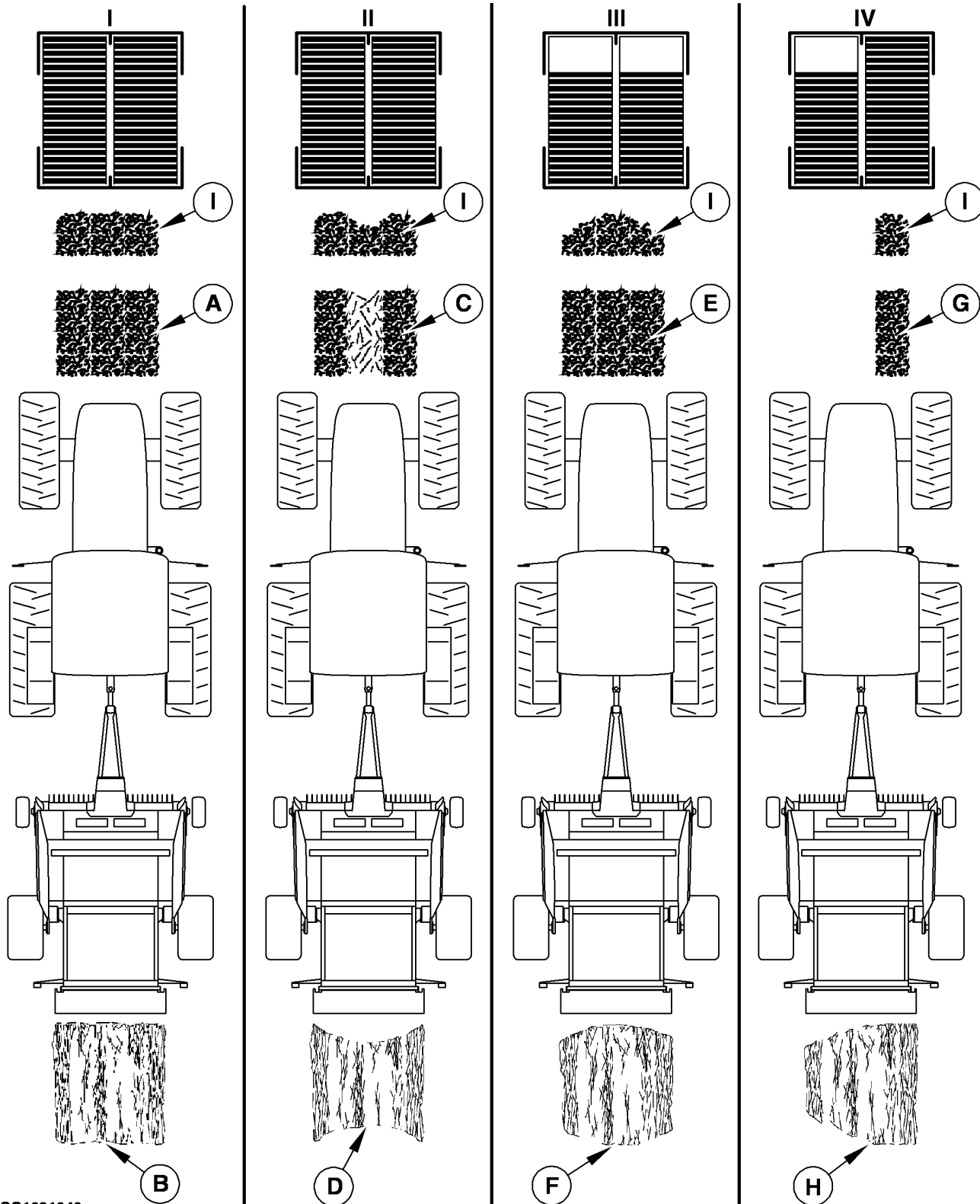
Do not weave from one side unless the bale shape indicators are at least in the green zone. Avoid baling for extended periods with either of the bale shape displays in the red zone.

NOTE: If bale shape indicators display incorrect information about the bale formation, see Calibration of Bale Shape Potentiometer in Baler Application Service section.

CC228073—UN—02DEC14

DC82261,000057A -19-31MAR15-1/1

Make a Bale with Bale Shape Indicators



CC1031848

CC1031848 — UN—09OCT09

Continued on next page

DC82261,000058F -19-12DEC14-1/2

The illustration on the facing page and the following information describe the relationship between the display, windrow variations and actual bale shape.

To ensure optimum bale shape and maximum bale density, the top bar should be shown on BOTH sides of the bale shape indicator display, as shown in Example I. The top bars should be displayed when bale is being tied. Refer to [Guidelines to Form a Good Bale](#) in this section.

I— Best shape bales (B) are formed when windrow (A) has a uniform side-to-side density and bale width is the same as bale chamber width. Weaving is not necessary.

If this is not practical, create windrows up to one-half the width of the bale chamber and follow the bale shape bars. Refer to [Guidelines to Form a Good Bale](#) in this section.

II— If full-width windrow (C) is heavy on the edges and light at the center, an hourglass shaped bale (D) will be formed even though bale shape bars are balanced and all lit.

If possible, weaving back and forth across windrow will help fill the middle of the bale. Otherwise, proper windrow formation (raking, etc.) may be needed.

III— Bale shape bars will not reach maximum height and a barrel shaped bale (F) is formed if any of the following conditions exist:

- Windrow width (E) is approximately 2/3—3/4 the width of the baler.
- Windrow correct but operator may not be weaving over far enough.
- Windrow width is full but density in the middle of the windrow is greater.
- Weaving back and forth too frequently.

If windrow is almost as wide as bale chamber, reduce tractor rpm and increase ground speed to spread material across pickup.

Windrow preparation should be less than one-half of the bale chamber width or as large as the bale chamber. If necessary, rake windrow to obtain correct width.

Bale shape bars may not reach maximum height when operating at reduced bale density and when the soft core option is enabled. This is also true when operating in certain crops such as third cut grass or short wheat straw, because ends of bale are soft.

IV— If narrow windrow (G) is baled without weaving back and forth, a cone shaped bale (H) will be formed.

- Operator feeding one side more than other.

Weave back and forth across narrow windrow to keep bale shape bars as high as possible.

DC82261,000058F -19-12DEC14-2/2

Raise or Lower the Pickup

The pickup raise or lower function is automatically selected. Actuate tractor selective control valve lever to raise or lower the pickup.



CC1030608 —UN—23SEP08

OUCC006,00016EE -19-05JAN11-1/1

Retract or Engage Precutter Knives

The precutter device is used to chop the crop.

1. From the baler application main page, select "Drop Floor and Precutter Knife Management" softkey.

CC1031618 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031618

Continued on next page

OUCC006,00016CE -19-05JAN11-1/4

2. Select "Precutter Knife" softkey to activate the "retract or engage knife" function.

CC1031807 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031807

OUC006,00016CE -19-05JAN11-2/4

3. Actuate tractor selective control valve lever to retract or engage the precutter knives.

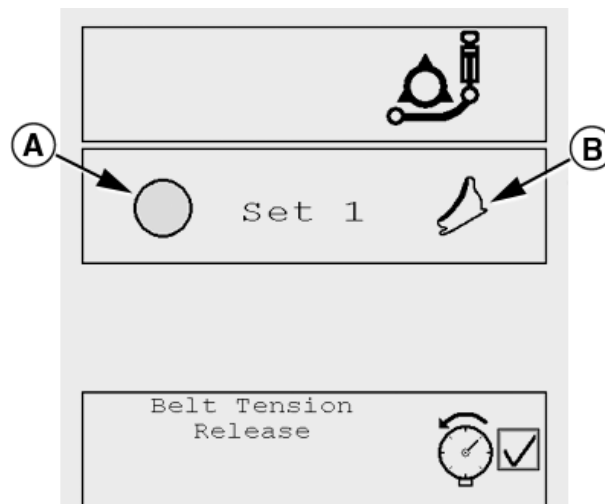
NOTE: "Retract or engage knife" function uses the same selective control valve as raise or lower the pickup.

The retract or engage knife function status (A) is displayed to indicate that the "retract or engage knife" function is selected.

4. Knife position symbol (B) is struck out when precutter knives are retracted.

IMPORTANT: Retract and engage precutter knives several times after each working day to prevent from jamming.

NOTE: When using baler with precutter knives retracted for a long time, it is recommended to remove knives and install fillers to plug the knife slot. See *Replace Precutter Knives in Service* section.



CC1033399

CC1033399 —19—10JAN11

A—Retract or Engage Knife Function Status

B—Knife Position Symbol

OUC006,00016CE -19-05JAN11-3/4

5. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1031611 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031611

OUC006,00016CE -19-05JAN11-4/4

Unplug Rotary Feeder

CC1031618 —UN—16SEP09

Whenever it is necessary to unplug the baler, lower the drop floor to increase the empty space beneath the rotary feeder.

1. Stop tractor and disengage the PTO.
2. From the baler application main page, select Drop Floor and Precutter Knife Management softkey.



CC1031618

Continued on next page

OUC006,0001A29 -19-11FEB13-1/4

- Act on selective control valve lever to lower the drop floor and retract precutter knives (if engaged) at the same time.

NOTE: "Raise or lower the drop floor" function uses the same selective control valve as raise or lower the pickup.

Drop floor function status (A) is displayed to indicate that the "raise or lower drop floor" function is activated. Precutter knife function status (C) is automatically displayed if precutter knives are engaged.

Drop floor lowered symbol (E) and precutter knives retracted symbol (F) indicate that drop floor is lowered and precutter knives are retracted.

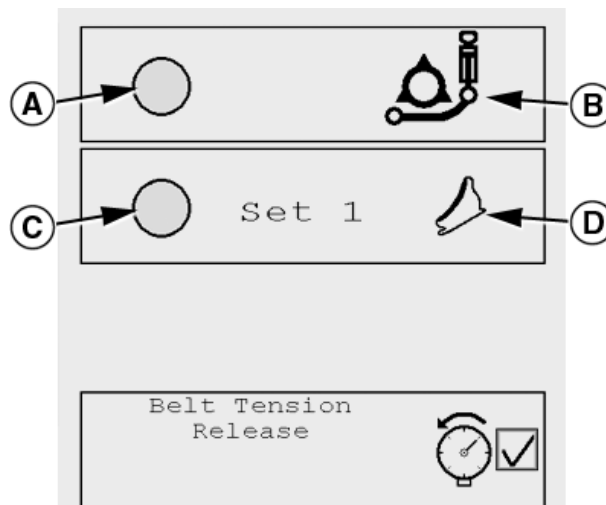
- When the drop floor is lowered, slowly engage the PTO at slow tractor idle until rotary feeder turns freely.
- If needed, tick check box (G) to release the belt tension in order to unplug the baler more easily.

NOTE: To release the belt tension, check box (G) must be ticked before entering the drop floor and precutter knife management page.

If the baler stays plugged with drop floor lowered, precutter knives retracted and belt tension released, see Unplug Baler in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section to unplug the baler.

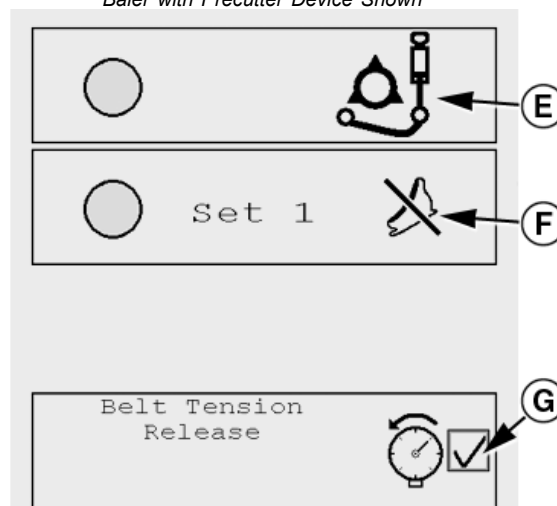
- When the baler is unplugged, act on selective control valve lever to raise the drop floor and engage precutter knives (if activated).
- Put the selective control valve lever to neutral position.

A—Drop Floor Function Status	E—Drop Floor Lowered Symbol
B—Drop Floor Raised Symbol	F—Precutter Knives Retracted Symbol
C—Precutter Knife Function Status	G—Release Belt Tension
D—Precutter Knives Engaged Symbol	



CC1033400

Baler with Precutter Device Shown



CC1033401

Baler with Precutter Device Shown

OUC006,0001A29 -19-11FEB13-2/4

- Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

Continued on next page

OUC006,0001A29 -19-11FEB13-3/4

NOTE: If needed, select Drop Floor softkey to activate the "raise or lower drop floor" function only or select Drop Floor and Precutter Knife softkey to activate the "raise or lower drop floor" and the "retract or engage knife" functions at the same time.

CC1031806 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031806

Drop Floor Softkey

CC1031805 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031805

Drop Floor and Precutter Knife Softkey

OUC006,0001A29 -19-11FEB13-4/4

Customer and Field Counters

CC1031613 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031613

The counter function includes 10 possible customers and a list of 10 field counters per customer. These counters can be used to store daily number of bales or number of bales per field.

The bale must be tied and the rear gate must be opened and closed to add a bale to the current field counter.

Select Customer and Field Number:

- From the baler application main page, select Counters softkey.

DC82261,000057C -19-17DEC14-1/8

- Select customer number:

- Select and activate drop-down list (A).
- Select the desired customer number from 1 to 10.
- The list shows the total number of bales of the 10 fields for the selected customer.

- Select field number:

- Select and activate drop-down list (B).
- Select the desired field number from 1 to 10.

NOTE: Current field indicator (C) is displayed to indicate which field number is selected.

The bale counter of the current field is also displayed on the main page. See [Baler Main Page Display Description](#) in this section.

Field	Bales
1	0
2	0
3	0
4	0
5	0
6	0
7	0
8	0
9	0
10	0
Total:	0

CC1038515

A—Customer Number
B—Field Number

C—Current Field Indicator

Continued on next page

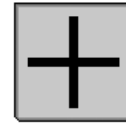
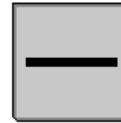
DC82261,000057C -19-17DEC14-2/8

CC1038515 —19—26SEP12

Add or Remove Bales in Current Field Counters:

CC1031852 —UN—30SEP09

Select Remove Bales or Add Bales softkey to adjust if necessary (e.g. bale not counted) the total number of bales for the current field counter.



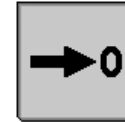
CC1031852

DC82261,000057C -19-17DEC14-3/8

Clear Current Field Counter:

CC1031815 —UN—16SEP09

Select Clear Current Counter softkey to clear the current field bale counter.



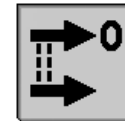
CC1031815

DC82261,000057C -19-17DEC14-4/8

Clear Current Customer Counters:

CC1031816 —UN—16SEP09

Select Clear All Counters softkey to clear information about all fields of the selected customer.



CC1031816

DC82261,000057C -19-17DEC14-5/8

Season and Total Counters Softkey (Baler from Software Version 07.12)

CC222032 —UN—07NOV14

Select Season and Total Counters softkey to go to the season and total counters page.



CC222032

DC82261,000057C -19-17DEC14-6/8

Customer and Field Counters Softkey (Baler from Software Version 07.12)

CC222031 —UN—07NOV14

Select Customer and Field Counters softkey to go to the customer and field counters page.



CC222031

DC82261,000057C -19-17DEC14-7/8

4. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,000057C -19-17DEC14-8/8

Task, Season and Machine Total Counters (Baler Up to Software Version 06.10)

CC1031613 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031613

NOTE: To find software version, see Software Parameters in this section.

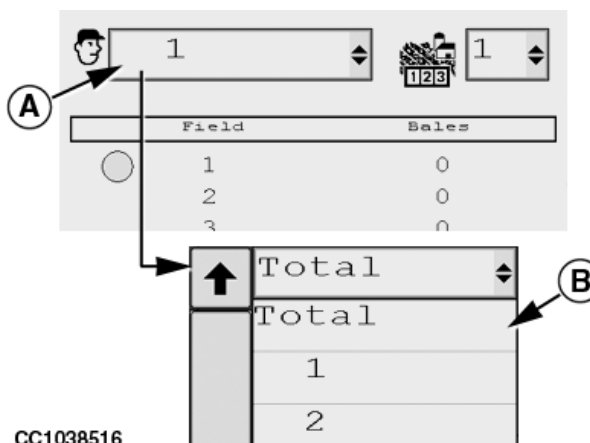
1. From the baler application main page, select Counters softkey.

DC82261,000057D -19-12DEC14-1/6

2. Select and activate drop-down list (A) then select total counters (B).

A—Customer Number

B—Total Counters



CC1038516

CC1038516 —19—26SEP12

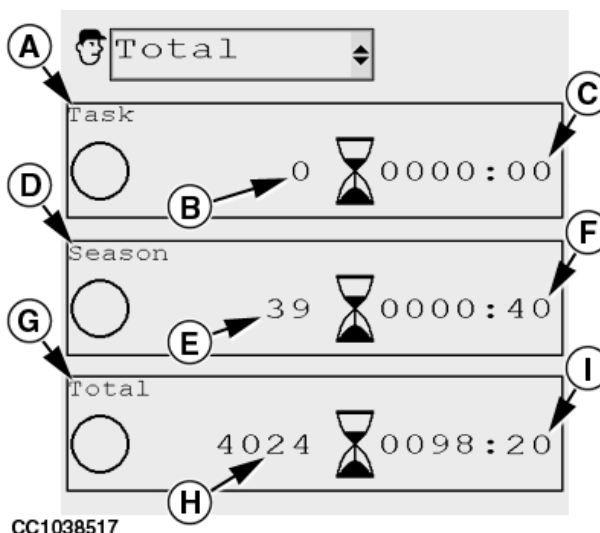
DC82261,000057D -19-12DEC14-2/6

- a. Task counter (A):
The task counter (A) shows total number of bales for task (B) and total time of task (C).

NOTE: To activate task counter (A), see Adjust Task Controller (Baler Up to Software Version 06.10) in Baler Application Service section and see your monitor operator's manual.

- b. Season counter (D):
The season counter (D) shows total number of bales for season (E) and total time of season (F).

- c. Machine total counter (G):
The machine total counter (G) shows the total number of bales (H) and the total time done by the machine (I).



CC1038517

CC1038517 —19—26SEP12

A—Task Counter
B—Total Number of Bales for Task
C—Total Time of Task
D—Season Counter
E—Total Number of Bales for Season

F—Total Time of Season
G—Machine Total Counter
H—Total Number of Bales Done by the Machine
I—Total Time Done by the Machine

Continued on next page

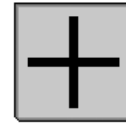
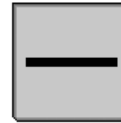
DC82261,000057D -19-12DEC14-3/6

Add or Remove Bales in Season Counter (D):

CC1031852 —UN—30SEP09

Select Remove Bales or Add Bales softkey to adjust if necessary (e.g. bale not counted) the total number of bales for season (E) counter.

NOTE: Changing the total number of bales for season (E) does not modify the current field bale counter.



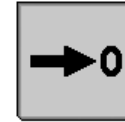
CC1031852

DC82261,000057D -19-12DEC14-4/6

Clear Season Counter (D):

CC1031815 —UN—16SEP09

Select Clear Current Counter softkey to clear the total number of bales for season (E) and total time of season (F).



CC1031815

DC82261,000057D -19-12DEC14-5/6

3. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,000057D -19-12DEC14-6/6

Season and Machine Total Counters (Baler from Software Version 07.12)

CC1031613 —UN—16SEP09

NOTE: To find software version, see [Software Parameters](#) in this section.

1. From the baler application main page, select Counters softkey.



CC1031613

DC82261,000057E -19-11DEC14-1/8

2. From the counter page, select Season and Total Counters softkey.

CC222032 —UN—07NOV14



CC222032

Continued on next page

DC82261,000057E -19-11DEC14-2/8

a. Season counter (A):

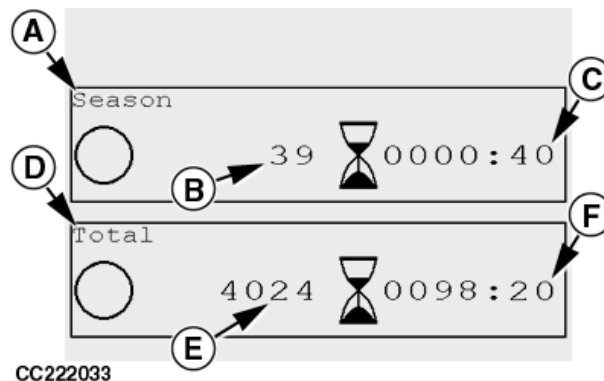
The season counter (A) shows total number of bales for season (B) and total time of season (C).

b. Machine total counter (D):

The machine total counter (D) shows the total number of bales (E) and the total time done by the machine (F).

A—Season Counter
B—Total Number of Bales for Season
C—Total Time of Season

D—Machine Total Counter
E—Total Number of Bales Done by the Machine
F—Total Time Done by the Machine



CC222033 —19—27NOV14

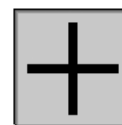
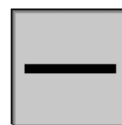
DC82261,000057E -19-11DEC14-3/8

Add or Remove Bales in Season Counter (A):

CC1031852 —UN—30SEP09

Select Remove Bales or Add Bales softkey to adjust if necessary (e.g. bale not counted) the total number of bales for season (B) counter.

NOTE: Changing the total number of bales for season (B) does not modify the current field bale counter.



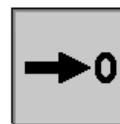
CC1031852

DC82261,000057E -19-11DEC14-4/8

Clear Season Counter (A):

CC1031815 —UN—16SEP09

Select Clear Current Counter softkey to clear the total number of bales for season (B) and total time of season (C).



CC1031815

DC82261,000057E -19-11DEC14-5/8

Customer and Field Counters Softkey:

CC222031 —UN—07NOV14

Select Customer and Field Counters softkey to go to the customer and field counters page.



CC222031

DC82261,000057E -19-11DEC14-6/8

Season and Total Counters Softkey:

CC222032 —UN—07NOV14

Select Season and Total Counters softkey to go to the season and total counters page.



CC222032

Continued on next page

DC82261,000057E -19-11DEC14-7/8

3. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page. CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,000057E -19-11DEC14-8/8

Operating Baler in Automation Mode

Operate Baler in Automation Mode Safely

The Baler Automation system is intended to aid the operator in performing field operations more efficiently. The operator is always responsible for controlling the machine's path and behavior as well as the behavior of the bale. To prevent injury to operator and bystanders,

always remain alert and pay attention to the surrounding environment. Do not rely on the system to stop the vehicle when an obstacle or bystander is present.

Read and understand Operating Baler in Automation Mode section before using automation.

OUCC006,00015C2 -19-18JAN10-1/1

Tractor-Implement Automation Prerequisites

Tractor-Implement Automation (TIA) relies on ISOBUS information exchange between tractor and baler.

TIA requires an ISOBUS Ready tractor with at least electronic selective control valves to operate the baler in automation mode level 1 (baler gate automation). ISOBUS Ready tractor equipped with electronic selective control valves and IVT allows the baler to be operated in automation mode level 2 (baler gate automation and tractor automatic stop). To operate the baler in automation mode, a TIA activation key needs to be installed on the

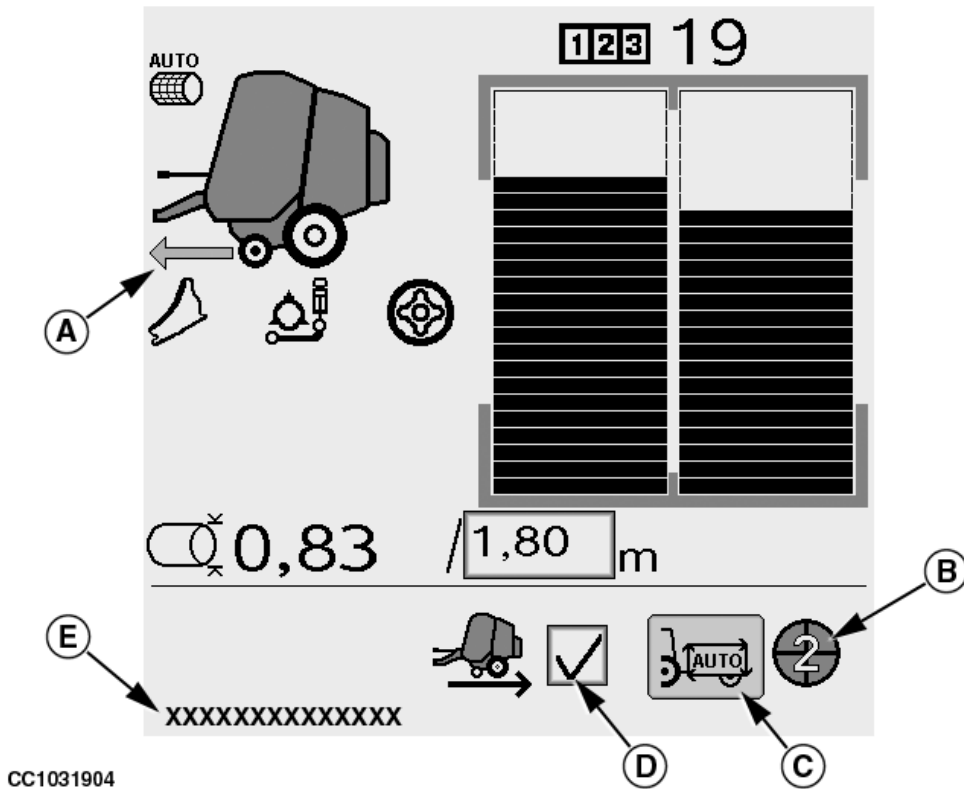
tractor and on the baler. For more information see your John Deere dealer.

Theory of operation:

- Baler commands tractor to brake until tractor stops forward travel when adjusted bale diameter is reached.
- Baler commands tractor to activate electronic selective control valve to open and close the gate to unload the bale.
- Baler commands tractor to disengage the PTO and brake until tractor stops forward travel when baler plugging occurs.

OUCC006,0001801 -19-20SEP11-1/1

Baler Automation Main Page Display Description



CC1031904

A—Baler Ready to Go
B—Automation States Pie

C—Enable or Disable Automation
D—Manual Bale Unload

E—Automation Deactivation
Message

The main page allows the baler automation functions to be controlled and monitored while operating in the field.

Arrow (A) indicates that the baler is ready to continue operation in automation mode after the bale unloading process. See Operate Baler in Automation Mode in this section.

Symbol (B) indicates the current automation state. See Automation States Pie in this section.

Icon (C) is used to enable or disable the automation mode. See Operate Baler in Automation Mode in this section. If

automation was deactivated or can not be activated, icon (C) provides direct access to the automation diagnostic pages. See Automation Diagnostic in this section.

Manual bale unload (D) function places automation mode in a paused state when the adjusted bale diameter is reached. See Manual Bale Unload in this section.

Message (E) indicates why automation was deactivated or can not be activated. See Automation Diagnostic in this section.

OUC006,00016D3 -19-06JAN11-1/1

Automation Softkey Designation

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11

Automation Settings softkey.

See this section.



CC1034499

Continued on next page

OUC006,00017EF -19-07JUL11-1/2

Automation Diagnostic softkey.

CC1031799 —UN—16SEP09

See Automation Diagnostic in this section.



CC1031799

OUCC006,00017EF -19-07JUL11-2/2

Operate Baler in Automation Mode

Before automation mode activation, check following conditions:

- Automation level is selected. See [Select Automation Level](#) in this section.
- Baler rear gate selective control valve is selected. See [Select Rear Gate Selective Control Valve](#) in this section.
- Automation states pie (B) shows Ready-to-Enable (2/4 of pie). See [Automation States Pie](#) in this section.

1. Select and activate icon (C) to switch automation state (B) to Enabled (3/4 of pie).
2. Move tractor reverse drive lever to Power Zero™, center park or forward position (automation level 2 only) and press Tractor-Implement Automation™ hotkey (resume switch) (D). See TIA™ — Tractor-Implement Automation™ section in your tractor operator's manual.

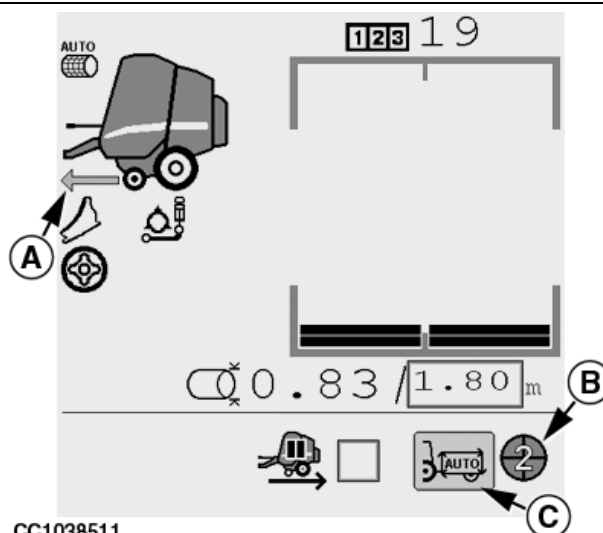
3. Automation states pie (B) is switched to Active (4/4 pie) and monitor beeps to indicate that automation mode is activated.

4. Set the travel speed and start baling. See your tractor operator's manual.

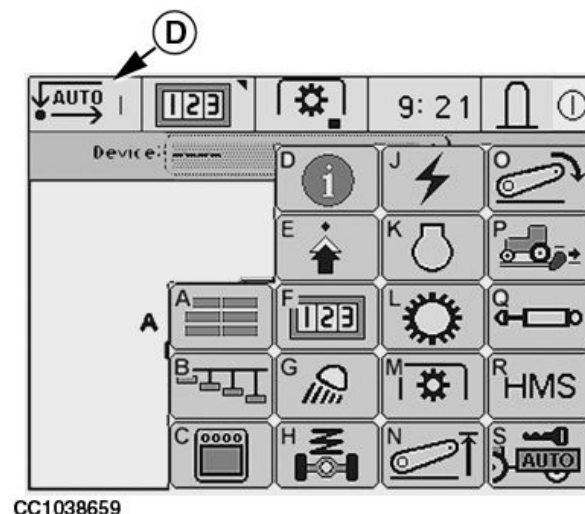
5. According to the selected tying start mode, the tractor slows down and stops moving forward (automation level 2 only). See [Select Tying Start Mode](#) in Operating Baler Application section.

- If tying start mode is Automatic, the tractor slows down and stops moving forward when the adjusted bale diameter is reached. The tying cycle then starts automatically.
- If tying start mode is Manual, the tractor slows down and stops moving forward when the operator selects Start Net Tying Cycle or Start Twine Tying Cycle softkey. The tying cycle then starts.

NOTE: See [Adjust Tractor Behavior](#) in this section to adjust the tractor deceleration.



CC1038511 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038659 —UN—19OCT12

A—Baler Ready to Go
B—Automation States Pie

C—Enable or Disable Automation
D—Tractor-Implement Automation™ Hotkey

Continued on next page

OUCC006,0001964 -19-11FEB13-1/2

6. After the tying process, tractor actuates electronic selective control valve to unload the bale.

NOTE: To unload the bale at specific place, activate the manual bale unload function. See [Manual Bale Unload](#) in this section.

7. After bale unloading, arrow (A) is displayed to indicate that the baler is ready to proceed in automation mode.
8. Move tractor reverse drive lever to the center park position then in forward position to start baling (automation level 2 only). See TIA™ — Tractor-Implement Automation™ section in your tractor operator's manual.

NOTE: Instead of moving tractor reverse drive lever, operator can press and hold brake or clutch pedal when the bale diameter is reached and until arrow (A) is displayed.

9. Tractor starts moving forward automatically and accelerates until adjusted travel speed is obtained (automation level 2 only).

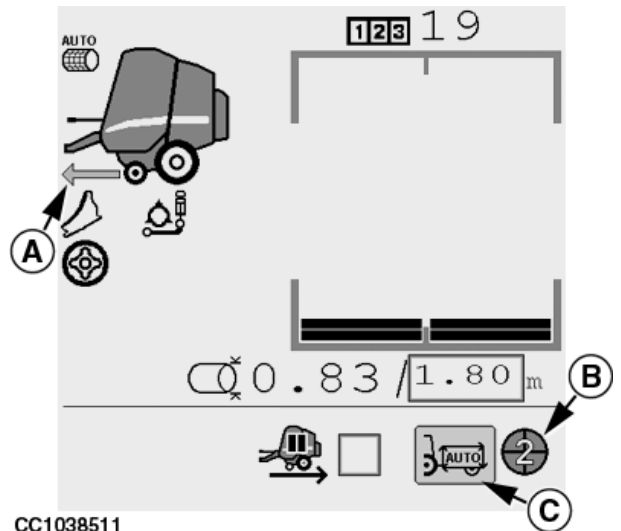
NOTE: See [Adjust Tractor Behavior](#) in this section to adjust the tractor acceleration.

IMPORTANT: Moving tractor speed control lever while the tractor automatically decelerates or accelerates may deactivate automation.

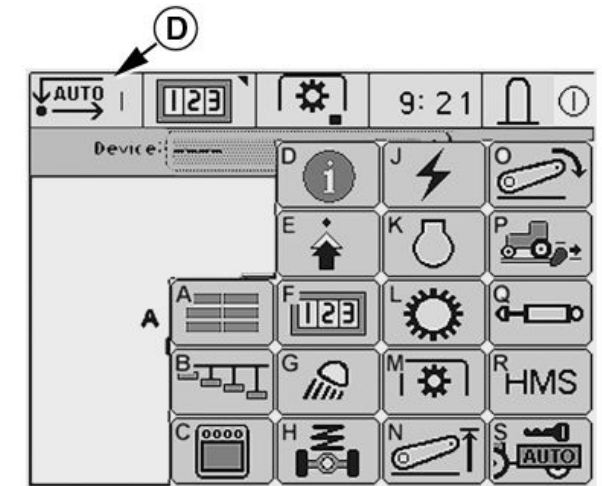
10. To deactivate automation mode, select and activate icon (C) to switch automation states pie (B) to Ready-to-Enable (2/4 of pie).

A—Baler Ready to Go
B—Automation States Pie

C—Enable or Disable Automation
D—Tractor-Implement Automation™ Hotkey



CC1038511



CC1038659

CC1038511 —UN—26SEP12

CC1038659 —UN—19OCT12

OUC006,0001964 -19-11FEB13-2/2

Unplug Rotary Feeder in Automation Mode

When operating the baler in automation mode and plugging occurs, the system is capable of disengaging the tractor PTO automatically if automatic tractor PTO disengagement function is enabled. See [Automatic Tractor PTO Disengagement](#) in this section.

- Whenever it is necessary to unplug the baler, the tractor disengages the PTO automatically.
 - If working in automation level 1: a warning screen appears to indicate that the pickup is plugged. The tractor must be stopped manually.
 - If working in automation level 2: a warning screen appears to indicate that the pickup is plugged. Then the tractor slows down and stops moving forward automatically.
- When the tractor stops moving forward, automation state is switched from Active (4/4 pie) to Enabled (3/4 of pie).
- Move tractor PTO control lever to the disengaged position.
- Unplug the baler as described under [Unplug Rotary Feeder](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
- When the baler is unplugged successfully, move tractor reverse drive lever to Power Zero™, center park or forward position (automation level 2 only) and press Tractor-Implement Automation™ hotkey (resume switch) to continue baling in automation mode. See TIA™ — Tractor-Implement Automation™ section in your tractor operator's manual.



CC1035194

Automation Level 1



CC1035195

Automation Level 2

CC1035194 —19—31AUG11

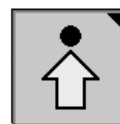
CC1035195 —19—31AUG11

OUC006,0001A2A -19-11FEB13-1/1

Baler Automation Activation Key

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

NOTE: To make the baler ready for automation, an activation key is needed. To obtain the baler automation activation key, see your John Deere dealer.



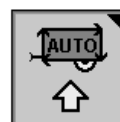
CC1031612

- From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.

OUC006,000195D -19-06MAY13-1/4

- Select Automation Settings softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



CC1034499

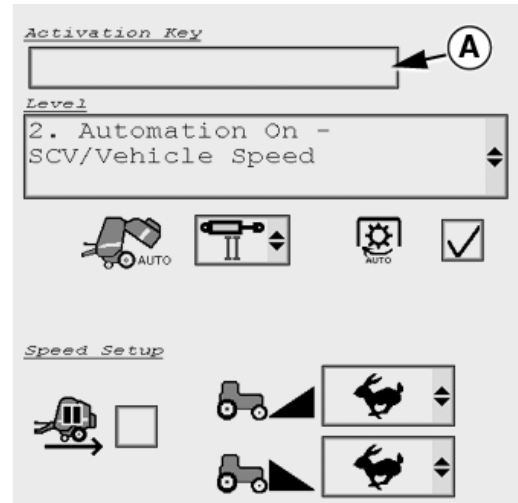
Continued on next page

OUC006,000195D -19-06MAY13-2/4

3. Select input box (A).
4. Use displayed keyboard to enter the baler automation activation key, then select the Enter softkey to validate.

NOTE: When the baler is delivered, automation mode can be activated free of charge for baling 200 bales. After this, the baler automation activation code must be entered. The activation code can only be entered after the 200 bales have been made in automation mode. If the automation activation code is successfully saved, the input box (A) becomes grayed out. See *Automation Diagnostic* in this section to ensure that the baler automation activation is OK.

A—Activation Key Input Box



CC1038502

CC1038502 —19—26SEP12

OUC006,000195D -19-06MAY13-3/4

5. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

OUC006,000195D -19-06MAY13-4/4

Select Automation Level

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.

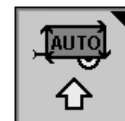


CC1031612

OUC006,000195E -19-11FEB13-1/4

2. Select Automation Settings softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



CC1034499

Continued on next page

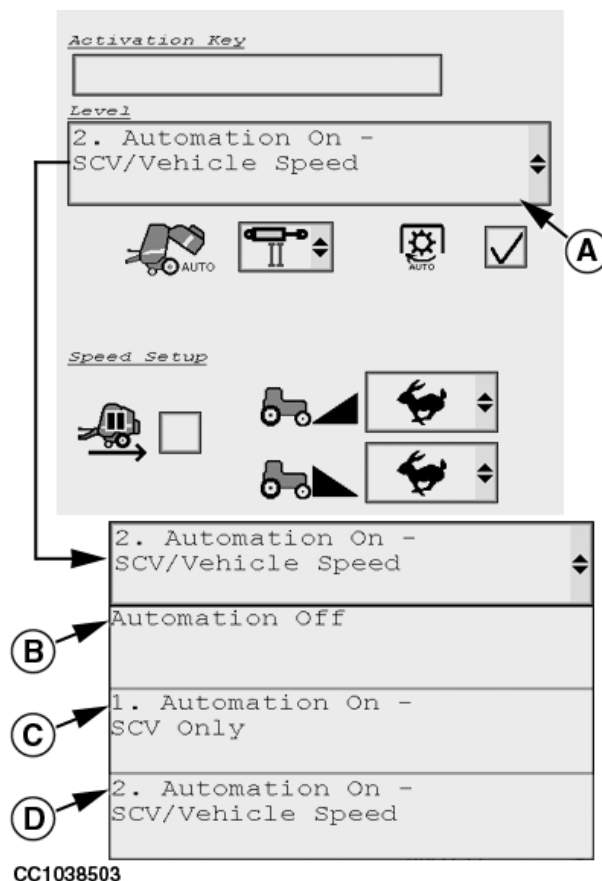
OUC006,000195E -19-11FEB13-2/4

3. Select and activate drop-down list (A) then select the desired automation level:

- **Automation OFF (B)** - Tractor does not receive commands from the baler.
- **Automation level 1 (C)** - Tractor receives commands from the baler to actuate the SCV to unload the bale after tying cycle (requires tractor with E-SCV).
- **Automation level 2 (D)** - Tractor receives commands from the baler to brake until tractor stops moving forward when the adjusted bale diameter is reached (requires tractor with IVT™). After tying cycle, tractor receives commands from the baler to actuate the SCV to unload the bale (requires tractor with E-SCV).

A—Automation Level
B—Automation OFF

C—Automation Level 1
D—Automation Level 2



CC1038503

CC1038503 —UN—26SEP12

OUCC006,000195E -19-11FEB13-3/4

4. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



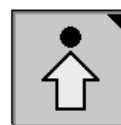
CC1038505

OUCC006,000195E -19-11FEB13-4/4

Select Rear Gate Selective Control Valve

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.

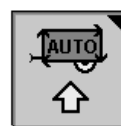


CC1031612

OUCC006,000195F -19-11FEB13-1/4

2. Select Automation Settings softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



CC1034499

Continued on next page

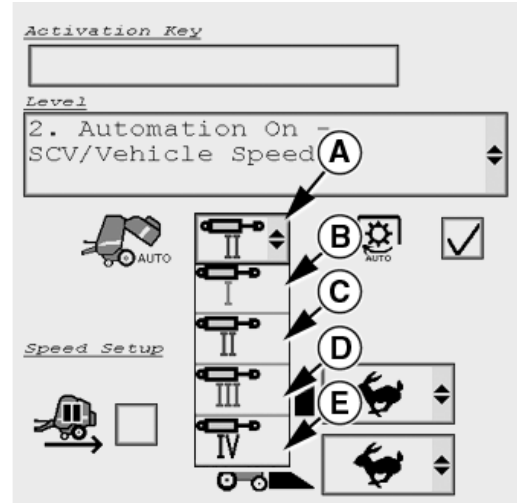
OUCC006,000195F -19-11FEB13-2/4

3. Select and activate drop-down list (A).
4. Select the corresponding tractor SCV (B), (C), (D) or (E) to operate the baler rear gate.

NOTE: The number of SCVs available in the drop-down list (A) depends on the tractor configuration.

A—Rear Gate SCV
B—Tractor SCV 1
C—Tractor SCV 2

D—Tractor SCV 3
E—Tractor SCV 4



CC1038504

CC1038504 —19—26SEP12

OUC006,000195F -19-11FEB13-3/4

5. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

OUC006,000195F -19-11FEB13-4/4

Automatic Tractor PTO Disengagement

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.



CC1031612

OUC006,0001960 -19-11FEB13-1/4

2. Select Automation Settings softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



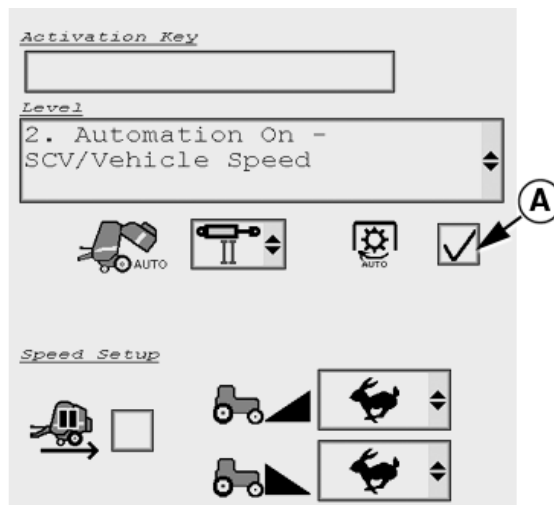
CC1034499

Continued on next page

OUC006,0001960 -19-11FEB13-2/4

3. Check box (A) is used to enable or disable the automatic tractor PTO disengagement function.
 - Tick check box (A) to enable the automatic tractor PTO disengagement function. The automatic tractor PTO disengagement function disengages the tractor PTO when operating the baler in automation mode and plugging occurs. For more information, see [Unplug Rotary Feeder in Automation Mode](#) in this section.
 - Do not tick check box (A) to disable the automatic tractor PTO disengagement function.

A—Automatic Tractor PTO Disengagement



CC1038506

CC1038506 —19—26SEP12

OUCC006,0001960 -19-11FEB13-3/4

4. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

OUCC006,0001960 -19-11FEB13-4/4

Manual Bale Unload

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.

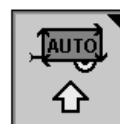


CC1031612

OUCC006,0001962 -19-11FEB13-1/4

2. Select Automation Settings softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



CC1034499

Continued on next page

OUCC006,0001962 -19-11FEB13-2/4

3. Check box (A) is used to enable or disable the manual bale unload function.

- Tick check box (A) to enable the manual bale unload function.

The manual bale unload function places automation in Paused state when the adjusted bale diameter is reached. This function allows the tractor to be placed at the desired location before unloading the bale and is recommended for hilly conditions.

To unload the bale, move tractor reverse drive lever to center park position then place automation in Active state by pressing Tractor-Implement Automation™ hotkey (resume switch). See [Automation States Pie](#) in this section and see TIA™ — Tractor-Implement Automation™ section in your tractor operator's manual.

- Do not tick check box (A) to disable the manual bale unload function. The bale is automatically unloaded at the end of the tying cycle.

NOTE: This function is also available from the baler application main page. See [Baler Automation Main Page Display Description](#) in this section.



CC1038508

A—Manual Bale Unload

CC1038508 —19—26SEP12

OUCC006,0001962 -19-11FEB13-3/4

4. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

OUCC006,0001962 -19-11FEB13-4/4

Adjust Tractor Behavior

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.

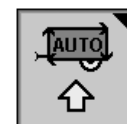


CC1031612

OUCC006,0001961 -19-11FEB13-1/4

2. Select Automation Settings softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



CC1034499

Continued on next page

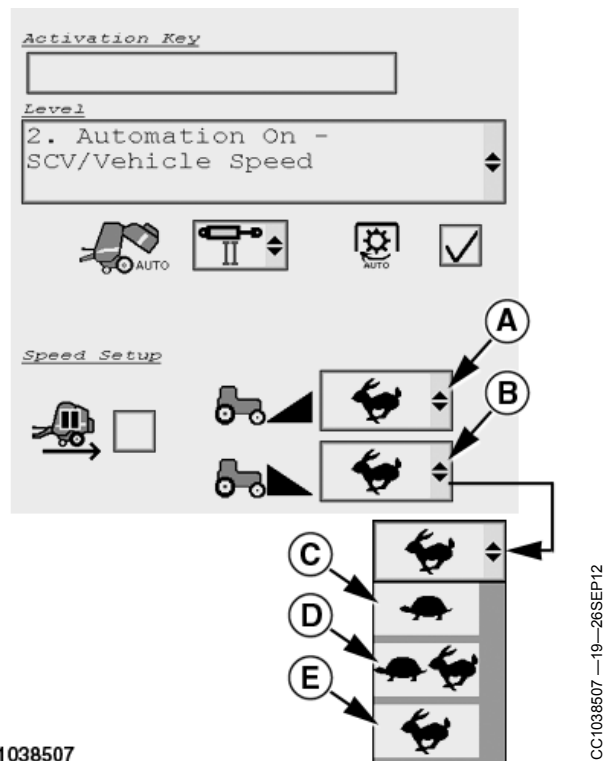
OUCC006,0001961 -19-11FEB13-2/4

3. When working in automation level 2, tractor acceleration and deceleration can be adjusted. See Select Automation Level in this section.

- Adjust tractor acceleration:
Select and activate drop-down list (A) and set the desired tractor acceleration (C), (D) or (E). This value is applied when tractor reverse drive lever is moved to center park position and then to forward position after the bale unloading process.
- Adjust tractor deceleration:
Select and activate drop-down list (B) and set the desired tractor deceleration (C), (D) or (E). This value is applied when the adjusted bale diameter is reached and the tractor brakes and stops moving forward.

NOTE: We recommend to set tractor deceleration to minimum (C) when using twine tying system. This allows a few seconds for twine to be fed in with crop.

A—Tractor Acceleration
B—Tractor Deceleration
C—Minimum
D—Normal
E—Maximum



CC1038507

OUCC006,0001961 -19-11FEB13-3/4

4. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

OUCC006,0001961 -19-11FEB13-4/4

Automation Demonstration Mode

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

Before automation demonstration mode activation, check following conditions:



CC1031612

- Automation level is selected. See Select Automation Level in this section.
- Baler rear gate selective control valve is selected. See Select Rear Gate Selective Control Valve in this section.
- Automation states pie shows Ready-to-Enable (2/4 of pie). See Automation States Pie in this section.
- Net tying system is selected. See Select Tying System in Operating Baler Application section.
- Net roll is removed from net tying device. See Load Net Roll in Preparing the Baler section.

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.

Continued on next page

DC82261,000058A -19-02DEC14-1/6

2. Select Baler Diagnostic softkey.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09

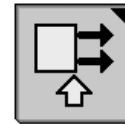


CC1031614

DC82261,000058A -19-02DEC14-2/6

3. Select Output Test softkey.

CC1031804 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031804

DC82261,000058A -19-02DEC14-3/6

4. On page 1/2, select and activate icon (A) to activate automation demonstration mode.

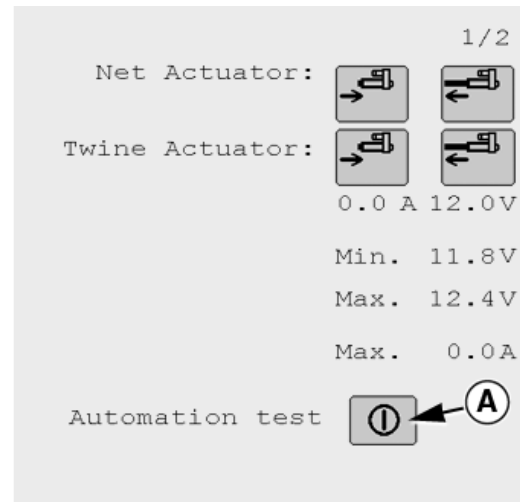
NOTE: Automation demonstration mode allows tractor and baler automated commands to be tested:

- Commands from the baler to activate the tractor's brake until tractor stops forward travel as soon as tying cycle is ordered (automation level 2 only).
- Commands from the baler to activate tractor's electronic selective control valve to open and close the gate to unload the bale.

Automation demonstration mode remains activated during only one tying cycle in automation mode.

To deactivate demonstration mode, select and activate icon (A) again.

A—Automation Demonstration Mode



CC200787

CC200787 —19—24JAN13

DC82261,000058A -19-02DEC14-4/6

5. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12

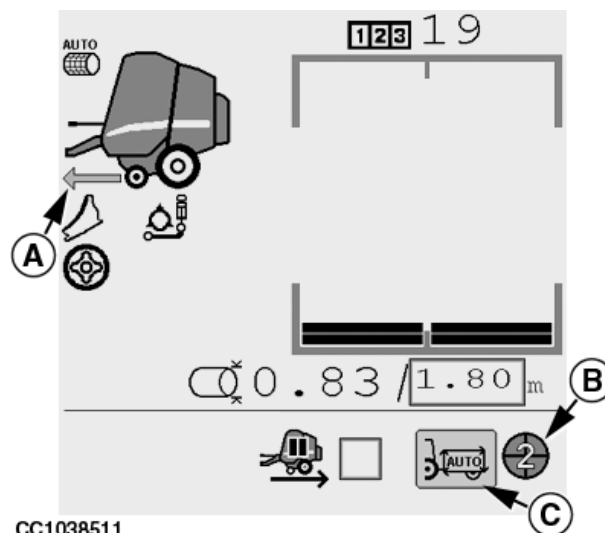


CC1038505

Continued on next page

DC82261,000058A -19-02DEC14-5/6

6. Select and activate icon (C) to switch automation state (B) to Enabled (3/4 of pie).
7. Move tractor reverse drive lever to Power Zero™, center park or forward position (automation level 2 only) and press Tractor-Implement Automation™ hotkey (resume switch). See Operate Baler in Automation Mode in this section.
8. Automation states pie (B) is switched to Active (4/4 pie) and monitor beeps to indicate that automation mode is activated.
9. Select Start Net Tying Cycle softkey.
10. The tractor slows down and stops moving forward (automation level 2 only). The tying cycle then starts (simulation).
11. After the tying process, tractor actuates electronic selective control valve to unload the (simulated) bale.
12. After bale unloading, arrow (A) is displayed to indicate that the baler is ready to proceed in automation mode.
13. Move tractor reverse drive lever to the center park position then in forward position (automation level 2 only). Tractor then starts moving forward automatically.
14. Select and activate icon (C) to switch automation mode states pie (B) to Ready-to-Enable (2/4 of pie), then stop tractor.



CC1038511

A—Baler Ready to Go
B—Automation States Pie

C—Enable or Disable
Automation

15. If automation demonstration mode runs correctly, tractor and baler are ready to work in automation mode. If not, see your John Deere dealer.

DC82261,000058A -19-02DEC14-6/6

Automation States Pie

CC1031913 —UN—30OCT09

On the main page, automation states pie indicates the current automation state. Automation has six different states.

NOTE: The number (1 or 2) displayed inside the automation states pie indicates the automation level selected. See Select Automation Level in this section.

1. Unavailable:

If tractor is not "Automation Ready", automation states pie is Unavailable (does not appear on the main page). The tractor is not capable to receive commands from the baler.

2. Disabled:



Disabled

CC1031913

If tractor and baler are "Automation Ready", automation state is Disabled (1/4 of pie). The tractor is capable to receive commands from the baler.

Continued on next page

OUCC006,000152F -19-12JAN10-1/5

3. Ready-to-Enable:

CC1031919 —UN—30OCT09

Automation state switches automatically to Ready-to-Enable (2/4 of pie) state some time after ignition key is turned ON. If not, see Automation Diagnostic in this section.



Ready-to-Enable

CC1031919

OUCC006,000152F -19-12JAN10-2/5

4. Enabled:

CC1031920 —UN—15NOV10

When automation states pie is Ready-to-Enable, select and activate the enable or disable automation icon on the baler application main page to switch automation state to Enabled (3/4 of pie). See Operate Baler in Automation Mode in this section.



Enabled

CC1031920

OUCC006,000152F -19-12JAN10-3/5

5. Active:

CC1031921 —UN—30OCT09

When automation state is Enabled, press tractor automation resume switch to switch automation state to Active (4/4 of pie). When automation states pie shows an active state, the baler commands the tractor. See Operate Baler in Automation Mode in this section and see TIA — Tractor-Implement Automation section in your tractor operator's manual.

NOTE: Following conditions must be met to switch automation state from Enabled to Active.

- Tractor reverser lever is in "Power Zero", center park or forward position.



Active

CC1031921

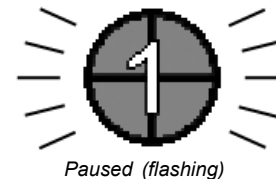
- The baler rear gate is closed and latched.
- Current bale diameter is less than 98% of the adjusted bale diameter.
- Tractor detects an operator on the seat.
- Tractor PTO is engaged.

OUCC006,000152F -19-12JAN10-4/5

6. Paused:

CC1031923 —UN—30OCT09

Automation state switches automatically from Active (4/4 of pie) to Paused (4/4 of pie flashing) when the manual bale unload function is enabled and adjusted bale diameter is reached. See Manual Bale Unload in this section.



Paused (flashing)

CC1031921

OUCC006,000152F -19-12JAN10-5/5

Automation Diagnostic

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.



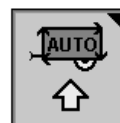
CC1031612

Continued on next page

OUCC006,0001963 -19-13FEB13-1/7

2. Select Automation Settings softkey.

CC1034499 —UN—07JUL11



CC1034499

OUC006,0001963 -19-13FEB13-2/7

3. Select Automation Diagnostic softkey.

CC1031799 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031799

OUC006,0001963 -19-13FEB13-3/7

4. Message (A) indicates why automation was deactivated or can not be activated. See [Automation Deactivation Message List](#) in this section.

On the baler application main page, message (A) is also displayed for 3 seconds then disappears if automation was deactivated or can not be activated. See [Baler Automation Main Page Display Description](#) in this section.

Automation table page 1/2 shows information about the required conditions for automation and automation state: disabled (B) (1/4 of pie) and ready-to-enable (C) (2/4 of pie). When a condition is met, the condition status (D - J) displayed is OK.

Disabled (B) (1/4 of pie):

- Status (D) is OK if the tractor is capable of receiving commands from the baler. If status (D) is not OK, see your John Deere dealer.

Ready-to-enable (C) (2/4 of pie):

- Status (E) is OK if the baler automation activation key is successfully saved. If status (E) is not OK, see [Baler Automation Activation Key](#) in this section.
- Status (F) is OK if there is no active diagnostic trouble code. If status (F) is not OK, see [Recent Problems](#) in Baler Application Service section.
- Status (G) is OK if there is no error regarding the Tractor-Implement Automation™ hotkey (resume switch). If status (G) is not OK, see your John Deere dealer.
- Status (H) is OK if the tractor ignition key is turned ON. If status (H) is not OK, see your tractor operator's manual.
- Status (I) is OK if the tractor automation activation key is successfully saved. If status (I) is not OK, see your John Deere dealer.

Last Exit Code Issued: 1/2
Manual tying timeout

Conditions	OK
Tractor Automation Ready	OK
Baler Activation	OK
No Active Baler Codes	OK
Resume Switch Status	OK
Key Switch On	OK
Security Authorized	OK
Automation ON	OK

CC1038509

A—Automation Deactivation Message
B—Automation State Disabled
C—Automation State Ready-to-enable
D - J— Condition Status

- Status (J) is OK if the selected automation level is automation level 1 or automation level 2. If status (J) is not OK, see [Select Automation Level](#) in this section.

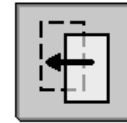
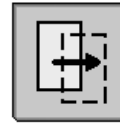
NOTE: On the baler application main page, if automation state ready-to-enable (C) (2/4 of pie) can not be obtained, check missing condition and see your John Deere dealer.

Continued on next page

OUC006,0001963 -19-13FEB13-4/7

5. Select Next Page or Previous Page softkey to access page 2/2.

CC1031853 —UN—30SEP09



CC1031853

OUC006,0001963 -19-13FEB13-5/7

6. Automation table page 2/2 shows information about the required condition for automation and automation state: enabled (A) (3/4 of pie) and active (B) (4/4 of pie). When a condition is met, the condition status (C - I) displayed is OK.

Enabled (A) (3/4 of pie):

- Status (C) is OK if the enable or disable automation icon is pressed. If status (C) is not OK, see [Operate Baler in Automation Mode](#) in this section.

Active (B) (4/4 of pie):

- Status (D) is OK if the selected tying system is not already running. If status (D) is not OK, retract selected tying system actuator, see [Test Electro-Hydraulic Components](#) in Baler Application Service section.
- Status (E) is OK if the current bale diameter is less than 98% of the target bale diameter. If status (E) is not OK, see [Set Bale Diameter](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
- Status (F) is OK if an operator is detected on the tractor seat. If status (F) is not OK, see your tractor operator's manual.
- Status (G) is OK if the tractor PTO is engaged. If status (G) is not OK, see your tractor operator's manual.
- Status (H) is OK if the baler gate is correctly closed. If status (H) is not OK, see [Adjust Gate Latch Switches SB333 and SB334](#) in Service section.
- Status (I) is OK if the Tractor-Implement Automation™ hotkey (resume switch) is pressed. If

Last Exit Code Issued: 2/2
Manual tying timeout

Conditions	OK
Enable Button Pressed	OK
Tying Process Idle	OK
Bale < 98% Diameter	OK
Operator in Seat	OK
PTO On	OK
Bale Gate Shut	OK
Resume Switch Pressed	OK

CC1038510

CC1038510 —19—26SEP12

A—Automation State Enabled C - I— Condition Status
B—Automation State Active

status (I) is not OK, see TIA™ — Tractor-Implement Automation™ section in your tractor operator's manual.

OUC006,0001963 -19-13FEB13-6/7

7. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

OUC006,0001963 -19-13FEB13-7/7

Automation Deactivation Message List

The automation deactivation messages (last exit code issued) and descriptions are given in the following table:

Automation deactivation message	Description
Activation key expired. ^a	See your John Deere dealer.
Active baler codes. ^a	Check your baler Diagnostic Trouble Codes and see Diagnostic Trouble Code List in Baler Application Service section.
Automation aborted due to PTO. ^b	Engage PTO.
Automation aborted due to speed. ^b	Re-engage automation mode.
Automation aborted due to valve 1. ^b	Switch valves and see your John Deere dealer.
Automation aborted due to valve 2. ^b	Switch valves and see your John Deere dealer.
Automation aborted due to valve 3. ^b	Switch valves and see your John Deere dealer.
Automation aborted due to valve 4. ^b	Switch valves and see your John Deere dealer.
Automation aborted due to valve 5. ^b	Switch valves and see your John Deere dealer.
Automation aborted due to valve 6. ^b	Switch valves and see your John Deere dealer.
Automation command message time-out. ^c	Check wiring harness between tractor and baler.
Communication error. ^a	Disconnect and reconnect baler wiring harness. See your John Deere dealer.
Driver fault. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Driver out of range. ^c	Switch valves and see your John Deere dealer.
Function not authorized. ^c	Tractor TIA™ activation key not OK.
Invalid PTO configuration. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Lever fault. ^c	Switch valves and see your John Deere dealer.
Manual tying time-out. ^a	Check net tying device and restart tying cycle.
Net tying problem. ^a	Check net tying device. Check your baler diagnostic trouble codes and see Diagnostic Trouble Code List in Baler Application Service section.
Oil level low. ^c	Refill tractor with oil.
Operator is no longer on the seat. ^a	Operator should be on the seat to operate baler in automation mode.
Oversized bale. ^a	If working in automation level 1, stop tractor then tie current bale as soon as possible. If working in automation level 2, tractor stops moving forward then tying cycle starts automatically. Eject current tied bale and re-engage automation mode.
Over-speed fault. ^c	Reduce engine speed.
Pause mode, tractor speed is 0. ^a	Unload bale and re-engage automation mode.
Pickup is plugged. ^a	Unplug the baler. See Unplug Rotary Feeder in Automation Mode in this section.
Power out of range. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
PTO not calibrated. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
PTO not enabled in current gear. ^c	Check your tractor DTC.
PTO re-engagement fault. ^c	Check your tractor DTC.
PTO switch conflict. ^c	Check your tractor DTC.
PTO switch Off. ^c	Engage PTO.
RBC Security challenge failed. ^a	Restart tractor. See your John Deere dealer.
Remote armed. ^c	Check PTO operation. See your tractor operator's manual.
Remote PTO enable switch fault. ^c	Disengage the PTO. See your John Deere dealer.
Remote PTO switch fault. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Resume switch error. ^a	Check Tractor-Implement Automation™ hotkey (resume switch). See your John Deere dealer.
Reverse command. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
SCV lock. ^c	Unlock SCV.
Security error 1. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.

Continued on next page

OUCC006,0001A2B -19-12FEB13-1/2

Operating Baler in Automation Mode

Automation deactivation message	Description
Security error 2. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Security error 3. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Security error 4. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Security error 5. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Security error 6. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Tractor does not resume. ^a	See your John Deere dealer.
Tractor in reverse. ^c	Leave reverse position.
Tractor is in park. ^c	Leave park.
Tractor is stopped. ^a	Increase ground speed and re-engage automation mode.
Tractor speed is not 0. ^a	Stop tractor and restart tying cycle.
Under-speed fault. ^c	Increase engine speed.
Valve circuit error. ^c	Switch valves and see your John Deere dealer.
Valve error other. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.
Valve missing. ^c	Switch valves and see your John Deere dealer.
Valve not calibrated. ^c	See your John Deere dealer.

^aDeactivation message from the baler

^bDeactivation message generic

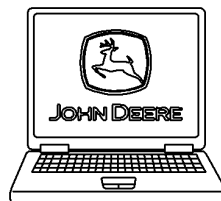
^cDeactivation message from the tractor

OUCC006,0001A2B -19-12FEB13-2/2

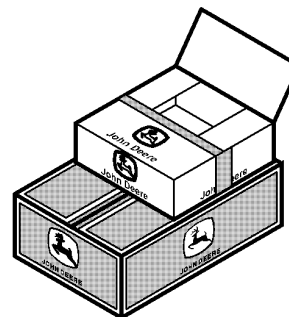
Attachments

Find Attachments

See your John Deere dealer or the John Deere online attachment website to check the attachments suitable for your machine.



CC208612

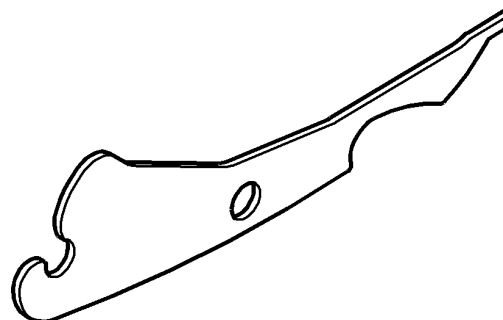


CC208612 —JUN—14APR14

DC82261,0000447 -19-18OCT14-1/1

Knife Slot Filler Kit

To prevent the crop from entering into the knife spring mechanism when baling without knives for a long period of time, a set of knife slot fillers is available as attachment.



CC1033018

CC1033018 —JUN—02JUL10

OUCC006,000169C -19-02JUL10-1/1

Top Idler Roll Drive Kit

This kit is used to drive the belts properly in wet conditions.



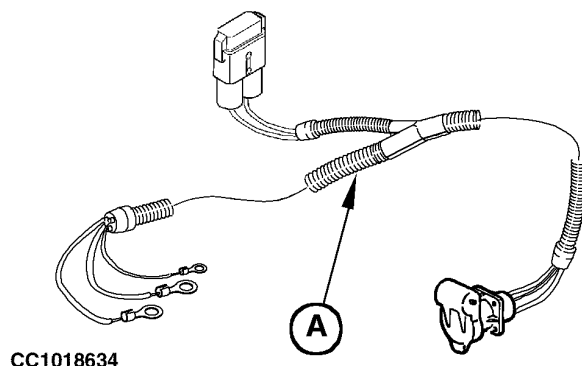
CC1031057

CC1031057 —JUN—23OCT08

OUCC006,00014BA -19-23OCT08-1/1

Battery Harness for Monitor

Whenever necessary, a battery harness (A) is available as an attachment to be installed on tractors not being equipped with any convenience outlet.



CC1018634

CC1018634 —UN—24OCT00

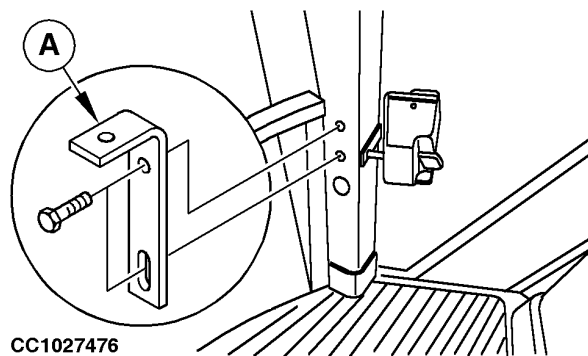
OUC006,00014A0 -19-07OCT08-1/1

Monitor Support (6000, 7000 and 8000 Series Tractors Only)

A monitor support is available from your John Deere dealer.

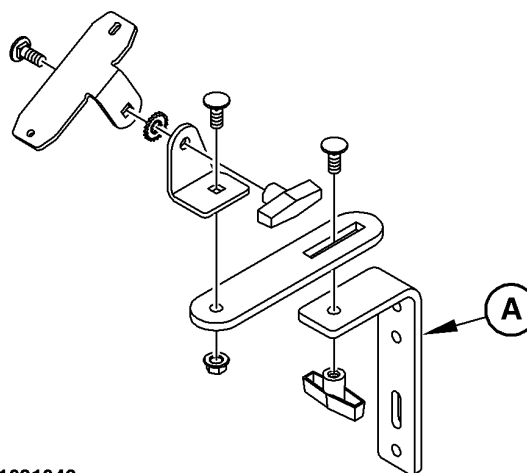
1. Remove the top two plugs from the lower right-hand cab post.
2. Install angle (A) to cab post. Fasten with two M10x20 flange screws.
3. Assemble parts on the angle (A) as shown.
4. Install monitor.

A—Angle



CC1027476

CC1027476 —UN—11JUL05



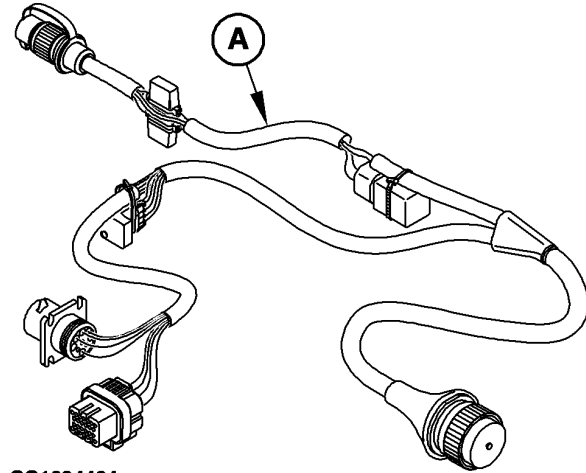
CC1031046

CC1031046 —UN—28OCT08

OUC006,00014A1 -19-07OCT08-1/1

Cab Wiring Harness for Monitor

A cab wiring harness (A) for virtual terminal (display) is available from your John Deere dealer.



CC1034494

CC1034494 -JUN-06JUL11

OUCC006,00017E7 -19-27JUN11-1/1

Lubrication and Maintenance

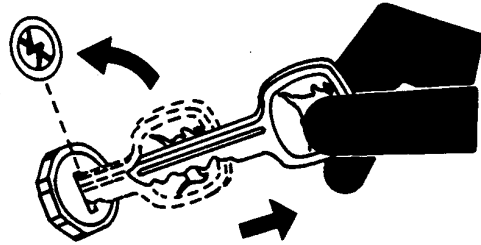
Lubricating and Maintaining Machine Safely

CAUTION: To help prevent personal injury caused by unexpected movement, be sure to service machine on a level surface.

Do not lubricate or maintain the machine while it is in motion.

If machine is connected to tractor, engage tractor parking brake and/or place transmission in "Park", shut off engine and remove key.

If machine is detached from tractor, block wheels to prevent movement.



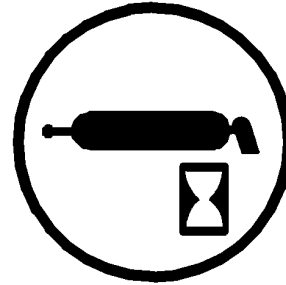
CC03745,00002A8 -19-27AUG01-1/1

TSS230 —UN—24MAY89

Observe Service Intervals

Using tractor hour meter as a guide, perform services at the hourly intervals indicated on following pages.

IMPORTANT: Recommended service intervals are for average conditions. Service **MORE OFTEN** if baler is operated in adverse conditions.



CC 000934

CC03745,00002A9 -19-27AUG01-1/1

CC000934 —UN—05APR95

Perform Lubrication and Maintenance

Clean lubrication fittings before using grease gun. Replace any lost or broken fittings immediately. If a new fitting fails to take grease, remove and check for failure of adjoining parts.

Carefully perform lubrication and maintenance at hour intervals provided in this section to ensure optimum performance and avoid premature failure.

Bearing failures or overheating can result in a fire. To reduce bearing failures or overheating, thoroughly lubricate all greasing points of the machine:

- After each time the machine is washed.
- When placing the machine in storage.
- Just before using the machine after it has been stored.

Regularly check that grease is coming out of bearings while greasing them.

Crop material and other debris may accumulate around bearings and bearing covers. Inspect and clean these areas periodically throughout the working day.

DC82261,0000538 -19-18OCT14-1/1

Grease

Use grease based on NLGI consistency numbers and the expected air temperature range during the service interval.

John Deere SD Polyurea Grease is preferred.

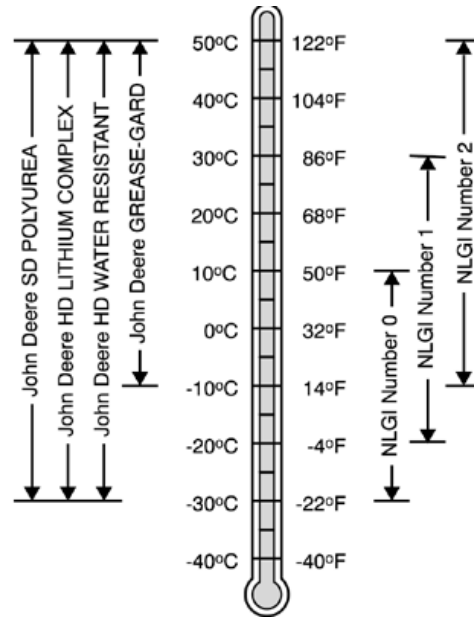
The following greases are also recommended:

- John Deere HD Lithium Complex Grease
- John Deere HD Water Resistant Grease
- John Deere GREASE-GARD™

Other greases may be used if they meet the following:

- NLGI Performance Classification GC-LB

IMPORTANT: Some types of grease thickeners are not compatible with others. Consult your grease supplier before mixing different types of grease.



Greases for Air Temperature Ranges

GREASE-GARD is a trademark of Deere & Company

DX,GREAI -19-14APR11-1/1

TS1673 —UN—31OCT03

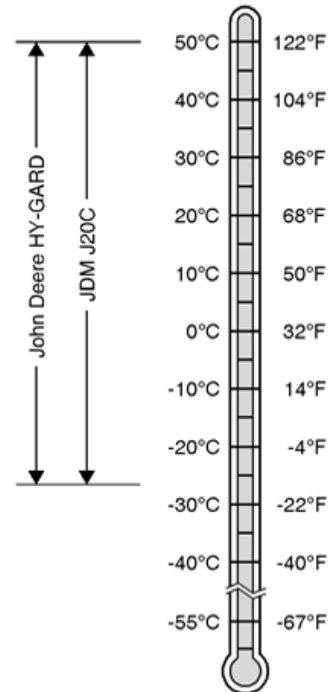
High Viscosity Gear Case Oil

Use oil viscosity based on the expected air temperature range during the period between oil changes.

John Deere HY-GARD™ (high viscosity) is recommended.

Other oils may be used if they meet the John Deere Standard JDM J20C.

John Deere Low Viscosity HY-GARD™ and BIO-HY-GARD™ oils are NOT recommended.



CC1027835

HY-GARD is a trademark of Deere & Company
BIO-HY-GARD is a trademark of Deere & Company

CC03745,000101C -19-25OCT10-1/1

CC1027835 —UN—06JAN06

Multiluber Chain Oil

Use the following oil for the multiluber chain oiling system:

John Deere BIO-MULTILUBER-OIL¹

Other equivalent biodegradable oils may also be used.

IMPORTANT: Never use mineral oil for this application.

¹ John Deere BIO-MULTILUBER-OIL meets or exceeds minimum biodegradability of 80% within 21 days according to CEC-L-33-T-82 test method. BIO-MULTILUBER-OIL must not be mixed with mineral oil.

NOTE: John Deere BIO-MULTILUBER-OIL is available at the John Deere dealer.

- DC43300: BIO-MULTILUBER-OIL 5 liters

OUC006,00019AE -19-09NOV12-1/1

Alternative and Synthetic Lubricants

Conditions in certain geographical areas may require lubricant recommendations different from those printed in this manual.

Some John Deere brand coolants and lubricants may not be available in your location.

Consult your John Deere dealer to obtain information and recommendations.

Synthetic lubricants may be used if they meet the performance requirements as shown in this manual.

The temperature limits and service intervals shown in this manual apply to both conventional and synthetic lubricants.

Re-refined base stock products may be used if the finished lubricant meets the performance requirements.

DX,ALTER -19-11APR11-1/1

Lubricant Storage

Your equipment can operate at top efficiency only when clean lubricants are used.

Use clean containers to handle all lubricants.

Store lubricants and containers in an area protected from dust, moisture, and other contamination. Store containers on their side to avoid water and dirt accumulation.

Make certain that all containers are properly marked to identify their contents.

Properly dispose of all old containers and any residual lubricant they may contain.

DX,LUBST -19-11APR11-1/1

Mixing of Lubricants

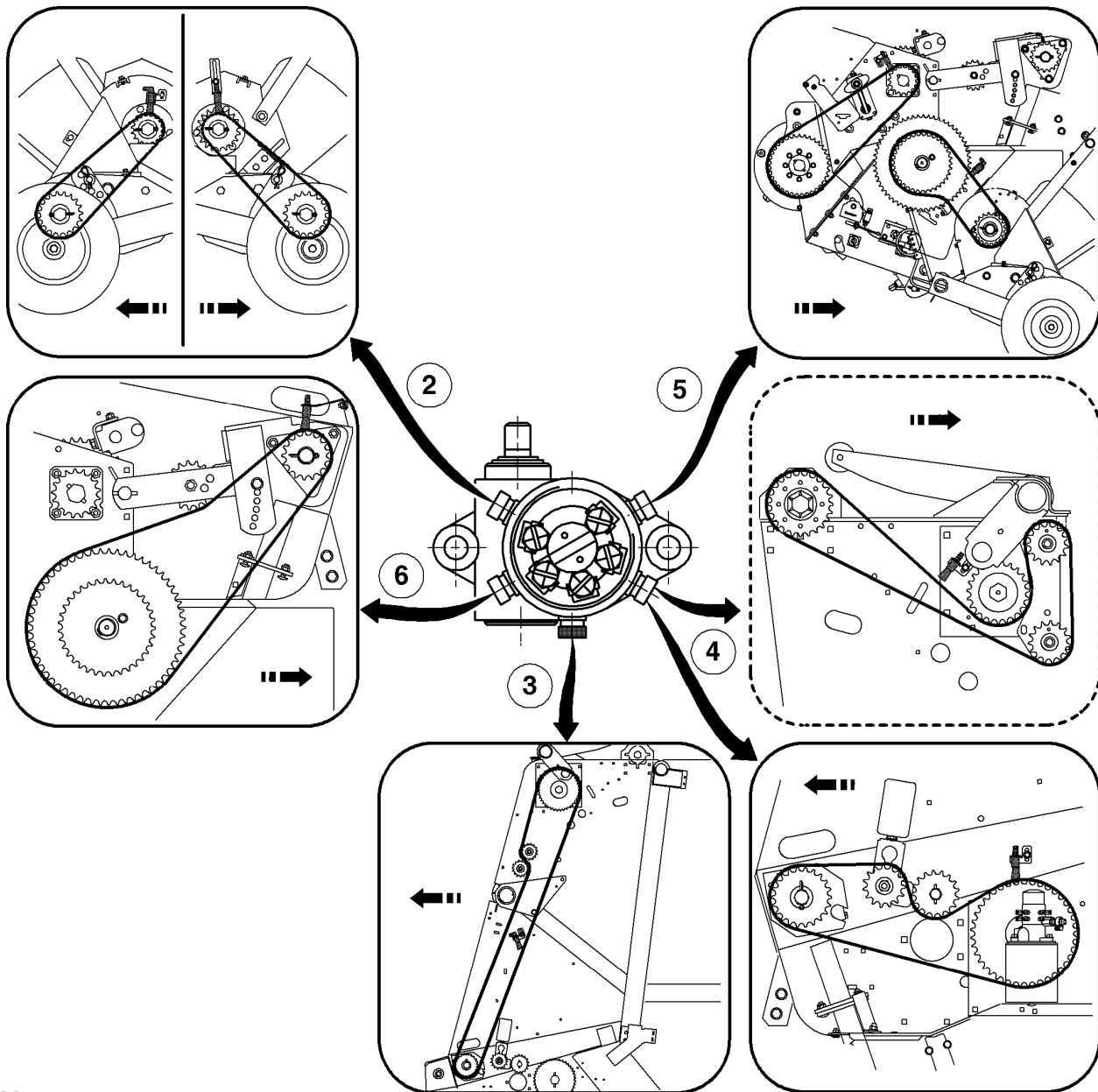
In general, avoid mixing different brands or types of oil. Oil manufacturers blend additives in their oils to meet certain specifications and performance requirements.

Mixing different oils can interfere with the proper functioning of these additives and degrade lubricant performance.

Consult your John Deere dealer to obtain specific information and recommendations.

DX,LUBMIX -19-18MAR96-1/1

Chain Oiling Component Location



CC1026649

2— Pickup Cylinder and Left Auger Drive Chains (Red Ring)

3— Upper Roll Drive Chain (Orange Ring)

4— Main Drive Chain and Top Idler Roll Drive Chain (Yellow Ring)

5— Bottom Roll Drive Chain and Right Auger Drive Chain (Green Ring)

6— Rotary Feeder Drive Chain (Blue Ring)

NOTE: Each hose is identified on pump and brush sides with a number on a color ring.

CC1026649 —UN—23FEB05

OUC006,0001A2E -19-12FEB13-1/1

Adjust Oil Flow

The oil flow can be adjusted for each chain.

1. Unscrew and remove cover (A).
2. Identify the screw allowing the oil flow of the relevant brush(es) to be adjusted.
3. Turn the screw clockwise to increase oil flow and counterclockwise to decrease oil flow.

NOTE: The pump is very precise. Turn screw 1/4 turn by 1/4 turn to adjust oil flow.

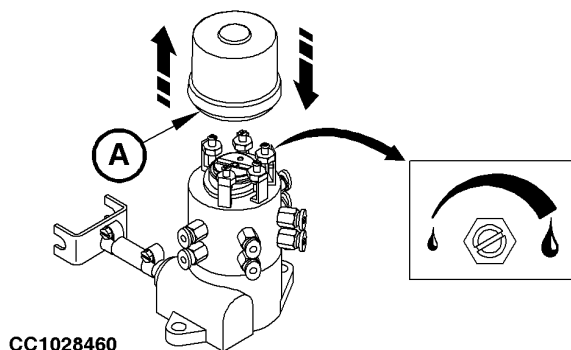
When the screw is totally screwed in (maximum flow), the minimum flow will be obtained by unscrewing four turns.

To apply initial factory settings, proceed as follows:

Fully screw in the relevant screw.

For screw of brushes 2, 5 and 6, unscrew 18 clicks (3 turns).

For screw of brush 3, unscrew 15 clicks (2.5 turns).



A—Pump Cover

For screw of brush 4, unscrew 16 clicks (2.7 turns).

4. Install cover (A).

OUC006,0001A20 -19-08JAN13-1/1

As Required - Refill Multiluber Chain Oiling System Reservoir

Depending on the pump flow adjustment, refill reservoir as required.

Specification

Oil Reservoir—Capacity..... 4 l
(1 US gal)

Use oil specified under Multiluber Chain Oil in this section.

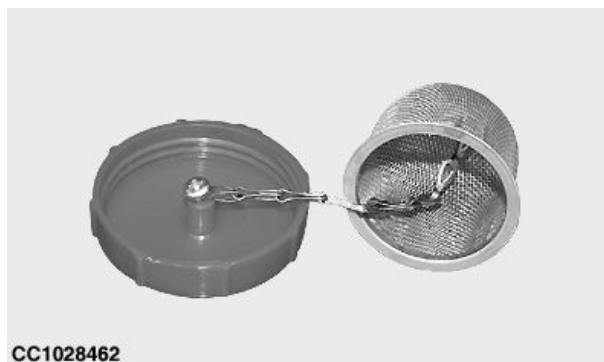
IMPORTANT: The use of any other type of oil may damage the pump.



DC82261,0000442 -19-20MAR14-1/1

As Required - Cleaning Oil Reservoir Filter

Clean oil reservoir filter when it is necessary.



OUC006,0001272 -19-08FEB07-1/1

As Required - Clean Hydraulic Coupler Filters

Clean coupler filter as follows:

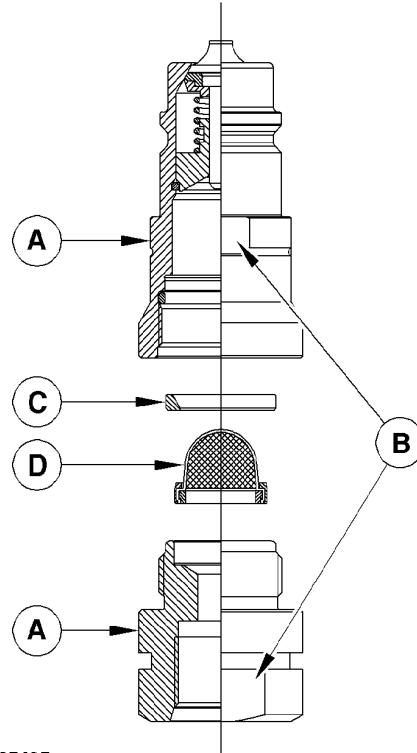
1. Disassemble coupler (A) using flat surfaces (B).
2. Remove spacer ring (C) and filter (D).
3. Clean filter (D), using clean solvent.
4. Assemble coupler (A) in reverse order of disassembly.
5. Tighten coupler (A) to the following specification:

Specification

Pressure Line
Coupler—Torque.....90 N·m
(66 lb.-ft.)

A—Coupler
B—Flat Surface

C—Spacer Ring
D—Filter



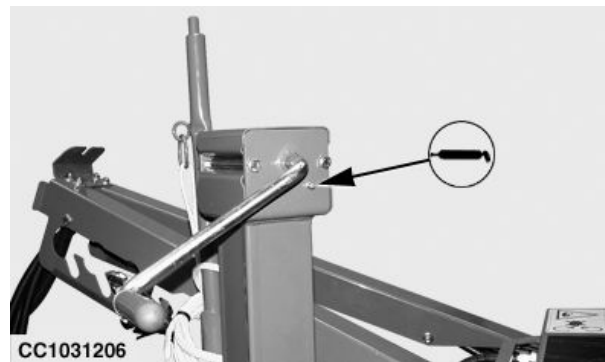
CC1025485

CC1025485 —UN—15MAR04

JC87117,00001A4 -19-21OCT14-1/1

As Required - Jackstand

Lubricate with John Deere GREASE-GARD.



CC1031206

CC1031206 —UN—05JAN09

OUCC006,000144C -19-08DEC08-1/1

Daily - Fire Prevention

Use compressed air to remove buildup of crop material and to keep the machine clean.

Avoid high-pressure power-washing next to the bearings to prevent damaging seals.

Check bearings for early signs of damage, and replace as indicated. Turn off power to baler and check for unusual noises, hot parts, smells of scorching, and discolored paint or metal.

Check condition of bearings:

- Open gate and lock it.
- With the belts slackened, rotate each of the rollers by hand, paying attention to dry, noises, or rough rotation.

- Push, pull, or gently pry to check bearing radial play.
- Watch and feel for looseness in the bearings. Replace worn or damaged bearings.
Just after operation, check the temperature of each bearing, if one or some are hotter than the others replace the bearings.

Check condition of pressurized water tank:

- Check the pressure of the pressurized water tank by using the indicator. The pressure will vary slightly due to temperature but should always be within green area.
- Check that the pressurized water tank is fully charged. Weigh or heft the pressurized water tank to determine fullness. See [Charge Pressurized Water Tank](#) in Service section.

DC82261,00004E1 -19-05AUG14-1/1

Daily - Precutter Knives and Drop Floor

CAUTION: Be careful when working around the knives. Knives are sharp and can cause serious injury.

Check precutter knives:

1. Open the gate.
2. Engage tractor park brake or park lock, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
3. Secure the gate with the safety lock device.

Keep each precutter knife very sharp. Knives must have regular, daily attention or should be checked at least every 200 bales.

Refer to Service section under [Replace Precutter Knives](#) to remove the knives and under [Sharpen Precutter Knives](#) to sharpen them.



CC1030614

CC1030614 —UN—14OCT08

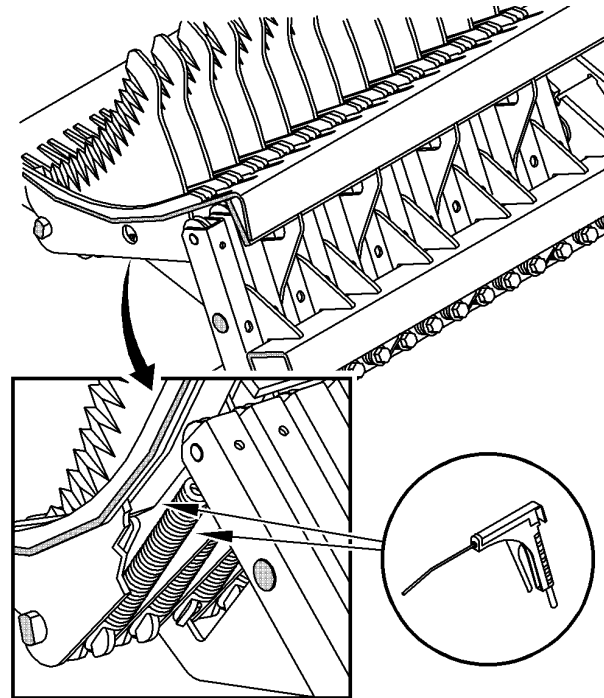
Continued on next page

OUCC006,0001A2C -19-13FEB13-1/2

Clean drop floor:

1. Lower the drop floor. See [Unplug Rotary Feeder](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
2. Select the maximum number of knives. See [Select Number of Precutter Knives \(if Equipped\)](#) in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
3. Engage and retract knives several times. See [Retract or Engage Precutter Knives](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
4. Engage tractor park brake or park lock, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
5. Close the knife shut-off valve and the drop floor shut-off valve.
6. Remove material using air gun or another type of tool.

NOTE: Material is easily removed when knives are engaged.



CC1031199

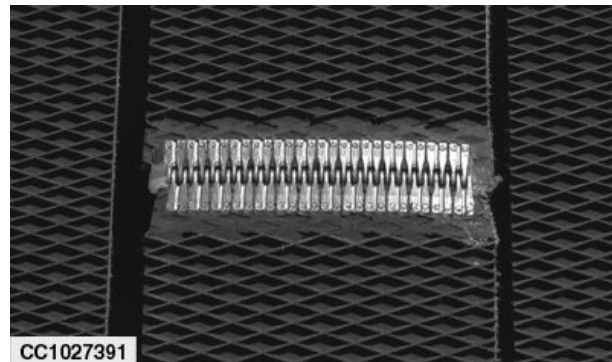
CC1031199 —UN—27NOV08

OUC006,0001A2C -19-13FEB13-2/2

Daily - Check Belt Wires

Daily check wires and hooks for wear or damage. Replace worn or damaged parts.

Change wires and hooks after baling 10000 bales or after each season.



CC1027391

CC1027391 —UN—21JUN05

OUC006,00014C5 -19-18NOV08-1/1

After the First 10 Hours - Wheel Nut Torque

Check wheel nut torque after the first 10 hours of use. See [Check Wheel Nut Torque](#) in Preparing the Baler section.

IMPORTANT: Repeat the procedure each time a wheel has been removed and installed.



CC1035346

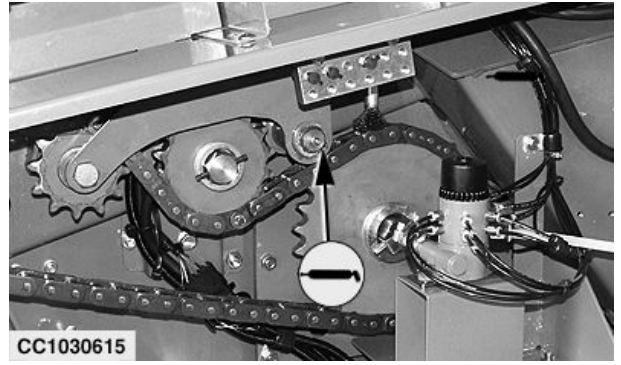
CC1035346 —UN—11OCT11

OUC006,0001A12 -19-20DEC12-1/1

Every 10 Hours - Main Drive Chain Tensioner

⚠ CAUTION: To help prevent injury, do not lubricate with machine running.

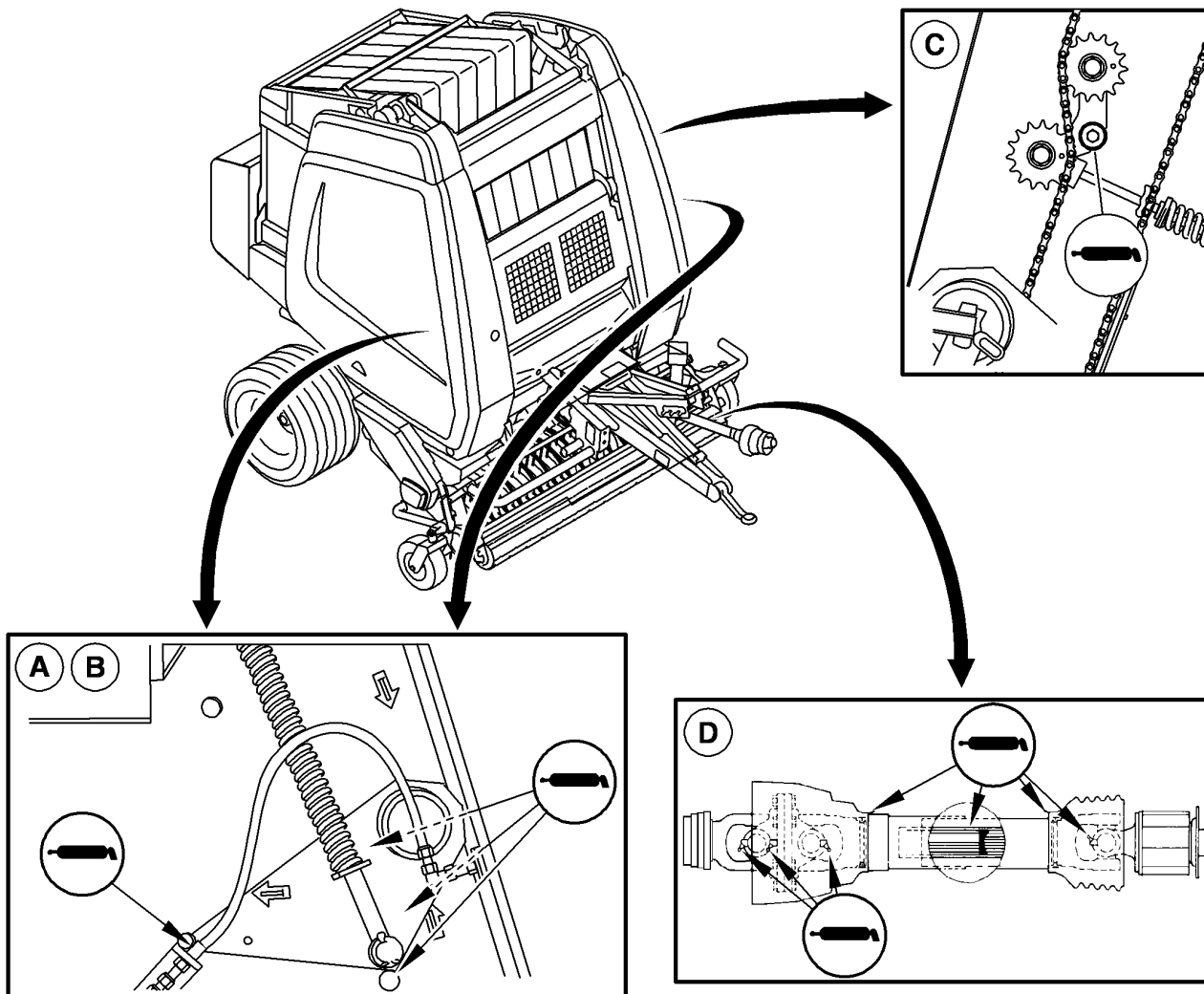
Lubricate with John Deere GREASE-GARD.



CC1030615—UN—11DEC08

OUC006,00013F6 -19-15MAY08-1/1

**Every 10 Hours - Baler with Walterscheid
Standard Maintenance Telescoping Driveline
and without Grease Bank**



CC1031668

A—Tension Arm Pivots
B—Tension Cylinder Rod

C—Drive Chain Idler
D—Telescoping Driveline

Lubricate with John Deere GREASE-GARD™.

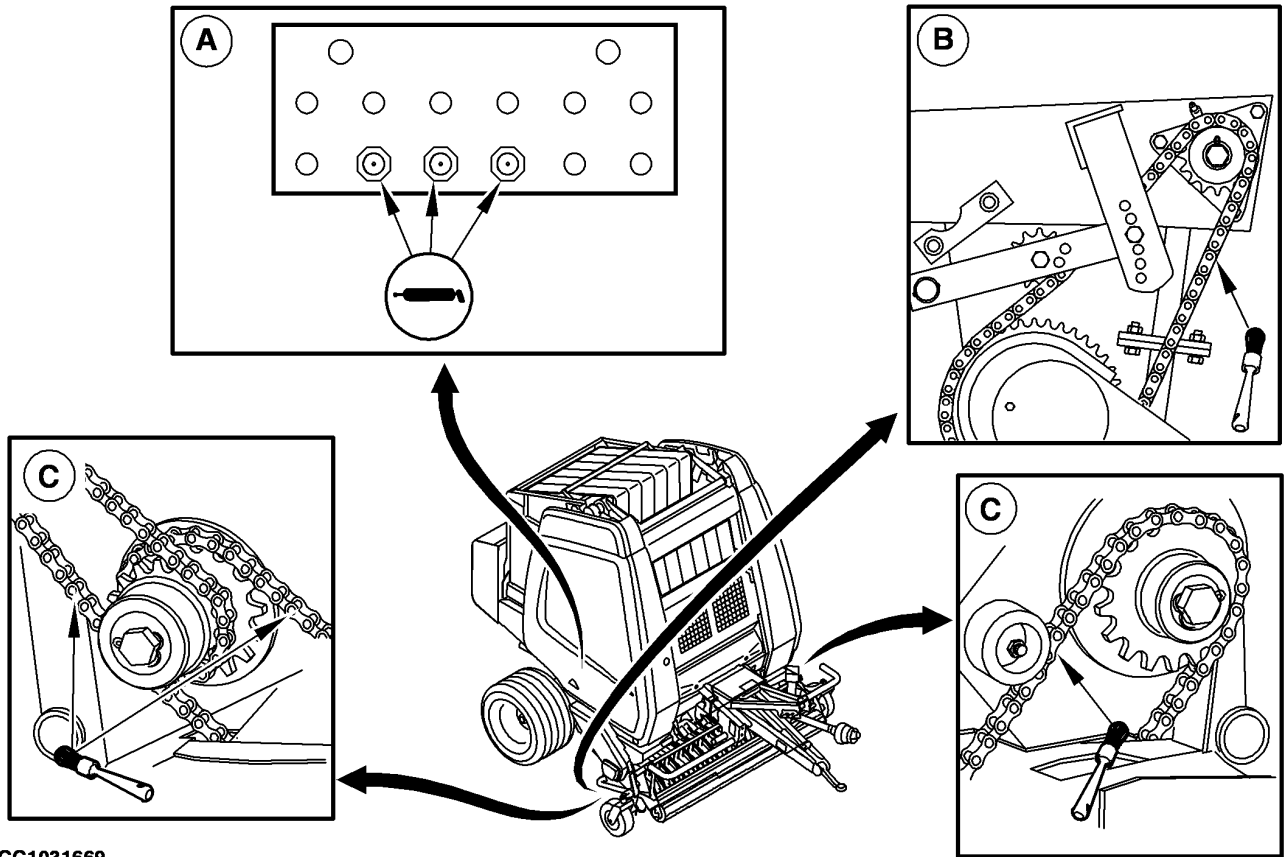
Refer to the basic telescoping driveline Operator's Manual to lubricate telescoping driveline correctly.

NOTE: The quantity of grease delivered at each grease gun pump stroke is average 1 g (0.035 oz.).

OUC006,0001A33 -19-12FEB13-1/1

CC1031668 —UN—17JUN09

Every 10 Hours - Baler without Grease Bank



CC1031669

A—Rotary Feeder
B—Rotary Feeder Drive Chain¹
C—Pickup Drive Chains¹

CAUTION: To help prevent injury, do not lubricate chains with machine running. Lubricate chains with SAE 30 or heavier oil.

Lubricate grease fittings with John Deere GREASE-GARD.

¹baler without automatic chain lubrication system

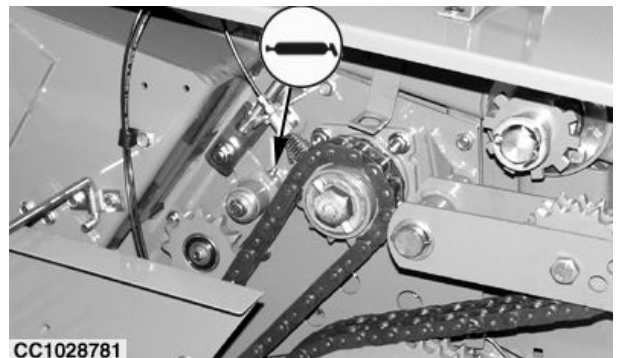
OUCC006,00016B9 -19-19JAN11-1/1

CC1031669 —UN—17JUN09

Every 10 Hours - Baler without Grease Bank

CAUTION: To help prevent injury, do not lubricate with machine running.

Lubricate with John Deere GREASE-GARD.

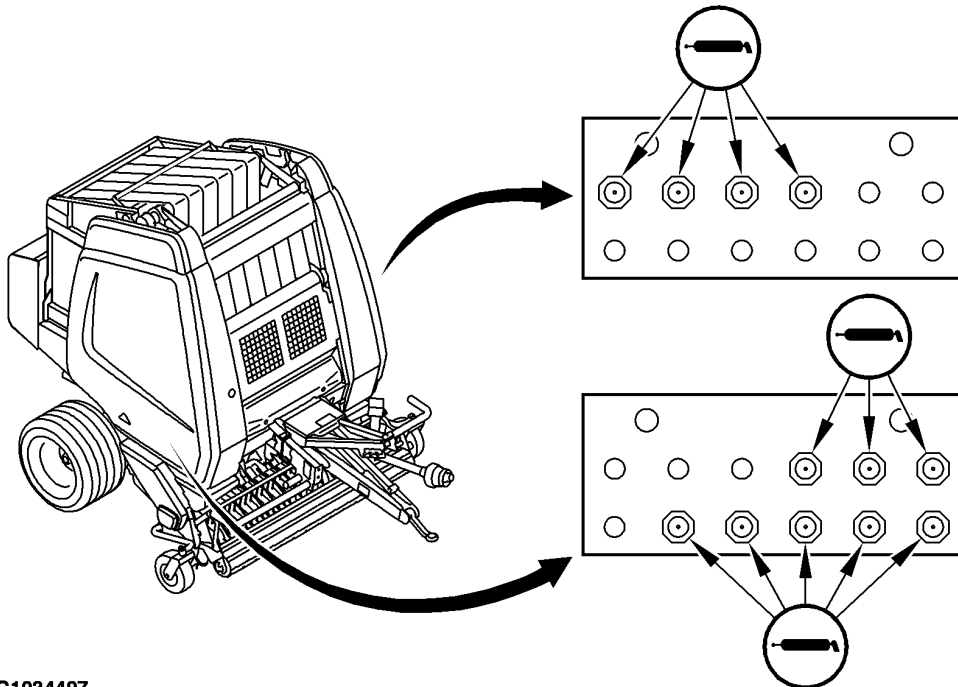


CC1028781

OUCC006,00016BA -19-19JAN11-1/1

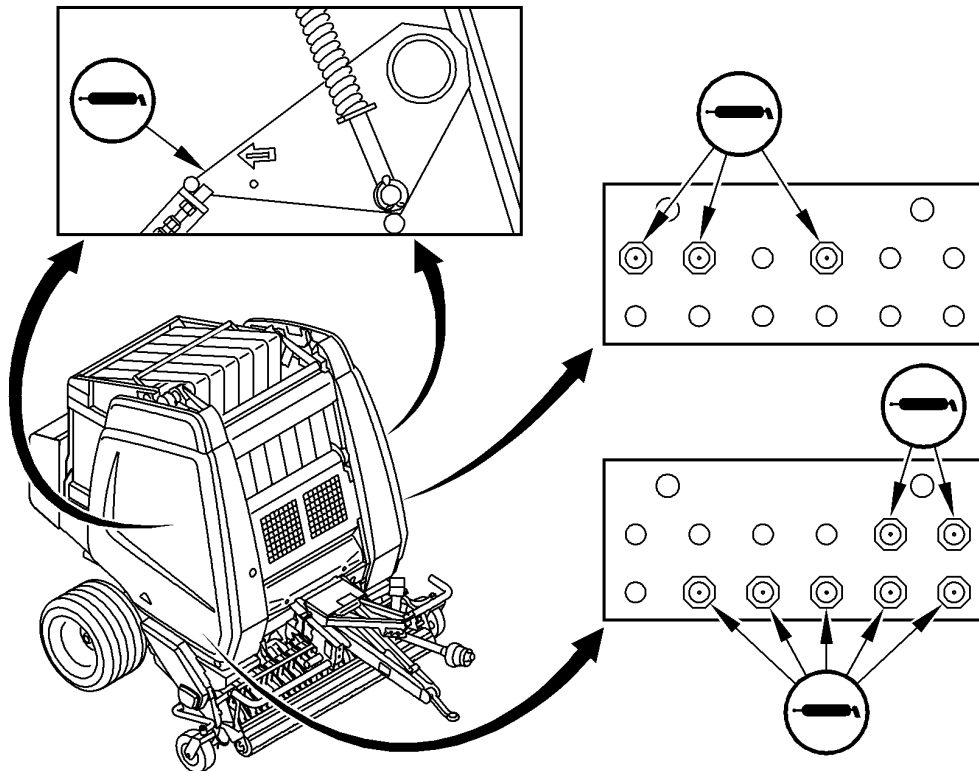
CC1028781 —UN—08NOV06

Every 10 Hours - Baler with Standard Grease Banks



CC1034497

Baler with Tension Cylinder Rod Grease Fitting Located on Grease Banks



CC1034496

Baler with Tension Cylinder Rod Grease Fitting Located on Tension Cylinders

Lubricate with John Deere Grease-Gard™.

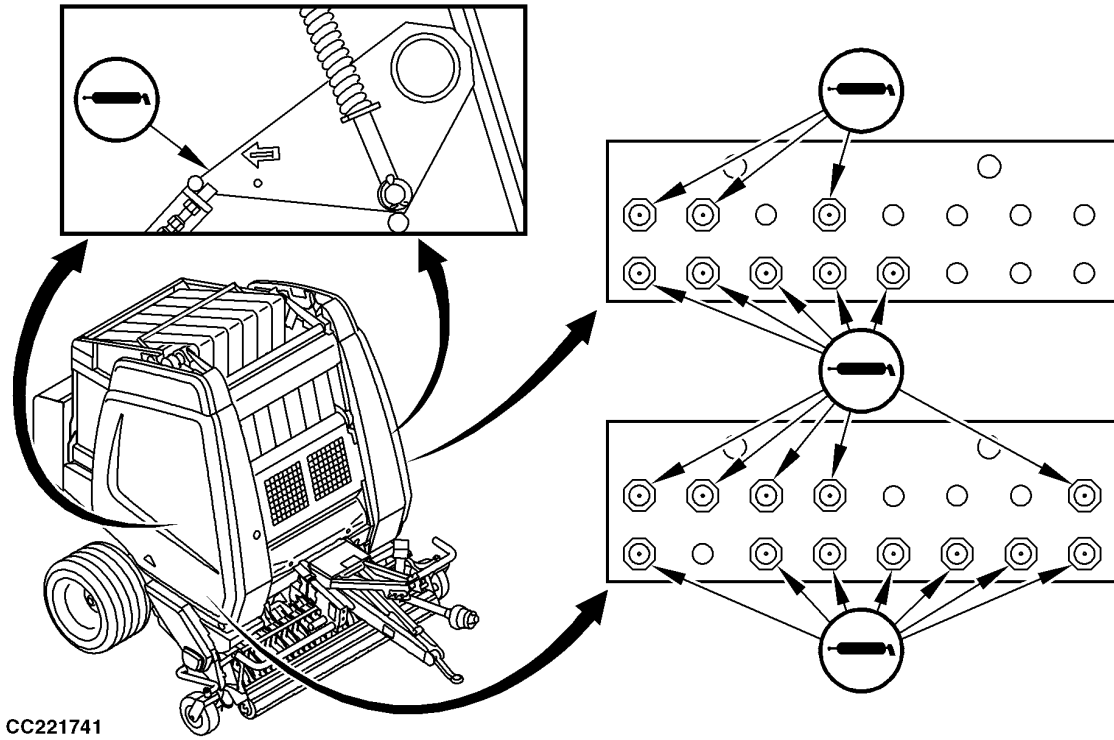
Grease-Gard is a trademark of Deere & Company

CC1034497 —UN—07JUL11

CC1034496 —UN—07JUL11

DC82261,0000556 -19-12DEC14-1/1

Every 10 Hours - Baler with Extended Grease Banks

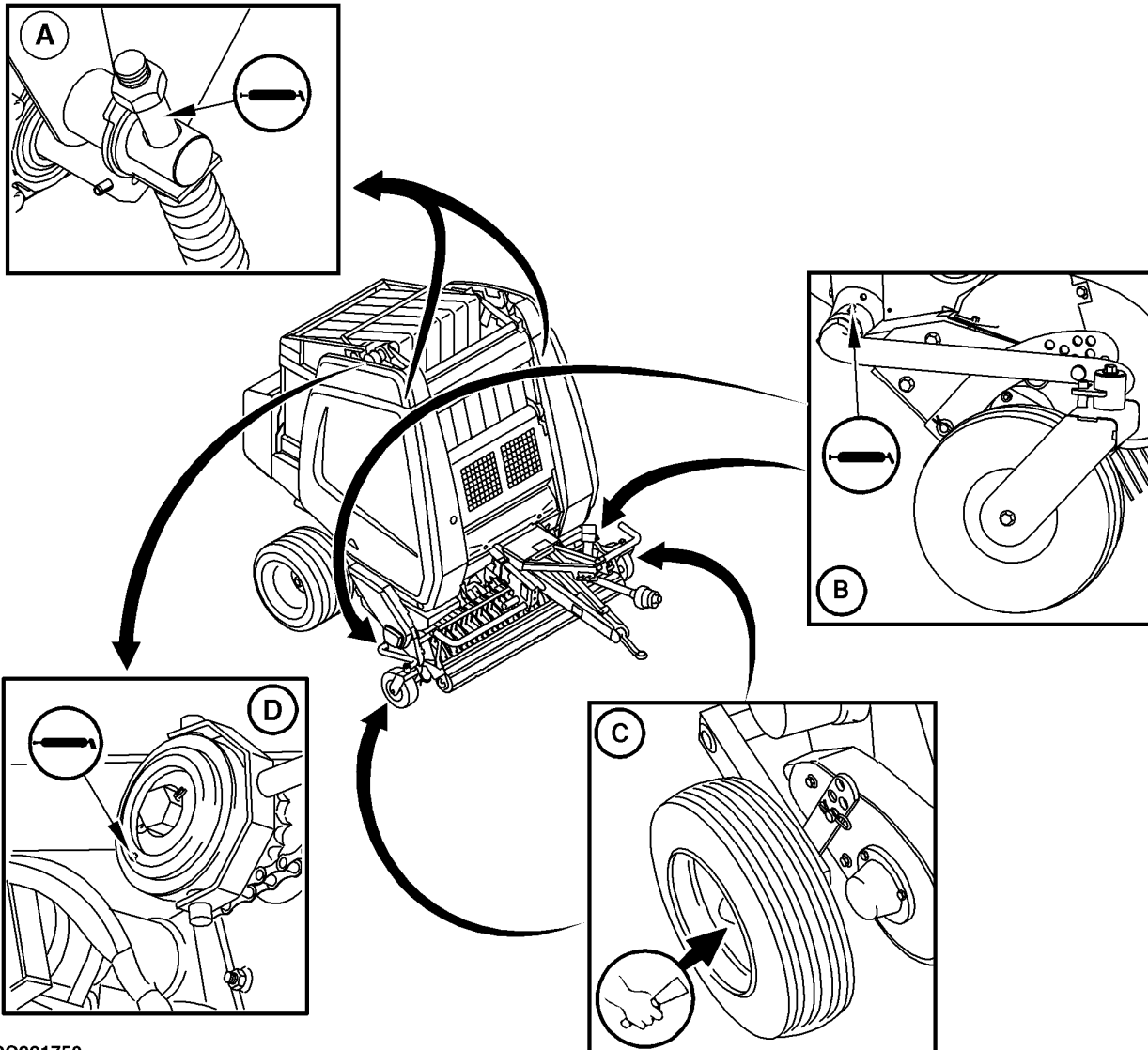


Lubricate with John Deere Grease-Gard™.
Grease-Gard is a trademark of Deere & Company

DC82261,0000557 -19-12DEC14-1/1

CC221741 —UN—15OCT14

Every 30 Hours



CC221753

A—Rod of Take Up Arm
B—Caster Gauge Wheel

C—Gauge Wheel
D—Declutchable Upper Roll
Drive Hub

IMPORTANT: Do not use the baler wheel as a support to lubricate the declutchable upper roll drive hub grease fitting. Always use a ladder or step ladder to gain access to this grease fitting.

Lubricate with John Deere Grease-Gard™.

Grease-Gard is a trademark of Deere & Company

CC221753 —UN—02DEC14

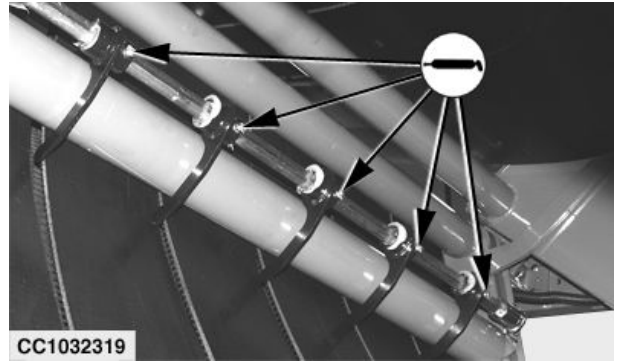
DC82261,0000558 -19-12DEC14-1/1

Every 30 Hours - Tension Arm Fingers

Open the baler rear gate.

Position gate lock valve in locked position. Refer to Gate Lock Valve in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.

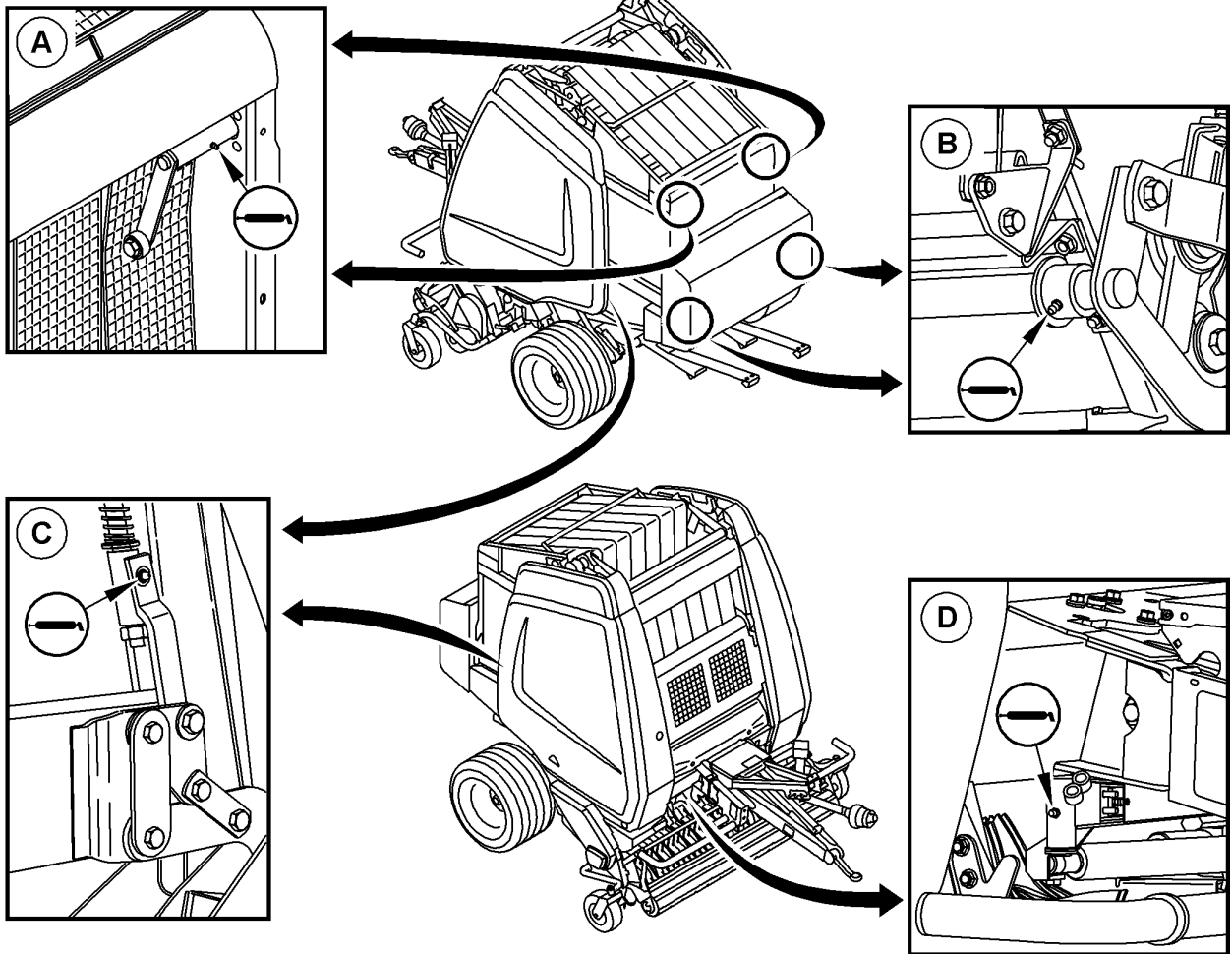
Lubricate with John Deere GREASE-GARD.



CC1032319 —UN—16DEC09

OUC006,00015BB -19-16DEC09-1/1

Every 30 Hours - Baler without Grease Bank



A—Bale Shape Sender Arm

B—Net Tying Swinging Bar Pivot

C—Gate Latch Rod Arms

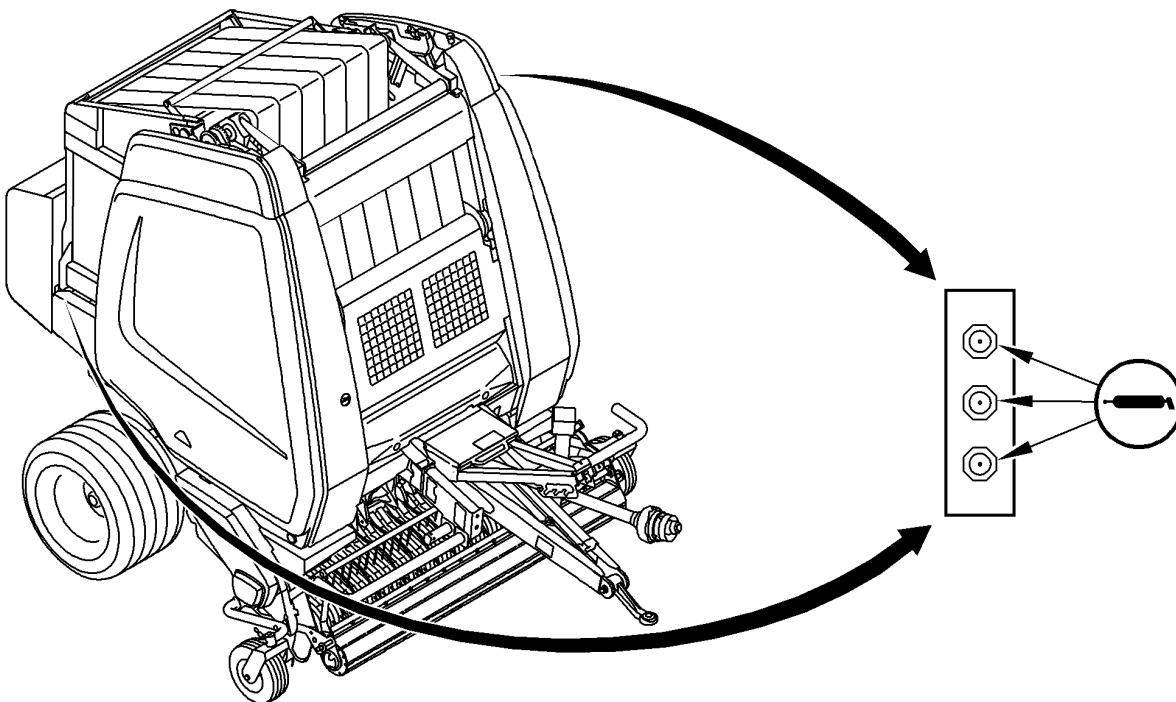
D—Twine Arm Hub

Lubricate with John Deere GREASE-GARD.

CC1033204 —UN—15OCT10

OUC006,00016BD -19-19JAN11-1/1

Every 30 Hours - Baler with Standard or Extended Grease Banks



CC1031818

Lubricate with John Deere Grease-Gard™.

Grease-Gard is a trademark of Deere & Company

CC1031818—UN—08OCT09

DC82261,0000559 -19-12DEC14-1/1

After the First 50 Hours - Wheel Nut Torque

Check wheel nut torque after the first 50 hours of use. See [Check Wheel Nut Torque](#) in Preparing the Baler section.

IMPORTANT: Repeat the procedure each time a wheel has been removed and installed.



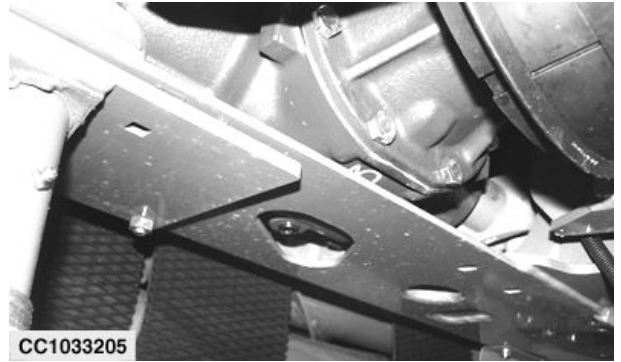
CC1035346

CC1035346—UN—11OCT11

OUC006,0001A13 -19-20DEC12-1/1

After the First 50 Hours - Gear Case

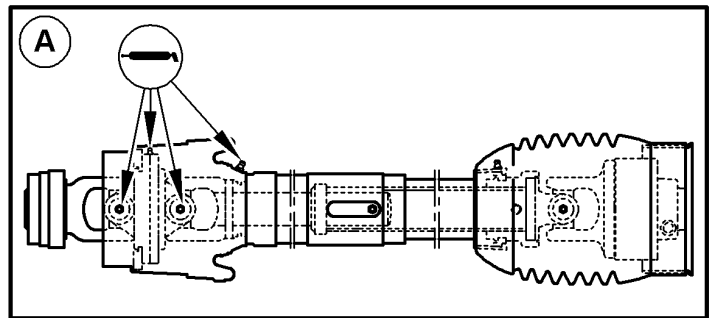
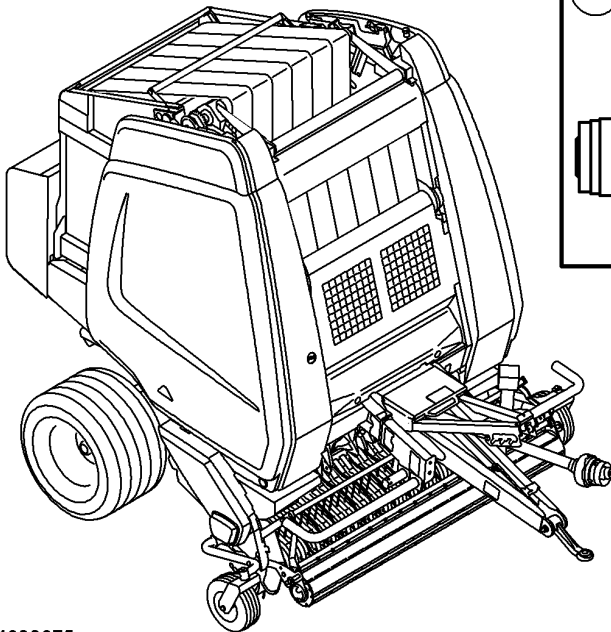
Change the oil in the gear case after the first 50 hours of operation. See Every 500 Hours or Yearly - Drain and Refill Gear Case in this section.



CC1033205 —UN—06OCT10

OUC006,0001A32 -19-12FEB13-1/1

Every 50 Hours - Baler with Walterscheid Extended Maintenance Telescoping Driveline



CC1033675

A—Grease Fittings

Lubricate with John Deere GREASE-GARD.

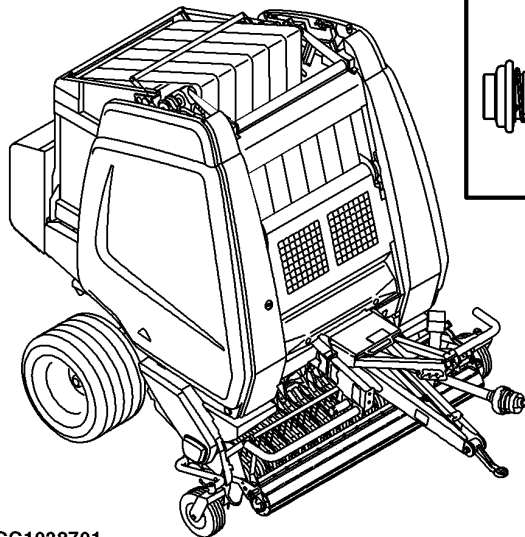
Refer to the basic telescoping driveline Operator's Manual to lubricate telescoping driveline correctly.

NOTE: The quantity of grease delivered at each grease gun pump stroke is average 1 g (0.035 oz.).

CC1033675 —UN—12JAN11

OUC006,0001A17 -19-23JAN13-1/1

Every 50 Hours - Baler with Bondioli Telescoping Driveline

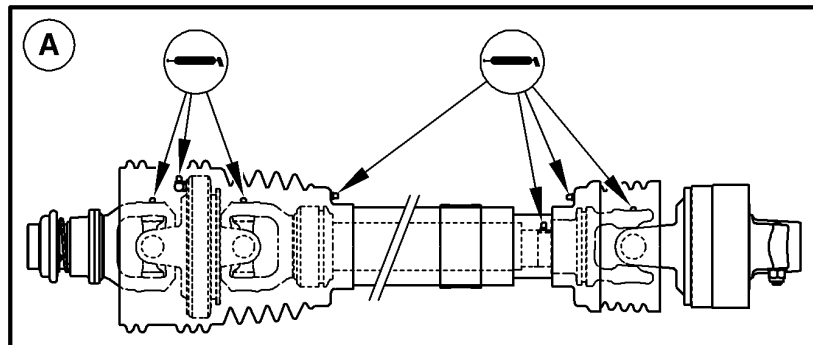


CC1038701

A—Grease Fittings

Lubricate with John Deere GREASE-GARD.

Refer to the basic telescoping driveline Operator's Manual to lubricate telescoping driveline correctly.



NOTE: The quantity of grease delivered at each grease gun pump stroke is average 1 g (0.035 oz.).

OUCC006,0001A18 -19-03JAN13-1/1

CC1038701 —UN—14JAN13

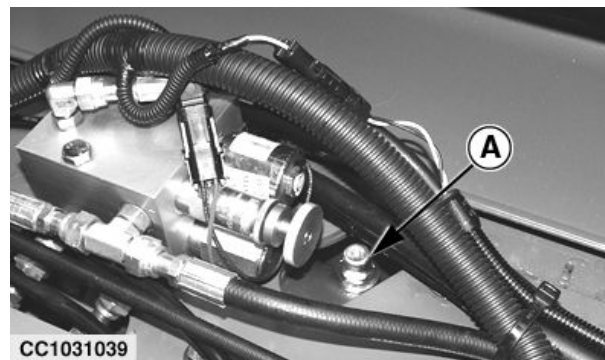
Weekly - Gear Case Oil Level

IMPORTANT: Check level of lubricant weekly using dipstick (A) and refill as necessary.

Do not overfill gear case as this will result in overheating and oil leakage.

Use a type of oil specified under High Viscosity Gear Case Oil in this section.

A—Dipstick



CC1031039

OUCC006,0001496 -19-19SEP08-1/1

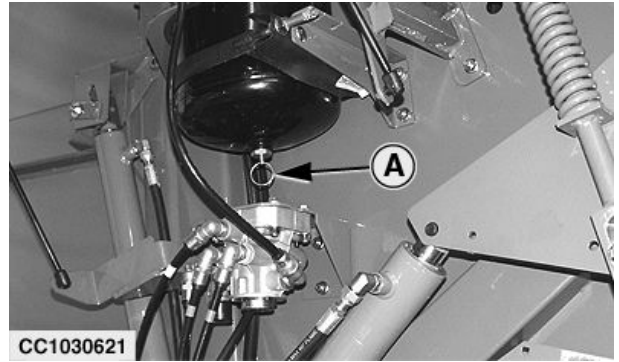
CC1031039 —UN—02OCT08

Weekly - Checking and Draining Air Brake Tank

CAUTION: Before draining condensed water from the compressed air tank, make sure that the machine cannot roll away. Apply the parking brake and place wheel chocks under the wheels.

1. Pull the parking brake lever.
2. Pull ring (A) to drain water from the air reservoir.

IMPORTANT: Condensation in braking system may cause malfunctions.



A—Ring

OUCC006,00013FD -19-27MAY08-1/1

CC1030621 —UN—14OCT08

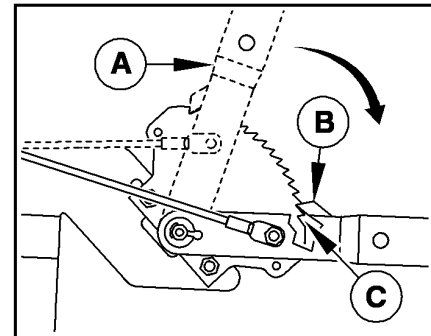
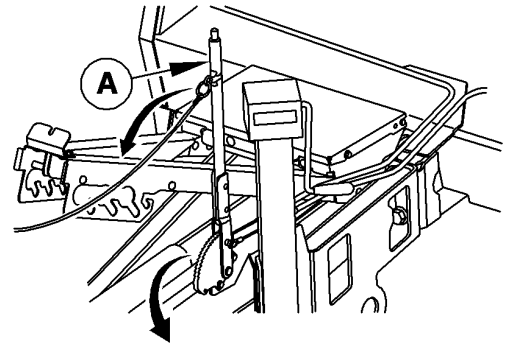
Monthly - Check Park Brake

Pull lever (A) at the maximum to engage park brake then check that latch (B) is not positioned on latest remaining notch (C).

If not see your John Deere dealer.

A—Hand Brake Lever
B—Hand Brake Latch

C—Remaining Notch



CC1035347

OUCC006,000183F -19-11OCT11-1/1

CC1035347 —UN—11OCT11

Monthly - Inspection of Pressurized Water Tank

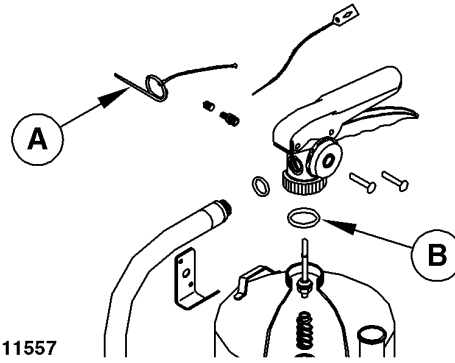
1. Check for any possible damage: corrosion, leakage or obstruction in the discharge outlet.
2. Check that the seal (B) is not broken.
3. Check that the safety pin (A) is in good condition.
4. The pressurized water tank must be clean, and the instructions on the label must always be clearly visible.

When inspection of the pressurized water tank reveals a deficiency, the pressurized water tank must be replaced.

A—Safety Pin

B—Seal

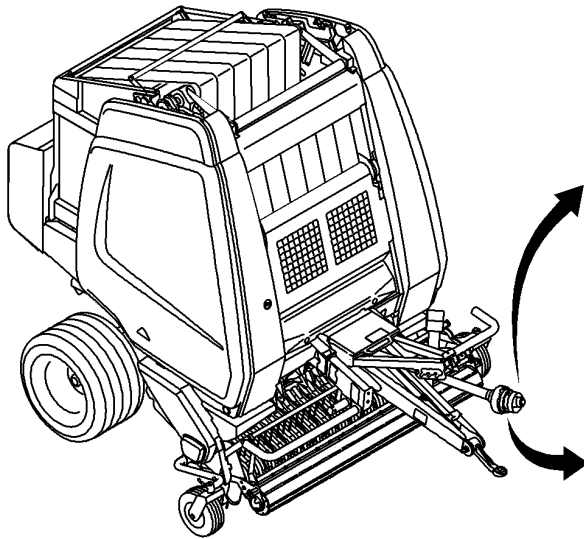
CC211557



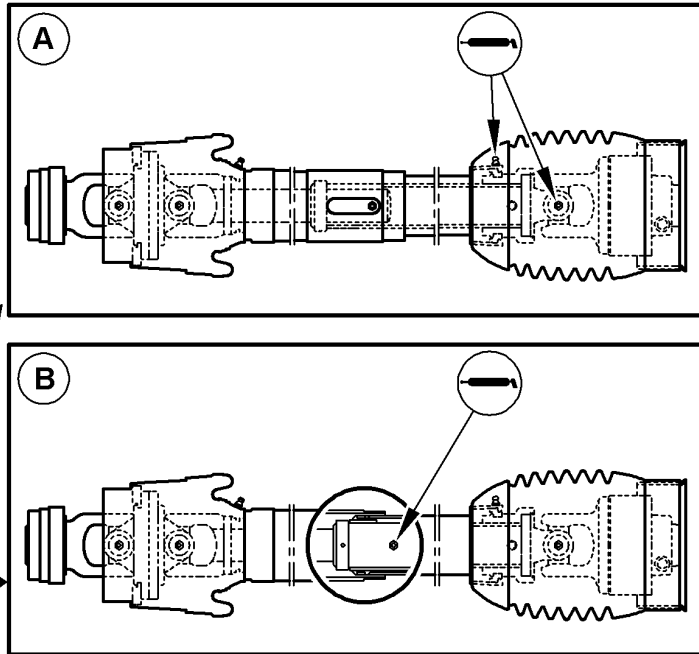
CC211557 —UN—20AUG14

DC82261.00004D7 -19-20AUG14-1/1

Every 250 Hours - Baler with Walterscheid Extended Maintenance Telescoping Driveline



CC1033676



A—Grease Fitting

B—Profile Tube Grease Fitting

Lubricate with John Deere GREASE-GARD.

IMPORTANT: For 1000 rpm telescoping driveline, there are two grease fittings (B), one on each side of profile tube.

Refer to the telescoping driveline basic Operator's Manual to lubricate telescoping driveline correctly.

NOTE: The quantity of grease delivered at each grease gun pump stroke is average 1 g (0.035 oz.).

CC03745.00010B0 -19-24JAN13-1/1

CC1033676 —UN—19JAN11

Every 500 Hours or Yearly - Drain and Refill Gear Case

IMPORTANT: Change the oil in the gear case (B) after the first 50 hours and then every 500 hours or yearly, whichever comes first.

Do not overfill gear case as this will result in overheating and oil leakage.

Drain the oil while it is hot (i.e. after operation). Pull out dipstick (A) and drain plug (C), then drain oil into a suitable receptacle.

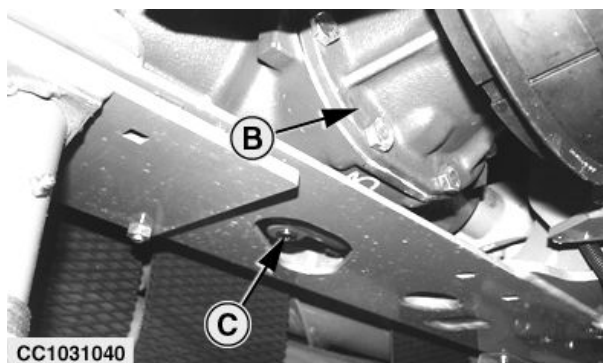
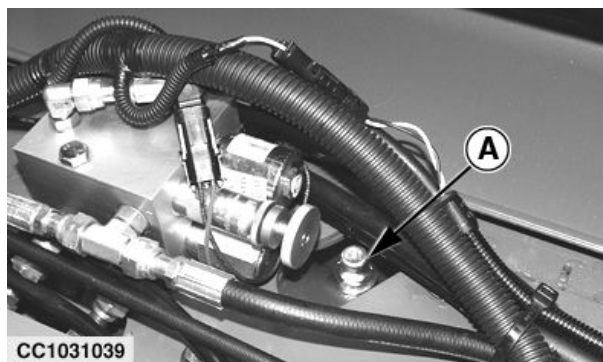
Clean then reinstall drain plug (C) and tighten to specified torque:

Specification	
Drain Plug—Torque.....	30 N·m (22.1 lb.-ft.)

Refill gear case (B) with John Deere HY-GARD high viscosity oil or equivalent. See High Viscosity Gear Case Oil in this section.

Specification	
Gear Case—Capacity.....	2.3 L (0.61 U.S. gal)

Check oil level with dipstick (A).



A—Dipstick
B—Gear Case

C—Drain Plug

OUCC006,00016C2 -19-19OCT10-1/1

CC1031039—UN—02OCT08

CC1031040—UN—02OCT08

Yearly - Check Wheel Nut Torque

Check wheel nut torque every year. See [Check Wheel Nut Torque](#) in Preparing the Baler section.

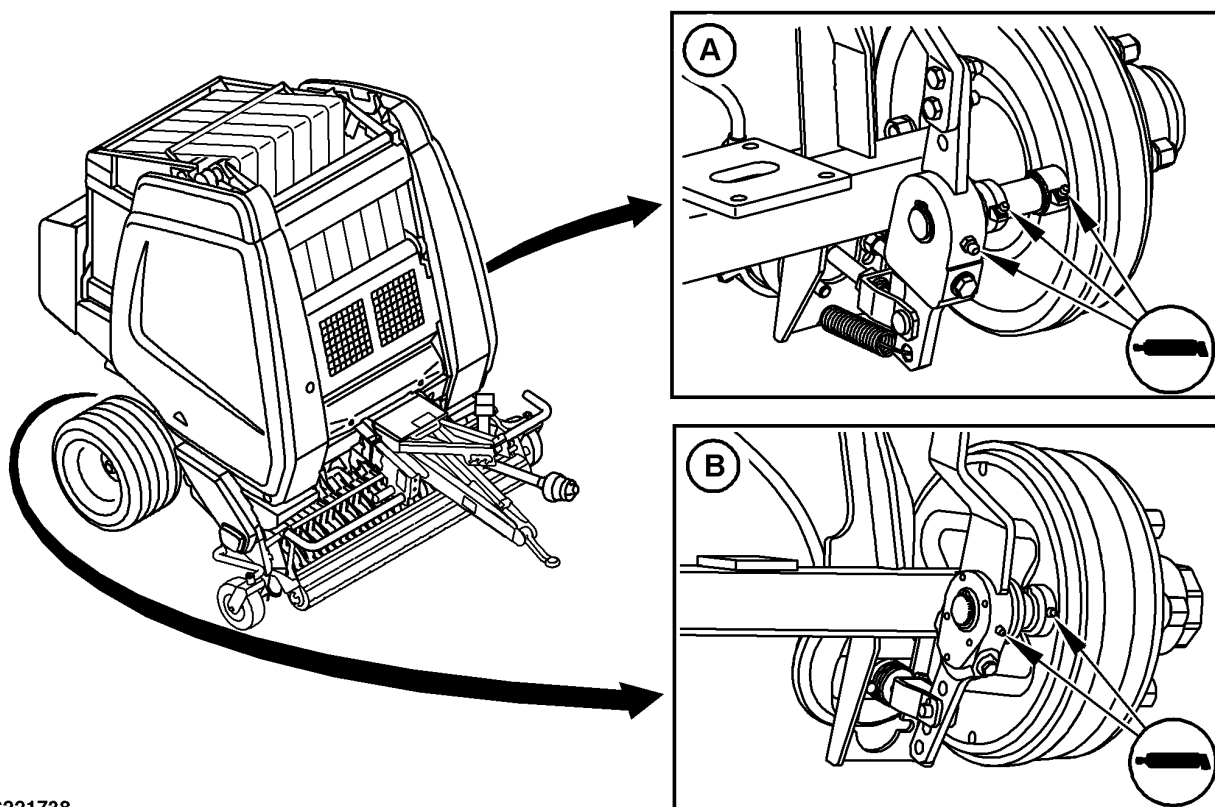


CC1035346

DC82261,000055A -19-31MAR15-1/1

CC1035346—UN—11OCT11

Yearly - Air Brake Shafts



CC221738

A—Version 1

B—Version 2

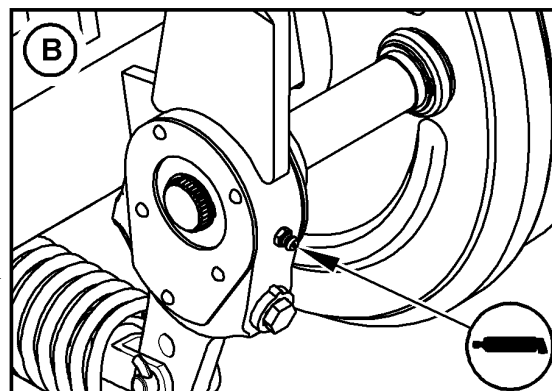
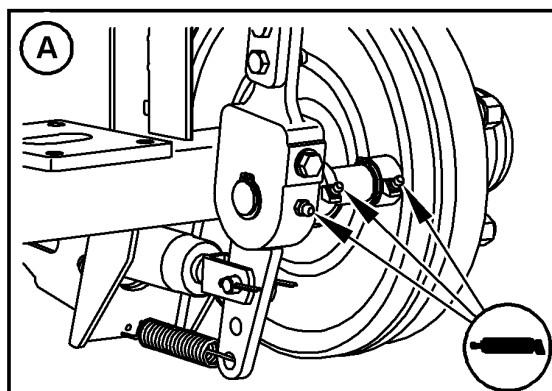
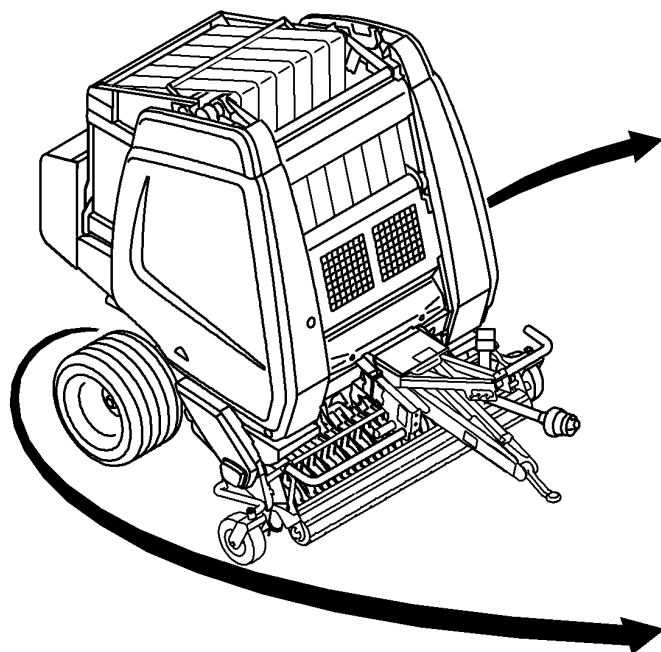
Lubricate with John Deere GREASE-GARD™ on both sides.

GREASE-GARD is a trademark of Deere & Company

CC221738 —UN—15OCT14

DC82261,000044C -19-15OCT14-1/1

Yearly - Hydraulic Brake Shafts



CC221739

A—Version 1

B—Version 2

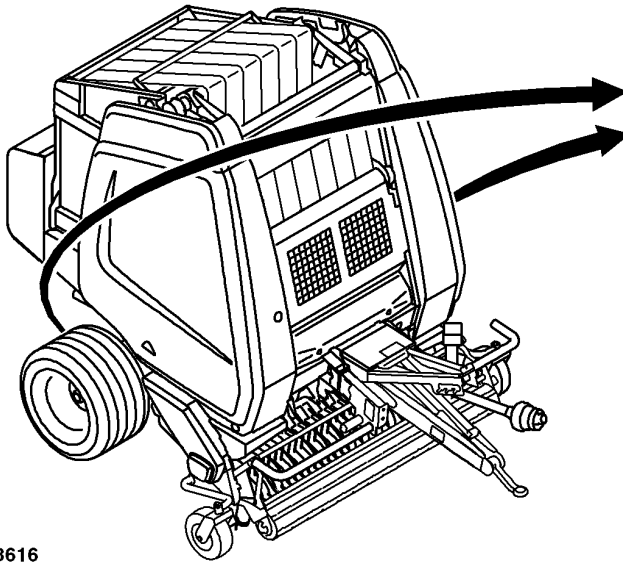
Lubricate with John Deere GREASE-GARD™ on both sides.

GREASE-GARD is a trademark of Deere & Company

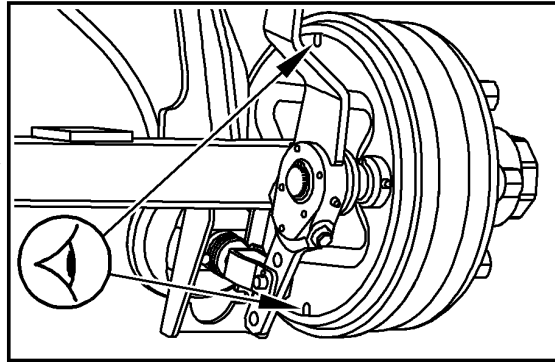
CC221739 —UN—15OCT14

DC82261,0000524 -19-15OCT14-1/1

Yearly - Air Brake Shoes (Baler from S.N. 120180)



CC208616



CC208616 —UN—11APR14

On both sides, check that thickness of brake linings is greater than the following specification:

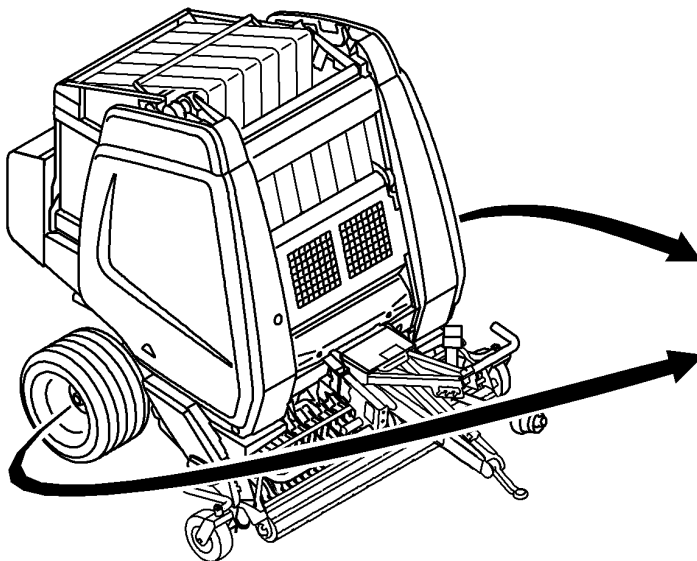
If not, see your John Deere dealer to replace brake shoes.

Specification

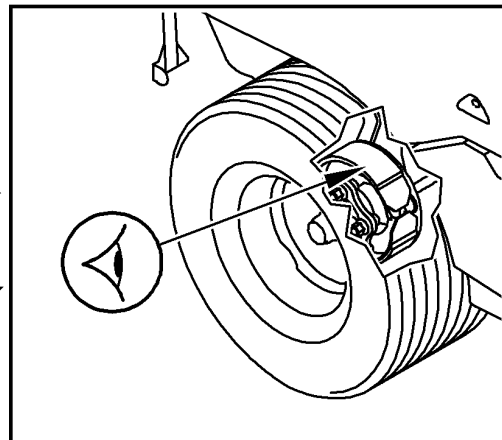
Brake Lining—Minimum
Thickness..... 2 mm
(0.08 in.)

DC82261,000044D -19-06OCT14-1/1

Yearly - Hydraulic Brake Shoes (Baler from S.N. 120180)



CC208617

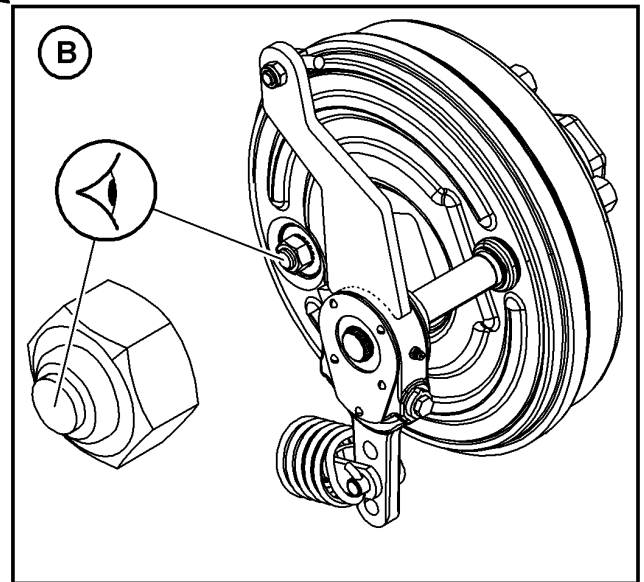
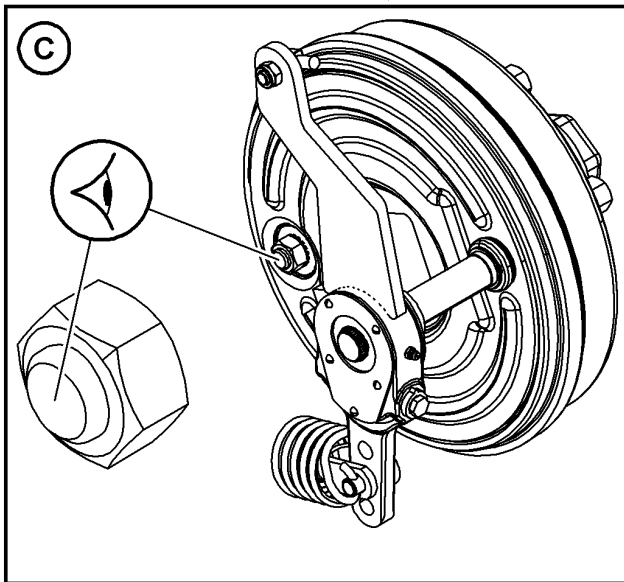
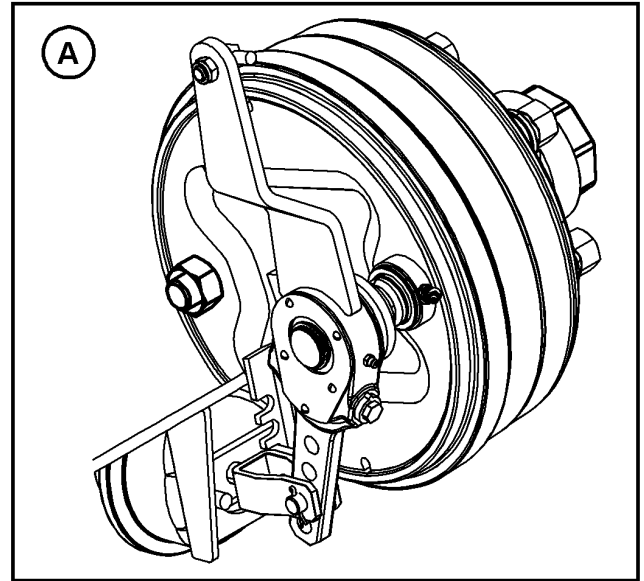
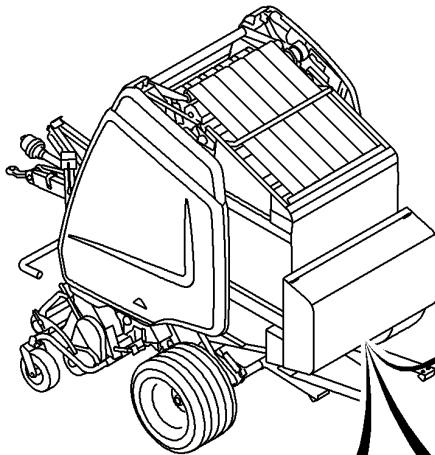


CC208617 —UN—11APR14

To check lining thickness of brakes, see your John Deere dealer.

DC82261,000044E -19-06OCT14-1/1

Yearly - Brake Pivot



CC221737

A—Axle with Air Brake
 B—Axle with Hydraulic Brake and with Shouldered Brake Pivot
 C—Axle with Hydraulic Brake and with No Shouldered Brake Pivot

Engage baler park brake, retighten nut of brake pivot on both sides to specified torque:

Specification	
Brake Pivot of Axle with Air Brake (A)—Torque.....	220—280 N·m (162—206 lb.-ft.)
Shouldered Brake Pivot of Axle with Hydraulic Brake (B)—Torque.....	350—390 N·m (258—288 lb.-ft.)

No Shouldered Brake Pivot of Axle with Hydraulic Brake (C)—Torque.....	115—145 N·m (85—107 lb.-ft.)
--	---------------------------------

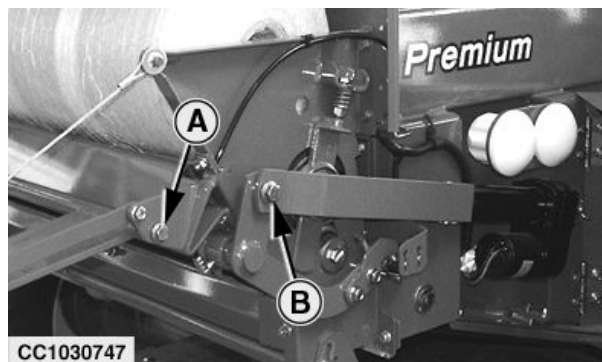
DC82261,0000523 -19-07OCT14-1/1

CC221737 —UN—07OCT14

Yearly - Net Tying

Lubricate with John Deere GREASE-GARD.

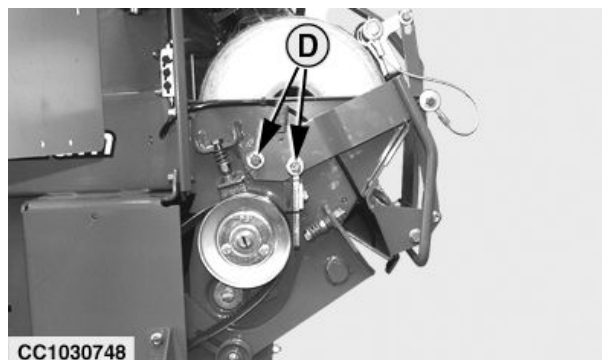
- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| A—Lower Tension Arm Pivot | C—Net Box Pivots (Both Sides) |
| B—Net Actuator Pins | D—Brake Pad Pivots |



CC1030747—UN—14OCT08



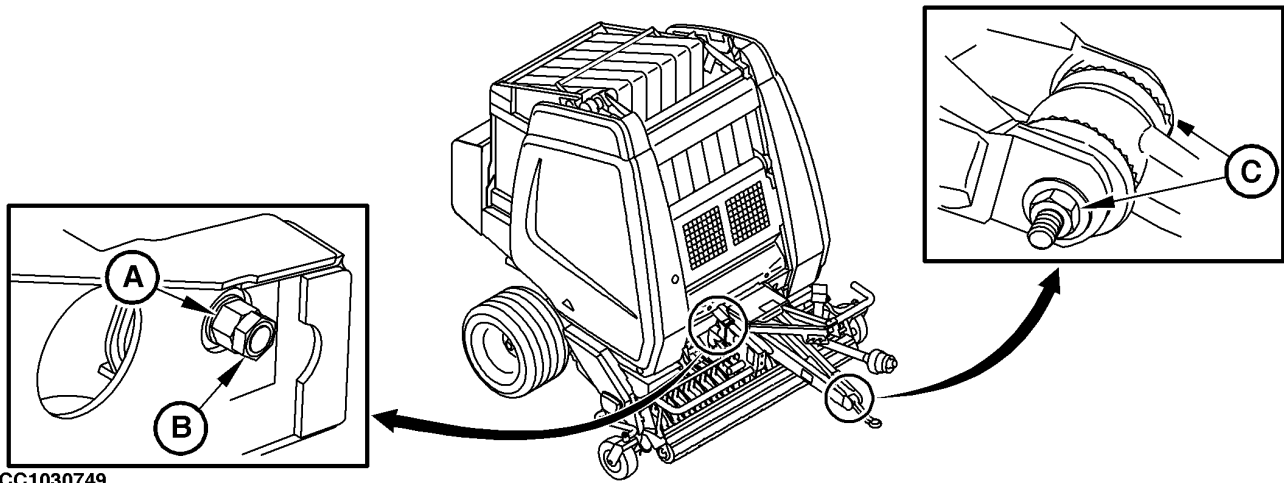
CC1027498—UN—11JUL05



CC1030748—UN—14OCT08

OUCC006,0001835 -19-04OCT11-1/1

Yearly - Tongue Frame and Hitch



CC1030749

A—Nut
B—Lock Nut

C—Hitch Fixing Screw

Retighten tongue frame fixing nuts (A), lock nuts (B) and hitch fixing screw (C) to specified torque:

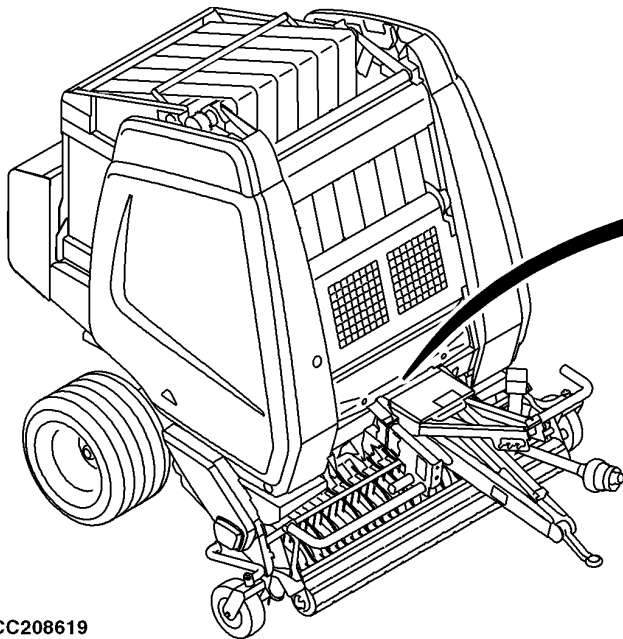
Specification	
Tongue Frame Fixing	
Nut—Torque.....	700 N·m (516 lb.-ft.)

Tongue Frame Lock	
Nut—Torque.....	300 N·m (221 lb.-ft.)
Hitch Fixing	
Screw—Torque.....	620 N·m (450 lb.-ft.)

OUCC006,0001834 -19-04OCT11-1/1

CC1030749 —UN—22OCT08

Yearly - Gear Case



CC208619

A—Screw

Retighten gear case screws (A) diagonally to the following specification:

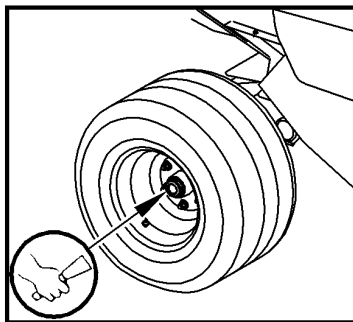
Specification

Gear Case	
Screw—Torque.....	115 N·m (85 lb.-ft.)

DC82261,000044F -19-07OCT14-1/1

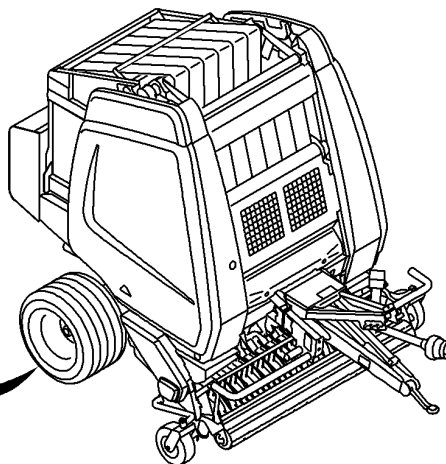
CC208619 —UN—09OCT14

Yearly - Axle Bearings



CC1030746

To check and lubricate the axle bearings, see your John Deere dealer.



CC1030746 —UN—22OCT08

DC82261,000053A -19-15OCT14-1/1

Every 3 Years - Accumulators

Always observe local regulations for accumulator service intervals.

Any service and maintenance on accumulators must be done by your John Deere dealer only. Have the accumulators visually checked at least every 3 years.



CC1022636

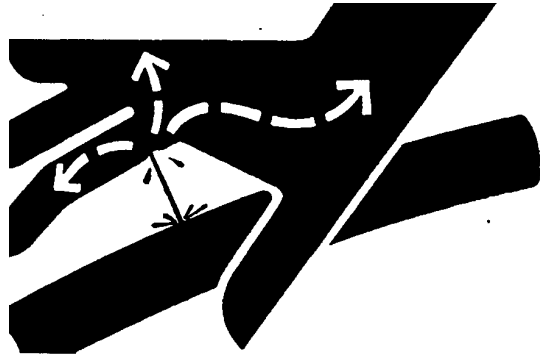
CC03745,0000FE9 -19-17NOV09-1/1

CC1022636 —UN—15JAN03

Every 6 Years - Hydraulic Hoses

Due to wear on hydraulic hoses over time, it is recommended to change hydraulic hoses every 6 years.

In some countries, regulations make this recommendation mandatory.



AP00976,000018D -19-14DEC10-1/1

X9811 —UN—23AUG88

Every 10 Years - Accumulators

Always observe local regulations for accumulator service intervals.

Any service and maintenance on accumulators must be done by your John Deere dealer only. Have a complete inspection with pressure check performed by your dealer every 10 years.



CC1022636

CC03745,0000522 -19-01SEP03-1/1

CC1022636 —UN—15JAN03

Troubleshooting

Twine Tying

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Twine too tight or twine breaks while tying.	Twine routing wrong.	Check for correct routing.
	Bad twine, knots in twine, new ball with tight core, wet twine.	Pull out bad twine or replace twine.
	Wrong twine tension plate pin or springs.	Replace with correct parts.
Twine too loose on bale.	Broken or missing twine tension spring.	Replace spring.
	Wrong tension spring pin.	Replace pin.
	Worn twine tension plates.	Replace worn parts.
Twine spacing not constant.	PTO rpm change during tying.	Keep PTO rpm constant.
No twine on bale or twine not caught by bale.	Twine from end of twine tube too short.	With tractor shut off, pull out twine until 300 mm (12 in.) is exposed from end of twine arm.
	Twine tension too high.	See Twine Too Tight or Twine Breaks While Tying.
	Twine not fed in with crop.	Do not stop forward travel of tractor. Allow a few seconds for twine to be fed in with crop.
	Baler out of twine.	Add twine. See Load Twine Boxes in Preparing the Baler section.
Twine too close to edge of bale.	On left-hand side: Missing or bent twine guide rod.	Replace or bend rod.
	On right-hand side: Support of twine arm actuator misadjusted.	Readjust.
	Barrel shaped bales.	Fill ends of bale by crowding windrow. See Feed the Material in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
Twine not cut.	PTO disengaged before twine is cut.	Look at twine to see that it has stopped moving before disengaging PTO.
	Twine cutter out of adjustment.	Adjust twine cutter. See Service section.
	Dull knife or uneven edge not making contact with anvil.	Sharpen or replace knife. See Service section.
	Knife not parallel to anvil.	Position knife pivot shaft so knife makes contact with anvil in area where twine is cut. See Service section.
	Obstruction causing twine not to be guided under knife.	Remove obstruction.

Continued on next page

OUC006,000153F -19-08JAN10-1/2

Troubleshooting

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Twine arm goes through cycle prematurely and ties small bale. Twine arm moves too slowly from left to right.	Bent twine guide rod.	Bend or replace.
	Binding in twine arm or cutter linkage.	Repair or replace so that linkage operates freely.
	Incorrect twine routing or bad ball of twine causing high twine tension.	Correct cause of high tension.
	Bale diameter adjusted for small bale diameter.	Readjust to desired bale diameter.
	Battery charge level too low.	Check battery charge (at least 20 A).
Twine arm does not move.	Binding in linkage.	Find cause of binding and correct.
	Wrong connection on electric cylinder.	Repair.
	Defective bale tying monitors.	Repair or replace as necessary.
	Malfunction of bale tying monitors.	Check battery charge (at least 20 A).
	Monitor defective.	Replace monitor.

OUCC006,000153F -19-08JAN10-2/2

Feed Difficulties

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Baler does not feed; hay plugged at feed opening.	Large windrows and/or ground speed too high.	Reduce windrow size and/or tractor ground speed.
	Missing pickup teeth.	Replace teeth.
	Gate opening while baling.	Repair leaking gate hydraulic cylinders.
		Adjust gate latch. See Service section.
		Check bale density adjustment. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Gate not closed.	Eject bale. Close gate.
	Bale density too high.	Decrease density or start with soft core (if equipped). See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
Baler does not bale short, dry, slick crops.	Incorrect belt routing.	Route belts properly. See Service section.
	Pickup shear bolt sheared.	Replace shear bolt. See Service section.
	PTO speed too high.	Reduce PTO speed and shift to higher gear.
	Bale density too high.	Decrease bale density. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Pickup too low.	Raise pickup. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
Baler does not feed cornstalks.	Windrow too light.	Rake heavier windrows. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Starter roll too high.	Lower starter roll. See your John Deere dealer.
	Pickup too high.	Lower pickup. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Windrows too large.	Rake smaller windrows. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Missing or broken pickup teeth.	Replace teeth.

OUC006,0001540 -19-28MAY09-1/1

Pickup Difficulties

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Pickup teeth do not revolve.	Pickup drive chain broken.	Replace chain.
	Pickup shear bolt sheared.	Replace shear bolt. See Service section.
	Broken cam.	Replace cam.
Pickup does not float or drop freely.	Excess or insufficient float assist.	Adjust float springs. See your John Deere dealer.
	Binding at pivots.	Remove chaff and dirt. Make clearance between sliding parts.
Not picking up hay cleanly.	Pickup teeth set too high.	Lower pickup. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Pickup stays up.	Loosen float springs. See your John Deere dealer.
	Ground speed too high.	Reduce ground speed.
	Windrows too light.	Rake heavier windrows. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Pickup teeth bent or broken.	Straighten or replace teeth.
Pickup teeth digging in ground.	Pickup set too low.	Raise pickup. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Poor pickup floatation.	Tighten float springs and/or check pivots. See your John Deere dealer.
Pickup tooth breakage.	Pickup set too low.	Raise pickup. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Foreign material inside and/or broken teeth.	Remove material and/or replace teeth.
	Baling cornstalks.	Raise pickup. Higher tooth breakage can be expected. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
Plugging at flares.	Over-crowding ends.	Reduce crowding.
	Pickup set too low.	Raise pickup. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Tractor tires crushing crop into stubble.	Increase wheel tread. See your tractor operator's manual.

Continued on next page

OUC006,0001A3A -19-12FEB13-1/2

Troubleshooting

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Plugging at rotary feeder.	Ground speed too high.	Reduce ground speed. To unplug rotary feeder, see <u>Unplug Baler</u> in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
Inside of strippers worn.	Strippers bent up hitting tooth coils.	Check for binding at flares. Raise pickup. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section. Increase float. See your John Deere dealer.

OUC006,0001A3A -19-12FEB13-2/2

Bale Quality

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Barrel or cone shaped bales. Monitor shows a well shaped bale.	Bale shape potentiometer out of adjustment.	Calibrate the bale shape potentiometer. See Baler Application Service section.
	Outer belts not of the same length.	Shorten belts to the same length within 38 mm (1-1/2 in.). See Service section.
	Broken belt roller arm spring.	Replace spring.
Twine or net tying settings not constant with different sized bales.	Baler rotation speed sensor not connected, defective, deactivated or not correctly adjusted.	Reconnect or readjust sensor. Replace if necessary. See Baler Application Service and Service sections.
	Bale diameter potentiometer not connected or defective.	Reconnect or replace potentiometer. See Baler Application Service and Service sections.
Baler does not make dense bales.	Internal leak in belt tension hydraulic cylinder.	See your John Deere dealer.
	Dirty or defective relief valve.	See your John Deere dealer.
	Bale ends not filled tightly.	Crowd more crop in ends of baler. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Density control adjusted for light bales.	Adjust for heavier bales. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Bale forming belts too short.	Check length and correct. See Service section.
Peripheral density of bale insufficient.	Brake force out of adjustment.	Increase net tying stretch, see Adjust Net Tying Stretch in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Rubber brake worn.	Replace rubber brake.
Baler will not make full size bale.	Bale diameter not adjusted to desired bale diameter.	Adjust bale diameter. See Operating Baler Application section.
	Bale forming belts are too short.	Increase belt length to recommended length. See Service section.
Desired bale diameter can not be achieved.	Bale diameter potentiometer not correctly calibrated.	Calibrate bale diameter potentiometer. See Baler Application Service section.

DC82261,0000571 -19-03APR15-1/1

General Baler Difficulties

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Gate opens while baling.	Gate not latched.	When closing gate, hold selective control valve lever of tractor a few seconds after the gate is closed.
Gate not latched.	Obstruction between gate and frame.	Remove obstruction.
	Crop buildup on belts in some crop conditions.	Remove buildup. Operate PTO while closing gate.
	Too much clearance between latch hooks and shim pad.	Adjust gate latch stop. See Service section.
Bale density gauge reading in red.	Selective control valve lever of tractor not in neutral position.	Move lever to neutral position.
	Bale density gauge defective.	Replace gauge. See your John Deere dealer.
	Bale density valve defective.	Replace or repair valve. See your John Deere dealer.
Belts do not track properly.	Lower rear gate roll out of adjustment.	Adjust roll. See Service section.
	Belts not routed correctly.	See Route Belts Through the Baler in Service section.
	Twine or mud buildup on baler rolls.	Remove buildup.
	Belts not cut square when splicing.	Resplice relevant belt. See Service section.
Bale forming belts rubbing.	Belt tension arm not fully down.	Lower tension arm with tractor selective control valve lever.
	Belts not routed properly.	See Route Belts Through the Baler in Service section.
Starter roll wraps with hay.	Scraper not adjusted.	Adjust scraper. See Service section.
Bale sticks in chamber.	New baler.	Reduce density until baler has made several bales to polish side sheets.
	Gate deflectors not installed.	Install gate deflectors.
	Bale density too high.	Lower bale density at control valve. See Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
Bale density control knob hard to turn.	Locking ring locked against valve body.	Unscrew locking ring before adjusting density control knob.

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000590 -19-03APR15-1/2

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Belt lacing failure.	Dry threads on adjusting screw.	Apply a few drops of oil or dry graphite lubricant on the threads.
	Raised gate and/or belt tension arm create additional turning force.	Adjust with gate closed and belt tension arm down.
	Belts are not the same length.	Belts must be the same length within 38 mm (1-1/2 in.). See Service section.
	Improper belt splice hooks or poor quality splice.	See <u>Repair Belts</u> in Service section.
Belts slipping or not turning.	Crop accumulation on rolls or belt guides.	Remove crop accumulation.
	Belt tension arm not returning all the way to tension belts.	Check to see that tension arm tightens belts.
	Belts too long.	Cut belts to proper length. See Service section.
	Material accumulation between the belts.	Set the center tension arm roll position according to the crop type. See <u>Set Center Tension Arm Roll Position (No. 12)</u> in Service section.
Damage to belt diamond patterns.	Wet conditions.	Install upper roll drive kit. See Attachments section.
	Material buildup on compressor rack causing belts to contact starter roll.	See <u>Operate the Baler in Short, Dry, Slick Crops</u> and <u>Operate the Baler in Silage and Damp Crops</u> in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
Oversize alarm at smaller bale diameter than the maximum.	Oversize switch or sensor not correctly adjusted.	Adjust oversize switch or sensor. See Service section.
Soft core solenoid is not power supplied.	Tractor PTO driveline is disengaged.	Engage tractor PTO driveline.
Excessive tractor power requirements during operation with precutter knives engaged.	Precutter knives are worn.	Sharpen or replace precutter knives. See <u>Sharpen Precutter Knives</u> in Service section.

DC82261,0000590 -19-03APR15-2/2

Silage Equipment Difficulties

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Crop accumulation at starter roll.	Scraper too far from starter roll.	Adjust scraper. See Service section.
Belt(s) slipping.	Too heavy silage bales.	Reduce bale diameter to 1.2 to 1.3 m (3 ft. 11 in. to 4 ft. 3 in.) and bale weight to 600 kg (1320 lb.).
	Wet conditions.	Install upper roll drive kit. See Attachments section.
Difficulties when starting a bale (wet crop due to rain).	Core does not start to turn.	Discharge the core and start to bale at the lowest rpm until the core starts turning. See Operate the Baler in Silage and Damp Crops in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section. Bale when dry matter content is 40 %.
Plugging the baler by feeding a too large bunch of silage.	Irregular windrows.	Re-engage PTO at lowest engine rpm. If unsuccessful, lower the drop floor and retract precutter knives. See Unplug Baler in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.

OUCC006,00015B0 -19-20NOV09-1/1

Net Tying Equipment Difficulties

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Bale not tied (with slow intermittent beep).	Net drive belt too short.	Replace drive belt. See <u>Remove And Install Net Feed Roll Drive Belt</u> in Service section.
	Lower net guide not in contact with belts.	See <u>Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 8)</u> in Service section.
	Burrs on lower net guide channels.	Remove burrs.
	Net roll empty.	Install a new net roll.
	Net drive rolls not engaged.	Check or replace drive belt. See <u>Check Net Tying Device</u> in Service section. Check belt tension when cycle starts. See <u>Check Drive Belt Tension (Test 5)</u> in Service section. Check that net roll diameter is not greater than 320 mm (12-1/2 in.).
	Net rolled up around rubber roll.	Shut off tractor PTO. Open the net cover and release net feed roll brake. Unroll net by pulling on it. Never attempt to cut net with a knife against rubber roll.
	Net rolled up around rubber roll after the first bale of the day.	Disengage net from net feed rolls if baler must stand over night or more than 10 hours without operation.
	Net drive roll pressure too high or too low.	Adjust net feed roll pressure. See Service section.
	Net not engaged properly (new roll).	Restart net installation. See Preparing the Baler section.
	Rubber roll damaged or sticky.	Change rubber roll, clean it and apply talc to roll.
Bale not tied (with four quick intermittent beeps).	Net sticky from packaging.	Cut off sticky area.
	Net around starter roll of baler.	Remove burrs on starter roll.
	Net around rotary feeder (in straw).	Reinstall roll No. 2 fingers, if removed.
	Net around sticky rolls of baler.	Clean the relevant rolls and adjust scrapers. See Service section.
	Belt lacing aggressive.	Change relevant belt lacing.

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000570 -19-03APR15-1/3

Troubleshooting

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Bale tied (with slow intermittent beep).	Net switch or sensor defective, bent or not correctly adjusted.	Check and/or replace switch or sensor. See Service section.
	Spring missing on switch or sensor actuating stud.	Replace spring.
Net torn.	Brake force out of adjustment.	Decrease net tying stretch, see Adjust Net Tying Stretch in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
Net not tight enough.	Brake force out of adjustment.	Increase net tying stretch, see Adjust Net Tying Stretch in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
	Rubber brake worn.	Replace rubber brake.
Net around the bale, but lacerated or net stays behind pickup.	Net lower guide deformed.	Check guide at the level of lower gate roll No. 9. See Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 8) in Service section.
	Net feed roll brake not correctly adjusted.	Adjust net feed roll brake. See Check Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6) in Service section.
	Belt lacing aggressive.	Change relevant belt lacing.
	Welding spots or marks on starter roll.	Remove spots and marks.
	Too hard contact between lower net guide and belts.	Correct contact. See Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 8) in Service section.
Bale not uniformly tied or not tied.	Plugging between lower net guide and gate roll No. 8. See Baler Roll Numbering in Service section.	Clean this area.
	Guide of gate roll No. 9 bent.	See Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 8) in Service section.
	Net feed roll brake not correctly adjusted.	Adjust net feed roll brake. See Check Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6) in Service section.
	Lower net guide panel not in contact with belts.	Correct contact. See Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 8) in Service section.
	Net drive belt too long.	Replace drive belt. See Remove And Install Net Feed Roll Drive Belt in Service section.
	Net tying cover not closed.	Cover must be closed and latched for best results.

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000570 -19-03APR15-2/3

Troubleshooting

Symptom	Problem	Solution
Net loose around bale.	Net roll is installed backwards in box.	Install net roll correctly. See Preparing the Baler section.
	Net tying cover gas spring(s) weak.	Check springs on both sides of the net tying cover. Replace if necessary.
	Too many turns applied.	Normally no more than three turns are needed. Excess wraps may appear to be loose.
	Weak gas spring(s).	Check spring(s) for proper force.
Net not cut.	Specified net quality not used.	Use recommended net quality.
	Electrical components defective.	Check and/or replace parts.
	Dull knife.	Sharpen knife. See Service section.
	Net feed roll brake not correctly adjusted.	Adjust net feed roll brake. See <u>Check Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6)</u> in Service section.
Net not tight around bale.	Counterknife not all across the width in contact with net knife.	Reinstall correctly. See <u>Check Knife and Counterknife Position (Test 1)</u> in Service section.
	Net knife not parallel.	Reinstall correctly.
	Net drive belt too long.	Replace drive belt. See <u>Remove And Install Net Feed Roll Drive Belt</u> in Service section.
Cover does not stay open.	Weak gas spring(s).	Replace gas spring(s).

DC82261,0000570 -19-03APR15-3/3

Chain Oiling System

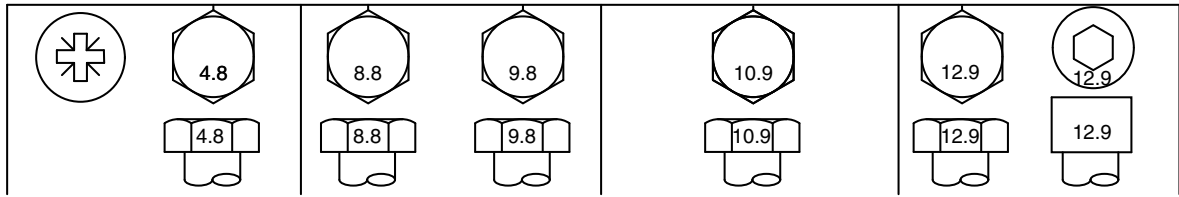
Symptom	Problem	Solution
Oil consumption too high.	Main line interrupted.	Repair or replace.
	Oil too light.	Use a type of oil specified in Lubrication and Maintenance section. Reduce oil flow. See Adjust Oil Flow in Lubrication and Maintenance section.
Oil consumption too low.	Oil too heavy.	Use a type of oil specified in Lubrication and Maintenance section. Increase oil flow. See Adjust Oil Flow in Lubrication and Maintenance section.
	Pump not correctly driven.	Machine running, check rotation of the pump by removing pump cover. If pump is not driven, replace connecting tube. Repair, adjust or replace pump.
Machine dry.	Pump inoperative resulting in no pressure.	Repair, adjust or replace.
	Main line interrupted.	Repair or replace.
	No oil in system.	Refill as necessary with specified oil. See Lubricating and Maintenance section.
	Air lock or pump empty.	Bleed pump.
	Heavy contamination resulting in blocked system.	Clean system and replace all metering valves.
	Line trapped.	Repair line.

DC82261,0000572 -19-07APR15-1/1

Service

Metric Bolt and Screw Torque Values

TS1670 —UN—01MAY03



Bolt or Screw Size	Class 4.8				Class 8.8 or 9.8				Class 10.9				Class 12.9			
	Lubricated ^a		Dry ^b		Lubricated ^a		Dry ^b		Lubricated ^a		Dry ^b		Lubricated ^a		Dry ^b	
	N·m	lb.-in.	N·m	lb.-in.	N·m	lb.-in.	N·m	lb.-in.	N·m	lb.-in.	N·m	lb.-in.	N·m	lb.-in.	N·m	lb.-in.
M6	4.7	42	6	53	8.9	79	11.3	100	13	115	16.5	146	15.5	137	19.5	172
									N·m	lb.-ft.	N·m	lb.-ft.	N·m	lb.-ft.	N·m	lb.-ft.
M8	11.5	102	14.5	128	22	194	27.5	243	32	23.5	40	29.5	37	27.5	47	35
			N·m	lb.-ft.	N·m	lb.-ft.	N·m	lb.-ft.								
M10	23	204	29	21	43	32	55	40	63	46	80	59	75	55	95	70
	N·m	lb.-ft.														
M12	40	29.5	50	37	75	55	95	70	110	80	140	105	130	95	165	120
M14	63	46	80	59	120	88	150	110	175	130	220	165	205	150	260	190
M16	100	74	125	92	190	140	240	175	275	200	350	255	320	235	400	300
M18	135	100	170	125	265	195	330	245	375	275	475	350	440	325	560	410
M20	190	140	245	180	375	275	475	350	530	390	675	500	625	460	790	580
M22	265	195	330	245	510	375	650	480	725	535	920	680	850	625	1080	800
M24	330	245	425	315	650	480	820	600	920	680	1150	850	1080	800	1350	1000
M27	490	360	625	460	950	700	1200	885	1350	1000	1700	1250	1580	1160	2000	1475
M30	660	490	850	625	1290	950	1630	1200	1850	1350	2300	1700	2140	1580	2700	2000
M33	900	665	1150	850	1750	1300	2200	1625	2500	1850	3150	2325	2900	2150	3700	2730
M36	1150	850	1450	1075	2250	1650	2850	2100	3200	2350	4050	3000	3750	2770	4750	3500

Torque values listed are for general use only, based on the strength of the bolt or screw. DO NOT use these values if a different torque value or tightening procedure is given for a specific application. For stainless steel fasteners or for nuts on U-bolts, see the tightening instructions for the specific application. Tighten plastic insert or crimped steel type lock nuts by turning the nut to the dry torque shown in the chart, unless different instructions are given for the specific application.

Shear bolts are designed to fail under predetermined loads. Always replace shear bolts with identical property class. Replace fasteners with the same or higher property class. If higher property class fasteners are used, tighten these to the strength of the original. Make sure fastener threads are clean and that you properly start thread engagement. When possible, lubricate plain or zinc plated fasteners other than lock nuts, wheel bolts or wheel nuts, unless different instructions are given for the specific application.

^a"Lubricated" means coated with a lubricant such as engine oil, fasteners with phosphate and oil coatings, or M20 and larger fasteners with JDM F13C, F13F or F13J zinc flake coating.

^b"Dry" means plain or zinc plated without any lubrication, or M6 to M18 fasteners with JDM F13B, F13E or F13H zinc flake coating.

DX.TORQ2 -19-12JAN11-1/1

Before Each Service

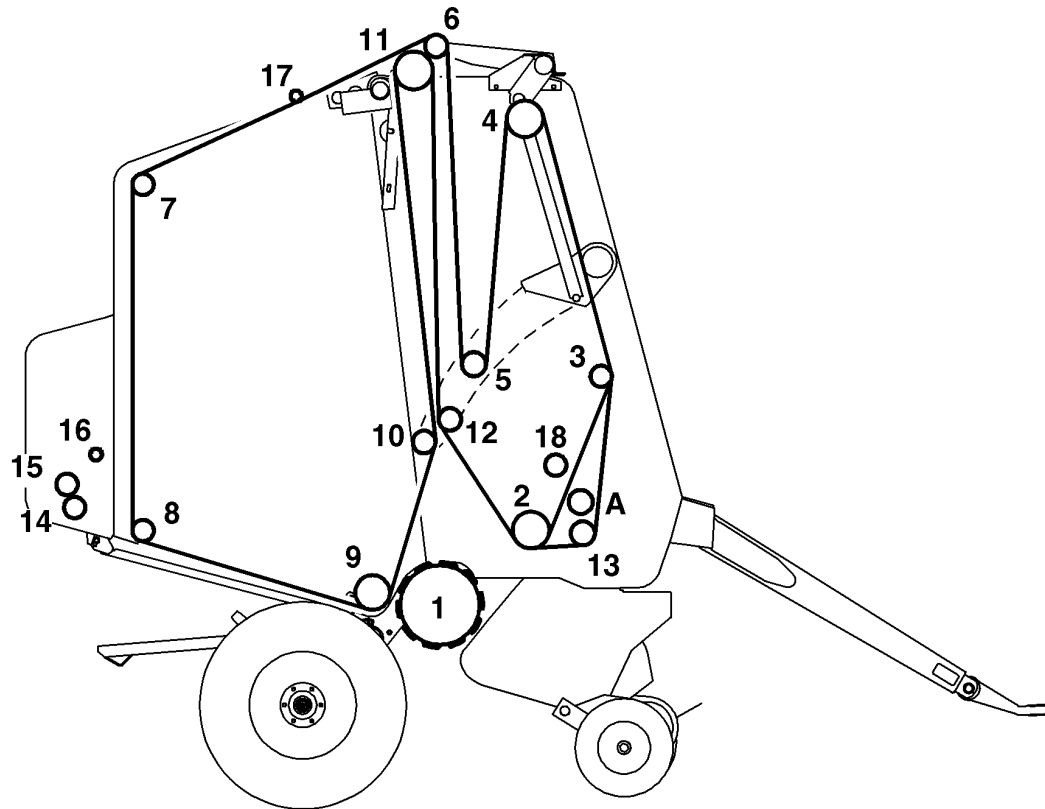
Follow these guidelines if the use of welder, cutting torch or grinder is required for service work:

1. Park baler on pavement or bare ground.
2. Remove chaff to avoid exposure of flammable material to sparks; if chaff cannot be removed, soak it thoroughly with water before starting. Protect hoses and belts from exposure to sparks, arcs, or flames.

3. Have the pressurized water tank or other source of extinguishing agent ready for immediate use.
4. Use an assistant to check for fire while welding, cutting, or grinding.
5. After welding, cutting or grinding allow parts to cool down before starting to bale. Verify that no fire has started before leaving service area.

DC82261,00004F7 -19-12SEP14-1/1

Baler Roll Numbering



CC1030884

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1— Starter roll | 6— Top arm roll | 11— Top idler roll | 16— Net guide roll |
| 2— Lower belt drive roll | 7— Upper rear gate roll | 12— Center tension arm idler roll | 17— Upper rear gate idler roll |
| 3— Front idler roll | 8— Lower rear gate roll | 13— Belt staggering roll | 18— Bale holding roll |
| 4— Upper belt drive roll | 9— Lower gate roll | 14— Galvanized net feed roll | A—Cleaning auger |
| 5— Front tension arm idler roll | 10— Rear tension arm idler roll | 15— Rubber net feed roll | |

NOTE: Numbers shown above must not be used when ordering roll replacement parts. Always refer to relevant parts catalog.

OUC006,0001420 -19-23JUN08-1/1

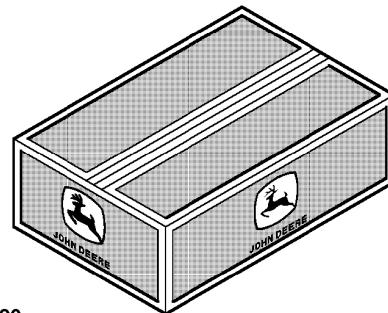
CC1030884 —JUN—24SEP08

Use Genuine John Deere Parts

Genuine John Deere parts have been specifically designed for John Deere machines.

Other parts are neither examined nor released by John Deere. Installation and use of such products could have negative effects upon the design characteristics of the machine and thereby affect its safety.

Avoid this risk by using only genuine John Deere parts.



CC1020723

CC03745,0000FD5 -19-18SEP09-1/1

CC1020723 —JUN—25OCT01

Charge Pressurized Water Tank

NOTE: Pressurized water tank is shipped uncharged. Prior to delivery of machine pressurized water tank must be charged.

When an antifreeze charge is used to freeze protect the pressurized water tank, a complete discharge and maintenance is required.

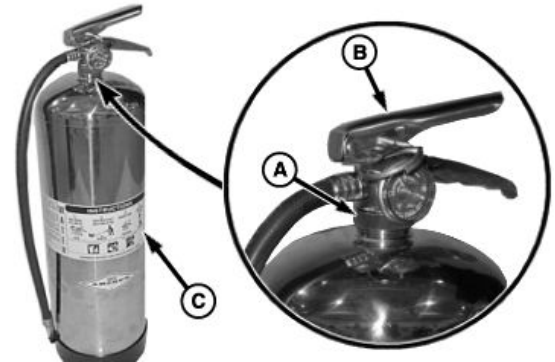
CAUTION: Before attempting to recharge ensure that pressurized water tank is completely depressurized.

1. Discharge all remaining pressure and water (or antifreeze solution) making sure that there is no remaining air pressure.
2. Loosen nut (A) and remove valve assembly (B) from cylinder (C).

IMPORTANT: Pressurized water tank must not be exposed to freezing temperatures unless protected with antifreeze.

NOTE: Corrosion inhibitor must be used, if water includes high levels of chlorides (40 ppm).

3. Fill cylinder with 9.5 L (2.5 gal.) of clean water or antifreeze solution.



A—Nut
B—Valve Assembly

C—Cylinder

NOTE: Fluid level will be approximately 15 cm (6 in.) below the top of the cylinder.

4. Check that the seal is not damaged, if necessary replace the seal.
5. Place the seal in nut (A) of the valve assembly (B).

Continued on next page

DC82261,00004DE -19-20AUG14-1/3

H92727 —UN—10SEP08

⚠ CAUTION: Hand tighten nut to specification. Over tightening with wrench will damage valve.

6. Install valve assembly (A) and tighten nut (B) to specification.

Specification	
Nut—Torque.....	11.3—11.9 N·m (100—105 lb-in)

7. Remove cap from pressurizing valve (C).

NOTE: Set pressure regulator on air compressor to no more than 175 kPa (1.75 bar, 25 psi) higher than gauge operating pressure.

⚠ CAUTION: Never leave pressurized water tank connected to a regulator of a high-pressure source for an extended period of time. Do not over pressurize the pressurized water tank. Pressurized water tank may rupture if over pressurized.

8. Pressurize the pressurized water tank to specification using air or nitrogen.

Specification	
Pressurized Water Tank—Pressure.....	690 kPa 6.9 bar (100 psi)



A—Valve Assembly
B—Nut

C—Pressurizing Valve

NOTE: Check nut, gauge, pressurizing valve, cylinder welds, and valve orifice for leaks using leak detection fluid or a solution of soapy water.

9. Install previously removed cap on pressurizing valve.

DC82261,00004DE -19-20AUG14-2/3

10. Install pin (A) with ring facing towards front of pressurized water tank and install tamper seal.

11. Install hose and nozzle assembly (B) in holder (C).

12. Install pressurized water tank on machine.

A—Pin
B—Hose and Nozzle Assembly
C—Holder



DC82261,00004DE -19-20AUG14-3/3

Adjust Pickup Drive Chains

To ensure that all slack is removed from chain, close gate and engage PTO for a few seconds. Shut off tractor engine.

Adjust tension of pickup drive chains as follows:

Pickup drive chain:

1. Loosen both idler support fixing nuts (A).
2. Press idler support (B) against chain so that chain deflection on strand opposite idler is within specification.

Specification

Pickup Drive
Chain—Deflection..... 10 mm
(0.39 in.)

3. Tighten fixing nuts (A).

NOTE: Intermediate drive chain (C) tension does not require adjustment.

4. Engage PTO for a few seconds.
5. Check deflection of the chain. Repeat adjustments if necessary.

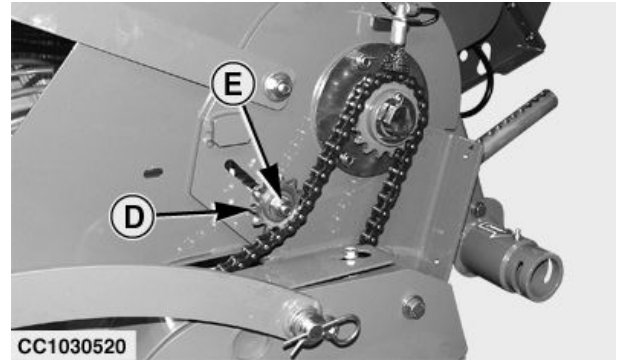
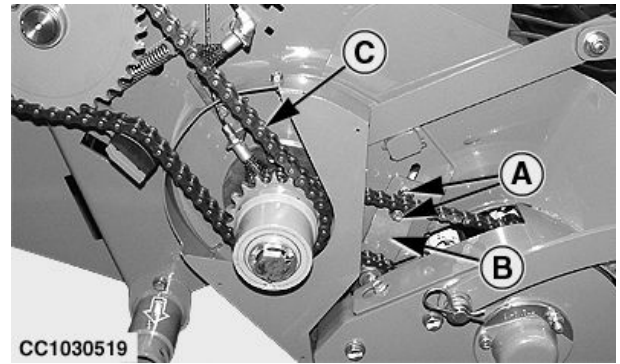
Left-hand auger drive chain:

1. Loosen sprocket idler support fixing nut (E).
2. Press sprocket idler (D) against chain so that chain deflection to the opposite strand of idler is within specification.

Specification

Left-Hand Auger Drive
Chain—Deflection..... 10 mm
(0.39 in.)

3. Tighten fixing nut (E).



A—Fixing Nuts
B—Idler Support
C—Intermediate Drive Chain

D—Sprocket Idler
E—Fixing Nut

4. Engage PTO for a few seconds.
5. Check deflection of the chain. Repeat adjustments if necessary.

OUC006,00015A8 -19-30NOV09-1/1

Adjust Bottom Roll Drive Chain

To ensure that all slack is removed from chain, close gate and engage PTO for a few seconds. Shut off tractor engine.

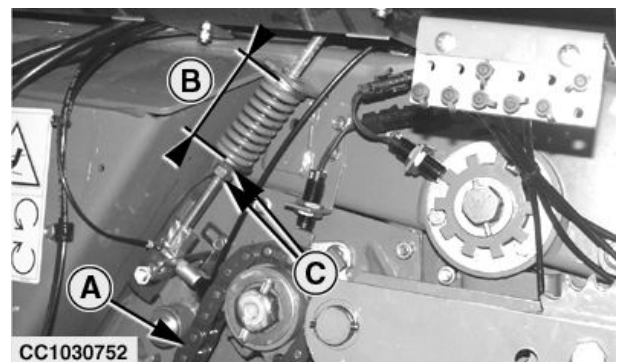
Adjust tension of bottom roll drive chain (A) as follows:

1. Check that spring length (B) is within specifications.

Specification

Spring—Length..... 95 mm
(3.74 in.)

2. If necessary, adjust spring length (B) with eyebolt nuts (C).
3. Engage PTO for a few seconds.
4. Check adjustment. Repeat adjustment if necessary.



A—Bottom roll drive chain
B—Length

C—Nuts

OUC006,0001401 -19-05NOV08-1/1

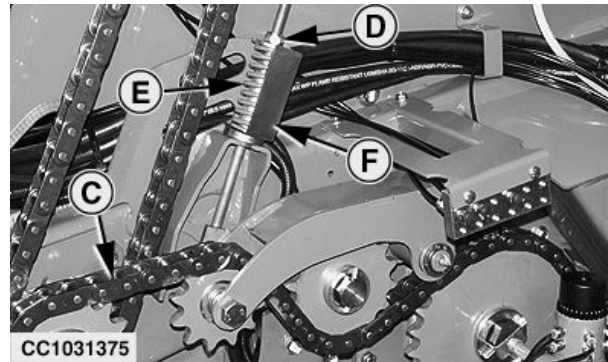
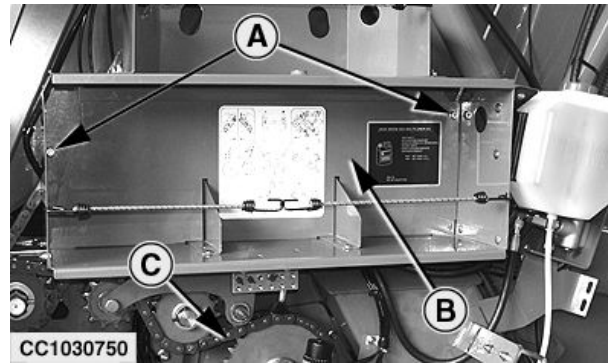
Adjust Main Drive Chain

To ensure that all slack is removed from chain, close gate and engage PTO for a few seconds. Shut off tractor engine.

Adjust tension of main drive chain (C) as follows:

1. Loosen fixing nuts (A) and remove shield (B) (baler with twine tying only).
2. Adjust tension of main drive chain (C) by means of the eyebolt nut (D) so that length of spring (E) and strap (F) are the same.
3. Engage PTO for a few seconds.
4. Check adjustment. Repeat adjustment if necessary.

A—Fixing nuts	D—Nut
B—Shield	E—Spring
C—Main drive chain	F—Strap



CC1030750—UN—06NOV08

CC1031375—UN—30MAR09

CC03745,0000F9D -19-11MAY09-1/1

Adjust Upper Drive Roll Chain

To ensure that all slack is removed from chain, close gate and engage PTO for a few seconds. Shut off tractor engine.

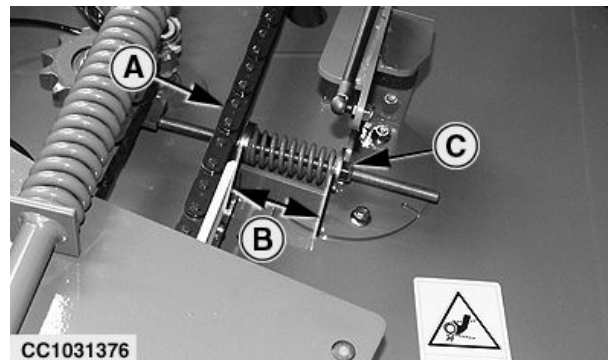
Adjust tension of upper roll drive chain (A) as follows:

1. Check that spring length (B) is within specifications.

Specification

Spring—Length..... 95 mm
(3.74 in.)

2. If necessary, adjust spring length (B) with eyebolt nut (C).
3. Engage PTO for a few seconds.
4. Check adjustment. Repeat adjustment if necessary.



A—Upper Drive Roll Chain	C—Nut
B—Length	

CC1031376—UN—30MAR09

OUCC006,0001576 -19-16SEP09-1/1

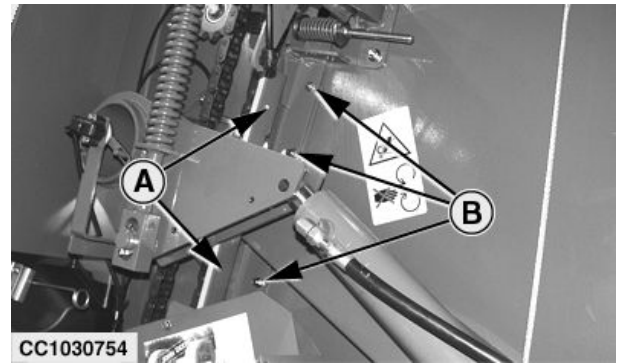
Adjust Upper Drive Roll Chain Guide

To ensure that all slack is removed from chain, close gate and engage PTO for a few seconds. Shut off tractor engine.

1. Loosen guide fixing nuts (B).
2. Slide the chain guide (A) so that it is in contact with the upper drive roll chain.
3. Tighten guide fixing nuts (B).

A—Chain Guide

B—Fixing Nuts



CC1030754 —UN—14OCT08

OUCC006,0001577 -19-16SEP09-1/1

Adjust Rotary Feeder Drive Chain

To ensure that all slack is removed from chain, close gate and engage PTO for a few seconds. Shut off tractor engine.

Adjust tension of rotary feeder drive chain by using holes (A) and (B), so that chain deflection on strand opposite idler is within specification.

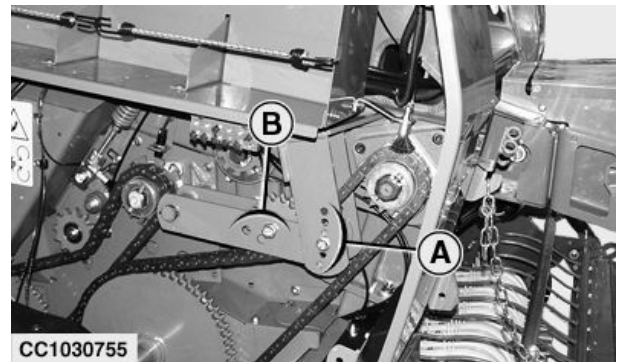
Specification

Rotary Feeder Drive

Chain—Deflection..... 10 mm
(0.39 in.)

Engage PTO for a few seconds.

Check the chain deflection. Repeat adjustment if necessary.



A—Adjusting holes

B—Adjusting holes

CC1030755 —UN—01OCT08

OUCC006,0001405 -19-26NOV08-1/1

Adjust Top Idler Roll Drive Chain

To ensure that all slack is removed from chain, close gate and engage PTO for a few seconds. Shut off tractor engine.

Adjust tension of main drive chain (A) as follows:

1. Loosen idler lock nut (B).
2. Press sprocket idler (C) against chain so that chain deflection to (D) is about:

Specification

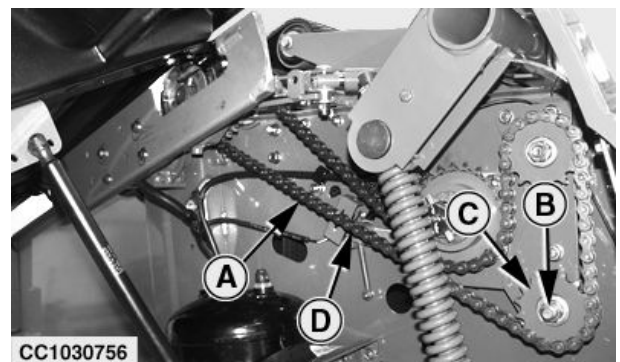
Top Idler Roll Drive

Chain—Deflection..... 20 mm
(0.8 in.)

3. Tighten idler lock nut (B).

If idler touches the end of slot before chain (A) is tightened, remove one link from drive chain.

4. Engage PTO for a few seconds.



A—Main Drive Chain
B—Idler Lock Nut

C—Sprocket Idler
D—Position

CC1030756 —UN—14OCT08

5. Check chain deflection. Repeat adjustment if necessary.

OUCC006,0001578 -19-11JAN10-1/1

Replace Precutter Knives

CAUTION: DO NOT TAKE CHANCES. To avoid injury or death by being cut by a knife, always close shut-off valves (A) and (C) before removing or replacing knives.

Always wear gloves to handle knives.

NOTE: Each knife (D) can be separately removed and replaced.

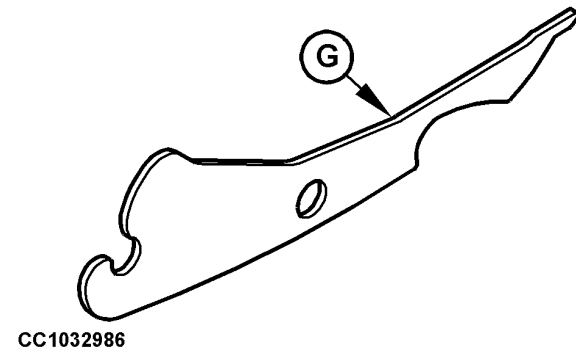
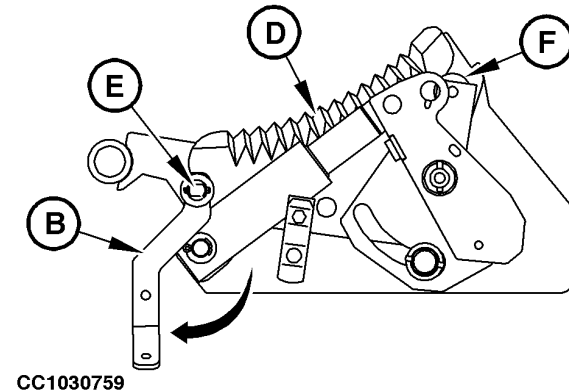
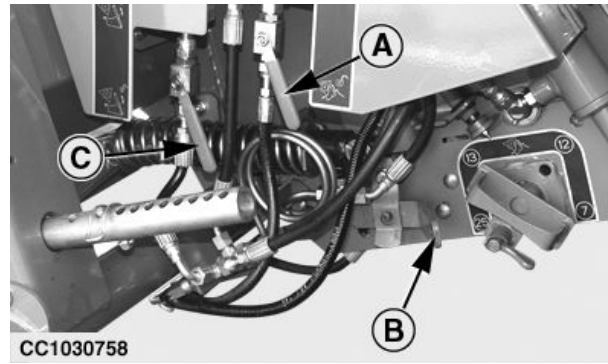
To remove and replace a knife, proceed as follows:

1. Retract knives. See [Retract or Engage Precutter Knives](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
2. Lower the drop floor. See [Unplug Rotary Feeder](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
3. Close knife shut-off valve (A) and drop floor shut-off valve (C).
4. Fully open the gate and secure it.
5. Pull lever (B) out of its locking pin and lower it.
6. Pull on knife (D) to remove it from nylon guide (F) and bar (E).
7. To install knife (D), insert on bar (E), then in nylon guide (F).

IMPORTANT: When a knife is no longer required, it is recommended to install knife slot filler (G) instead. This will avoid crop accumulation at the hole provided by the missing knife.

8. Raise and secure lever (B) in its locking pin.
9. Lower the gate.
10. Open shut-off valves (A) and (C) and raise drop floor.

A—Knife Shut-Off Valve	E—Bar
B—Lever	F—Guide
C—Drop Floor Shut-Off Valve	G—Knife Slot Filler
D—Knife	



CC1030758—UN—02OCT08

CC1030759—UN—22OCT08

CC1032986—UN—30JUN10

OUCC006,0001A2D -19-12FEB13-1/1

Sharpen Precutter Knives

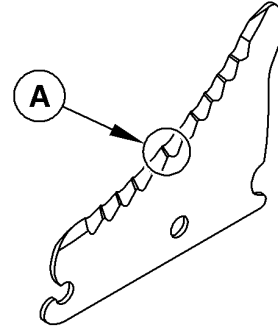
CAUTION: Prevent personal injury by wearing gloves to handle knives.

Remove knives from the machine. See Replace Precutter Knives, in this section.

Clamp knives to a bench or table.

Draw-file the smooth bevelled edge maintaining a 12° angle. See your John Deere dealer for more information on the knife sharpener device.

IMPORTANT: Heating precutter knives during sharpening process may reduce precutter knife life. If tooth profile (A) disappears, replace knife.



CC1029106

A—Tooth Profile

OUCC006,00016AD -19-23JUL10-1/1

CC1029106 —UN—08JAN07

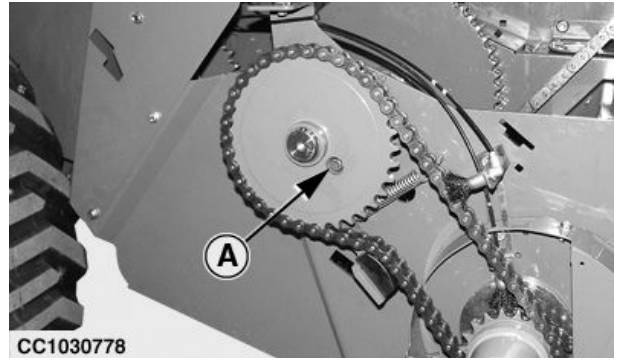
Replace Pickup Drive Shear Bolt

Line up holes in shear bolt hub and install a M8 x 40 (grade 10.9) cap screw and lock nut (A).

Reinstall all shields previously removed.

NOTE: See your John Deere dealer to obtain the appropriate hardware.

A—Cap Screw and Lock Nut



CC1030778

OUCC006,00017E9 -19-12FEB13-1/1

CC1030778 —UN—02OCT08

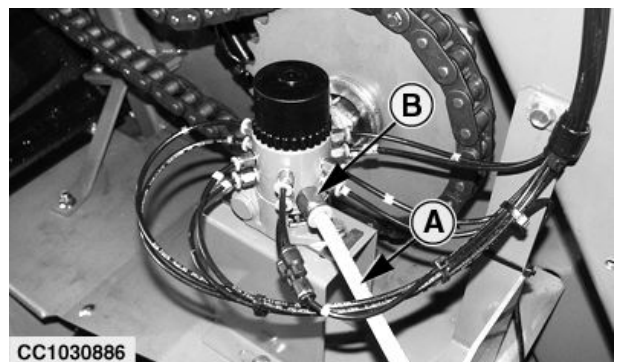
Bleed Chain Oiling System Pump

NOTE: It is necessary to bleed chain oiling system circuit if oil reservoir was totally empty.

1. Disconnect inlet pipe (A).
2. Wait until air of inlet pipe (A) is completely bled before reconnecting inlet pipe (A) into coupling (B).
3. Run the baler until oil drains continuously from brushes.

A—Inlet pipe

B—Coupling



CC1030886

OUCC006,0001425 -19-18NOV08-1/1

CC1030886 —UN—02OCT08

Adjust Brushes

- Adjust position of brushes according to the number of brushes used to lubricate one chain:
 - When one brush is used to lubricate the chain, align the center line of brush (A) with one of the plates located inside of chain (B).
 - When two brushes are used to lubricate the chain, align the center line of each brush (A) with the plates located inside of chain (B).
- Adjust each brush (A) to obtain specified overlap length (C) with chain (B).

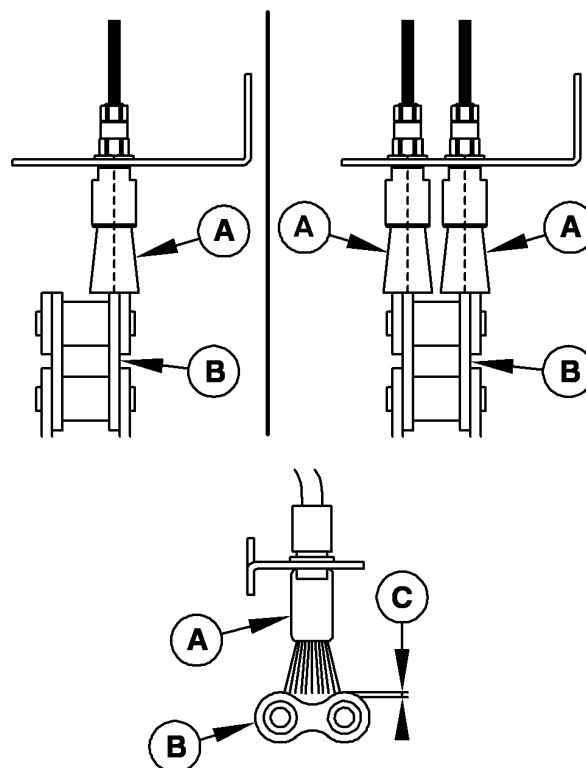
Specification

Brush to Chain—Overlap
 Length.....0—2 mm
 (0—0.08 in.)

This adjustment is necessary to clean and lubricate the drive chain correctly. Other adjustments may lead to chain premature wear.

A—Brush
 B—Chain

C—Brush to Chain Overlap
 Length



CC1035277

CC1035277 —UN—23SEP11

OUC006,000181D -19-11OCT11-1/1

Adjust Belt Tracking

IMPORTANT: Check for a 2 to 4 mm (0.08 to 0.16 in.) gap at the lower front belt guide straps. If the gap is too wide, belts will not track correctly. This could cause damage to the belts and net material.

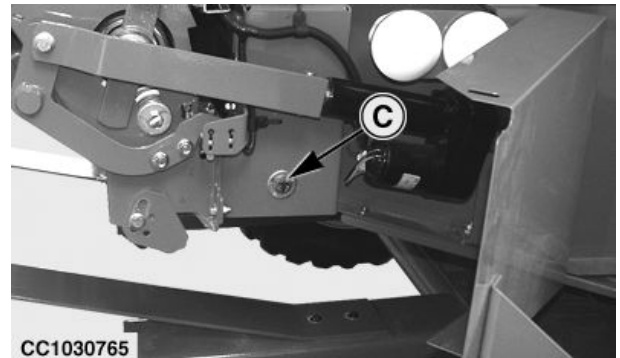
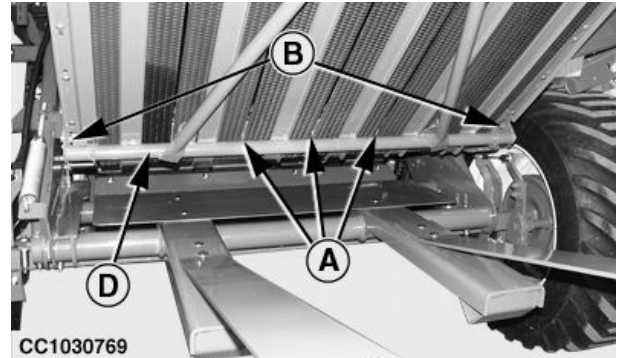
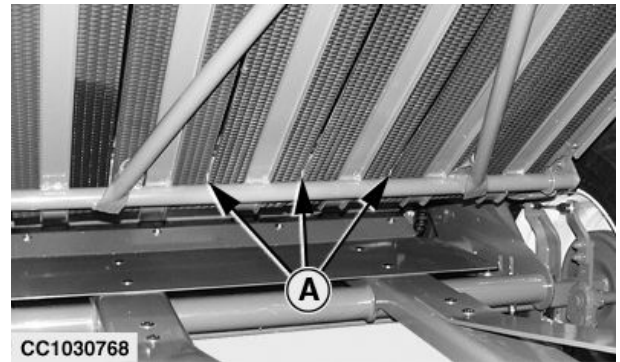
1. Check that clearance between ends of all belt guide straps (A) and the bottom cross-member (D) is within specification.

Specification

Guide Straps to Cross-	
Member—Clearance.....	2—4 mm (0.08—0.16 in.)

2. If necessary, loosen cap screws (B) and adjust cross-member (D). If clearance exceeds 4 mm (0.16 in.) in the middle of cross-member (D), bend as needed.
3. Engage PTO and run at slow speed. Observe belt tracking at lower belt guide straps (A). If belts do not track correctly, use the following procedure:
 - a. Lock gate with gate lock valve.
 - b. Using tractor selective control valve, raise belt tension arm to slacken belts.
 - c. Shut off tractor engine.
 - If belts track to the right, lower right-hand end of lower rear gate roll (C).
 - If belts track to the left, raise right-hand end of lower rear gate roll (C).
 - d. Start engine and lower belt tension arm.
 - e. Recheck tracking and readjust lower rear gate roll (C) if necessary.
 - f. Check lower rear gate roll (No. 8) scraper adjustment. See Adjust Lower Rear Gate Roll (No. 8) Scraper in this section.

IMPORTANT: Check that lower net guide is still in contact with belts. See Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 8) in this section.



A—Guide Straps
B—Cap Screw

C—Lower Rear Gate Roll
D—Cross-Member

CC1030768—UN—01OCT08

CC1030769—UN—24OCT08

CC1030765—UN—14OCT08

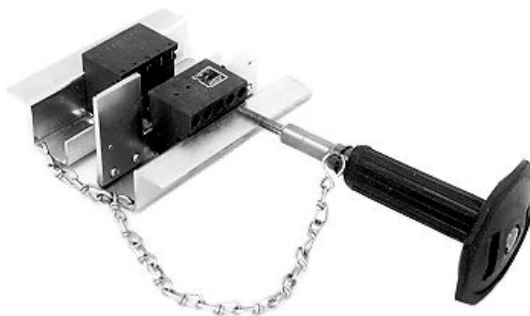
OUC006,0001A39 -19-12FEB13-1/1

Repairing Belts

Belt Lacing Tool

Mato belt lacing tool needs a vice being installed on a desk.

NOTE: Belts may fray at the edges or cut. Trim the frayed cords as they appear. This reduces the chances of frayed cords being caught as the bale is formed, causing additional fraying or damage to the belts.



Mato belt lacing tool

OUCC006,0000256 -19-06OCT00-1/1

E39821—UN—21MAR96

Preparing Damaged Belts

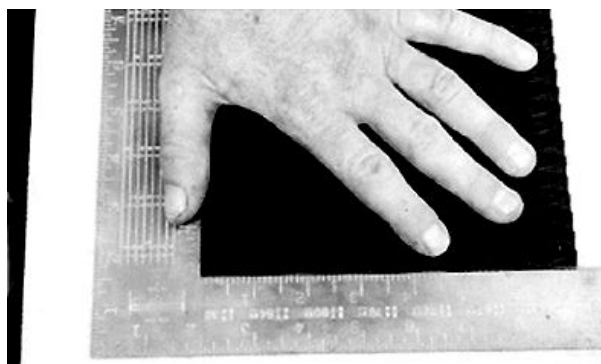
Remove broken belt.

Using a T-square and a sharp knife, remove damaged area.

IMPORTANT: Belt length variation must not be more than 38 mm (1.49 in.). Belt must be lengthened after two repairs.

NOTE: To reduce cutting effort, dip knife blade in liquid soap.

Recheck belt to make sure that it is cut squarely.



Continued on next page

CC,570RB 003542 -19-15SEP98-1/3

E21797—UN—24JUN99

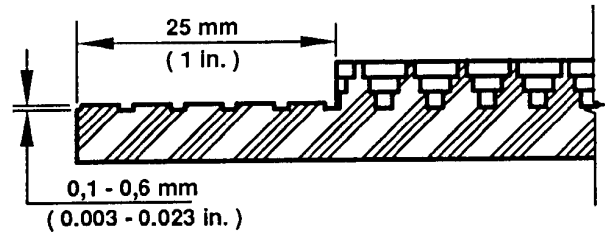
E21798—UN—24JUN99

Remove Diamond Pattern with Knife

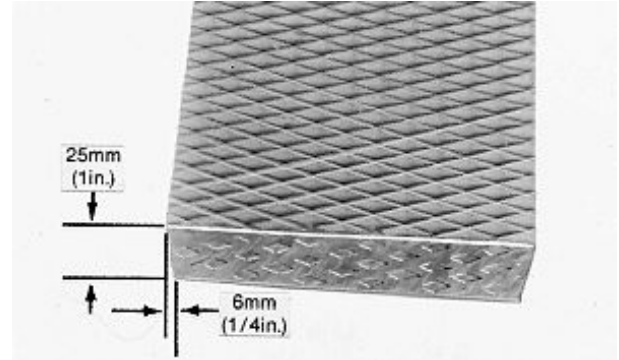
Use a thick board to hold belt and a sharp knife to remove 25 mm (1 in.) of diamond pattern from end of belt taking care to keep 0.1 to 0.6 mm (0.003 to 0.023 in.) of diamond pattern to prevent any damaging of belt cords.

To reduce cutting effort, dip knife blade in liquid soap.

Trim trailing end of belt only as shown in illustration.



CC001056



CC,570RB 003542 -19-15SEP98-2/3

CC001056 —UN—16FEB96

E22649 —UN—13SEP88

Remove Diamond Pattern with Skiving Tool

Place belt on flat surface and hold it down firmly.

Adjust skiving tool pressure plate with thumb screw (A) to thickness of belt.

Turn thumb screw (A) down another half turn. Lock with outer screw (B).

Hold skiver firmly against belt.

Push skiver along end of belt until diamond pattern is removed.



CC,570RB 003542 -19-15SEP98-3/3

E39823 —UN—24JUN99

Install Mato Belt Hooks

NOTE: New baler is sold with 6 Mato belt hooks.

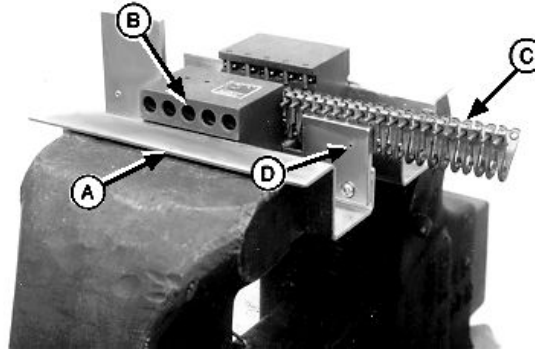
Put belt lacing tool (A) in a vice with holes (B) to the front.

Install the first five segments of belt hooks (C) in lacing tool. Make sure rivets are inside the lacing tool holes (B). Two rivets per segment must be inserted in the same hole. Segments should contact guide (D).

Tighten vice until segments are lightly gripped and the belt can easily be inserted.

A—Belt Lacing Tool
B—Hole

C—Belt Hook
D—Guide



E39829—UN—19JUL96

DC82261,000055B -19-27MAR15-1/5

Clinch Hooks in Belt

Install belt (A) in hooks with diamond pattern to the rear. Align edge of belt with guide (B). Push belt down uniformly to the stop pins. Hooks should also be down against stop pins.

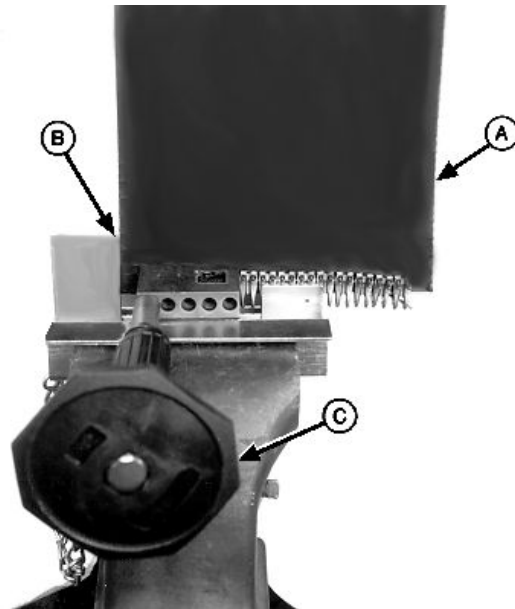
Close vice to exert pressure on hooks. This will ensure correct riveting. Make sure belt is positioned squarely in lacing tool and hooks.

IMPORTANT: Using a too large hammer or striking punch too hard can damage lacing tool or belt splice.

Using punch (C), first drive the rivet in the left hole through the belt until shoulder on punch contacts lacing tool jaw. Hit punch an additional time to ensure contact between shoulder and lacing tool jaw. Working from right to left, drive the remaining rivets through the belt in the same way.

A—Belt
B—Guide

C—Punch



E40028—UN—30MAY96

DC82261,000055B -19-27MAR15-2/5

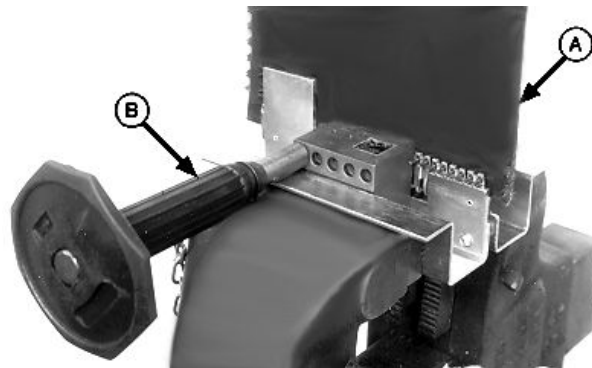
Drive Rivets With Punch

Open vice. Move belt and hooks (A) until rivets on the next five segments are inside lacing tool holes. Position belt squarely in lacing tool. Close vice to exert pressure on hooks.

Using punch (B), drive the rivet in the left hole first through the belt until shoulder on punch contacts lacing tool jaw. Hit punch an additional time to ensure contact between shoulder and lacing tool jaw. Working from right to left, drive the remaining rivets through the belt in the same way.

A—Belt and Hooks

B—Punch



E40029—UN—30MAY96

Continued on next page

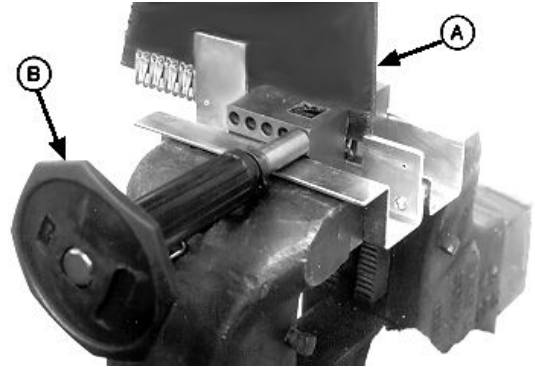
DC82261,000055B -19-27MAR15-3/5

Open vice. Move belt and hooks (A) until rivets on the last four segments are installed inside lacing tool holes. Position belt squarely in lacing tool. Close vice to exert pressure on hooks.

Using punch (B), drive the rivet in the left hole first through the belt until shoulder on punch contacts lacing tool jaw. Hit punch an additional time to ensure contact between shoulder and lacing tool jaw. Working from right to left, drive the remaining rivets through the belt in the same way.

A—Belt and Hooks

B—Punch



DC82261,000055B -19-27MAR15-4/5

E40030 —UN—30MAY96

Check Hook Clinch

Remove belt from vice and inspect hooks. All rivets should be driven through belt and show punch marks in center of rivet.

IMPORTANT: Do not hit the loop area of the fastener when using hammer to flatten heads of rivets.

Do not hit rivets too hard or rivets may buckle and damage joints.

Put belt and splice on a solid base. Flatten heads of rivets using the flat face of a small hammer. Strike several rivets at a time using a light “tapping” motion. Rivets should be flush with splice.

See [Install Belts](#) in this Section for proper installation.



DC82261,000055B -19-27MAR15-5/5

E40027 —UN—30MAY96

Install Belts

Slacken belts by locking gate in any position with the safety lock device and raising belt tension arm with tractor selective control valve lever.

Install belts with diamond portion of belt to the outside.



CC1031922

OUCC006,0001585 -19-28OCT09-1/1

CC1031922 —UN—29OCT09

Route Belts Through the Baler

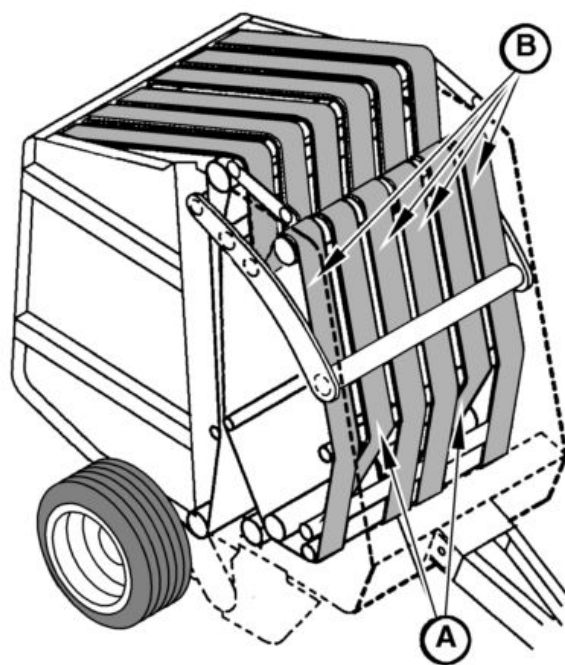
Route belts as shown in illustration, passing them through the individual guides. See illustrations for location of long and short belts.

- Length of short belts (A) = 13.07 m $\pm$ 0.012 m (42 ft. 9.6 in. $\pm$ 0.47 in.).
- Length of long belts (B) = 13.21 m $\pm$ 0.012 m (43 ft. 4.1 in. $\pm$ 0.47 in.).

NOTE: The belt routing shown is recommended. In some cases, another belt routing may give better results.

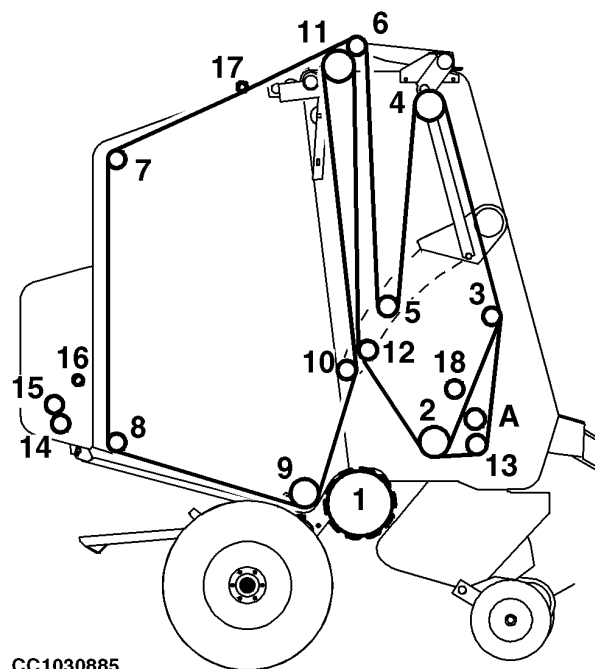
A—Short Belts

B—Long Belts



CC1028775

CC1028775 —UN—08FEB07



CC1030885

CC1030885 —UN—24SEP08

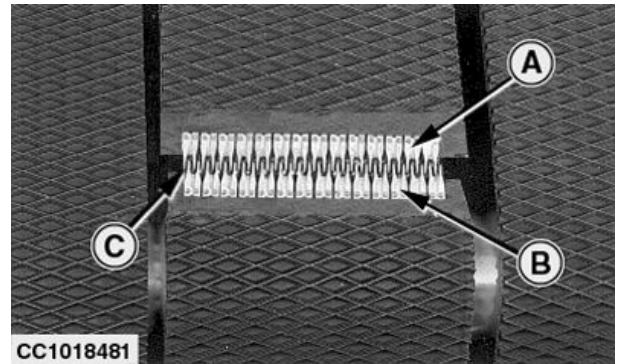
OUCC006,0001586 -19-16SEP09-1/1

Hook Belt Ends (Mato Type)

Thread the two belt hooks (A) and (B) so when viewed in the direction of travel, the square cornered end of belt leads the end with trimmed corners, then insert a piece of wire (C) with a length of 165 mm (6.49 in.).

Make sure belt sides are correctly aligned when installing wire.

NOTE: Special wire shape allows the wire (C) to be held in place once it is fully inserted through the belt hooks.



CC1018481

CC1018481 —UN—18OCT00

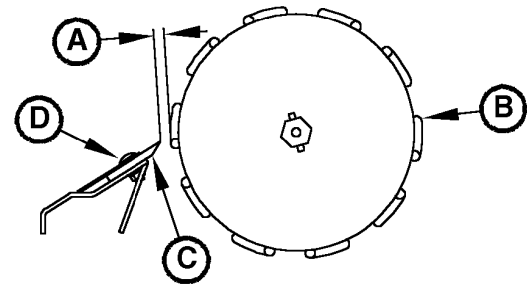
OUCC006,000025B -19-06OCT00-1/1

Adjust Starter Roll (No. 1) Scraper

1. Adjust scraper (C) as close as possible to bottom roll (B), leaving enough space (A) to avoid any contact with bottom roll.
2. Adjust scraper (C) as follows:
 - a. Loosen screws (D) then adjust space (A).
 - b. Manually rotate baler to check distance at all bars. See Rotate Baler by Hand in Operating the Baler - General Purposes section.
3. Tighten fixing screws (D) to following torque:

Specification

Starter Roll Scraper	
Fixing Screws—Torque.....	140 N·m (103 lb·ft)



CC1019230

A—Space
B—Starter roll

C—Scraper
D—Screws

CC1019230 —UN—16FEB01

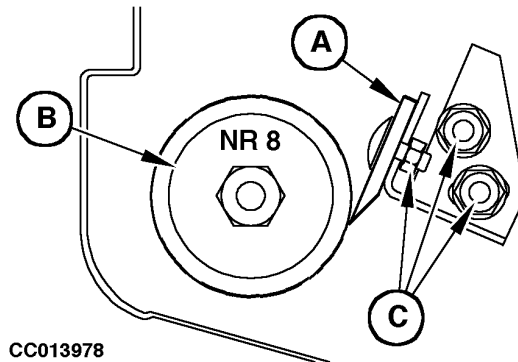
OUCC006,00013CE -19-17NOV08-1/1

Adjust Scraper of Lower Rear Gate Roll (No. 8)

1. Unscrew fixing screws (C) to adjust scraper (A).
2. Scraper (A) must be adjusted as close as possible to roll (B), leaving enough space to avoid any contact with the roll.
3. Tighten fixing screws (C) to specified torque:

Specification

Lower Rear Gate	
Roll Scraper Fixing	
Screws—Torque.....	55 N·m (40 lb·ft.)



CC013978

A—Scraper
B—Roll

C—Screw

CC013978 —UN—04APR98

DC82261,000056B -19-20NOV14-1/1

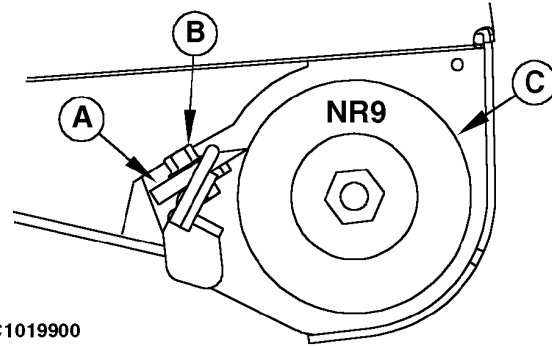
Adjust Lower Front Gate Roll (No. 9) Scraper

1. Unscrew fixing screws (B) to adjust scraper (A).
2. Scraper (A) must be adjusted as close as possible to roll (C), leaving enough space to avoid any contact with the roll.
3. Tighten fixing screws (B) to following torque:

Specification

Lower Front Gate Roll
 Scraper—Torque.....55 N·m
 (40 lb·ft)

CC1019900



A—Scraper
 B—Screw

C—Roll

OUCC006,0001422 -19-25JUN08-1/1

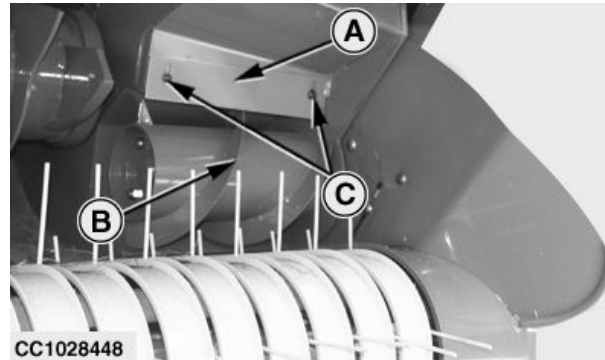
CC1019900 —JUN—22JUN01

Adjust Pickup Auger Scrapers

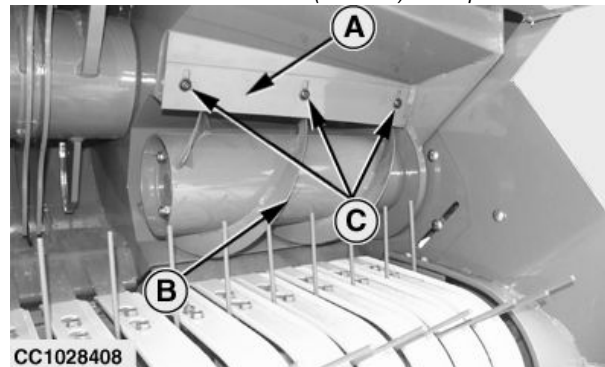
1. Loosen screws (C).
2. Position and maintain scraper (A) as close as possible to auger (B) avoiding contact.
3. Tighten screws (C).
4. Repeat this process on the opposite side.

A—Scraper
 B—Auger

C—Screws



Baler with 2.00 m (6 ft 7 in.) Pickup



Baler with 2.20 m (7 ft 3 in.) Pickup

FS62804,0000328 -19-17JUN09-1/1

CC1028448 —JUN—21SEP06

CC1028408 —JUN—21SEP06

Adjust Twine Cutter Anvil

1. Move twine arm (A) with control monitor until it is centered over knife anvil (B).
2. Loosen nuts (E).
3. Adjust twine cutter assembly (D) so clearance (C) between knife anvil (B) and twine arm (A) is within specification.

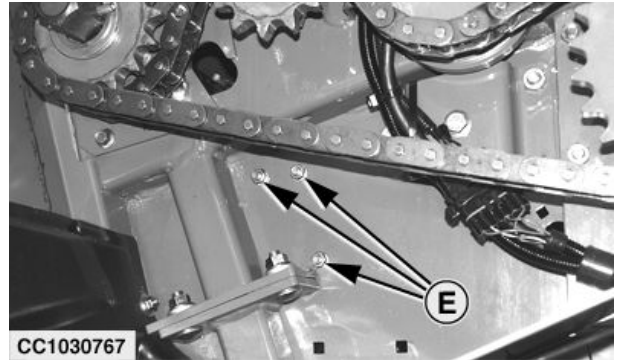
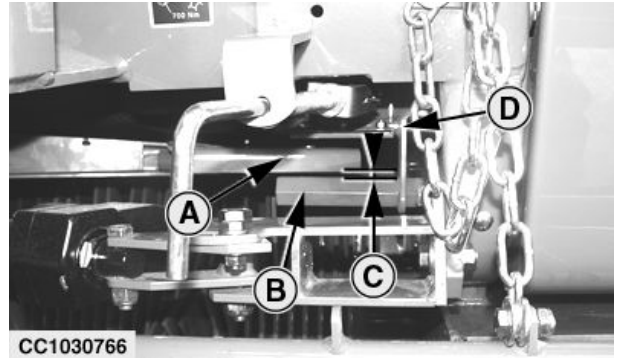
Specification

Twine Arm to Knife
Anvil—Clearance.....1 — 4 mm
(0.04 — 0.16 in.)

4. Retighten nuts (E).
5. Move twine arm to “home” position.

A—Twine arm
B—Knife anvil
C—Clearance

D—Cutter assembly
E—Nuts



OUCC006,000140D -19-27OCT08-1/1

CC1030766 —UN—24OCT08

CC1030767 —UN—14OCT08

Adjust Twine Arm Travel

Twine arm travel can be adjusted with the monitor. Before changing twine arm travel with the monitor, adjust twine arm (C) to its upmost position.

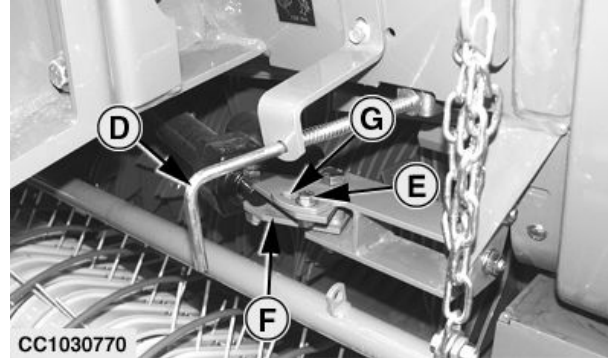
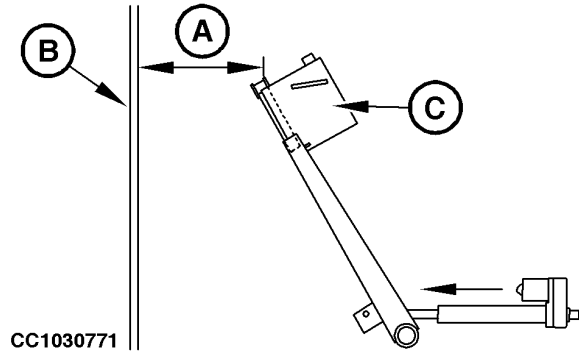
To adjust twine arm travel, proceed as follows:

1. Fully extend twine actuator with monitor to place twine arm (C) to extreme right-hand position.
2. Loosen cap screw (E).
3. Move actuator support (F) in slot (G) to obtain specified distance (A).

Specification

Twine Arm to Right-Hand
Panel—Distance..... 80 mm
(3.15 in.)

4. Retighten cap screw (E).
5. Fully retract twine actuator to move twine arm to "home" position. Check that twine arm is actuating twine cutter linkage (D) correctly, otherwise twine will not be cut. If necessary, repeat procedure.
6. Check twine actuator calibration. See Calibration of Twine Tying Actuator in Baler Application Service section.



A—Distance
B—Right-hand Panel of Bale Chamber
C—Twine Arm
D—Twine Cutter Linkage

E—Cap Screw
F—Actuator Support
G—Adjusting Slot

OUC006,000157C -19-20OCT09-1/1

CC1030771—UN—02OCT08

CC1030770—UN—14OCT08

Set Center Tension Arm Roll Position (No. 12)

IMPORTANT: Set the center tension arm roll position according to the crop type. Failure to do so could result in baler damage.

1. Fully open the gate and lock it using the safety lock device.
2. Move the tension arm by using the tractor selective control valve lever until roll cap screw (A) and access hole (B) inside the baler are aligned.
3. Engage tractor parking lock, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
4. Support roll and loosen cap screw (A) on both sides.
5. Set the center arm roll position:

Position 1: Set the roll in this position when the machine is used to bale dry crop like straw.

Position 2: Set the roll in this position when the machine is used to bale wet crop like silage.

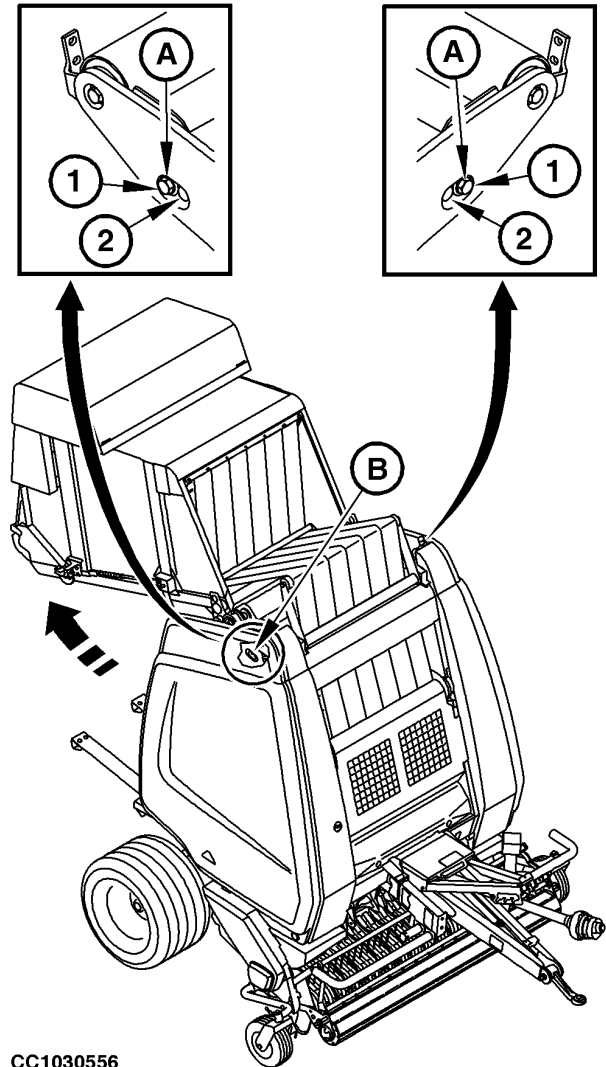
6. Tighten cap screw (A) on both sides to specifications:

Specification

Center Tension Arm Roll
Cap Screws—Torque.....130 N·m
(97.5 lb.-ft.)

A—Cap Screw
B—Access Hole

1— Position for Dry Crop
2— Position for Wet Crop

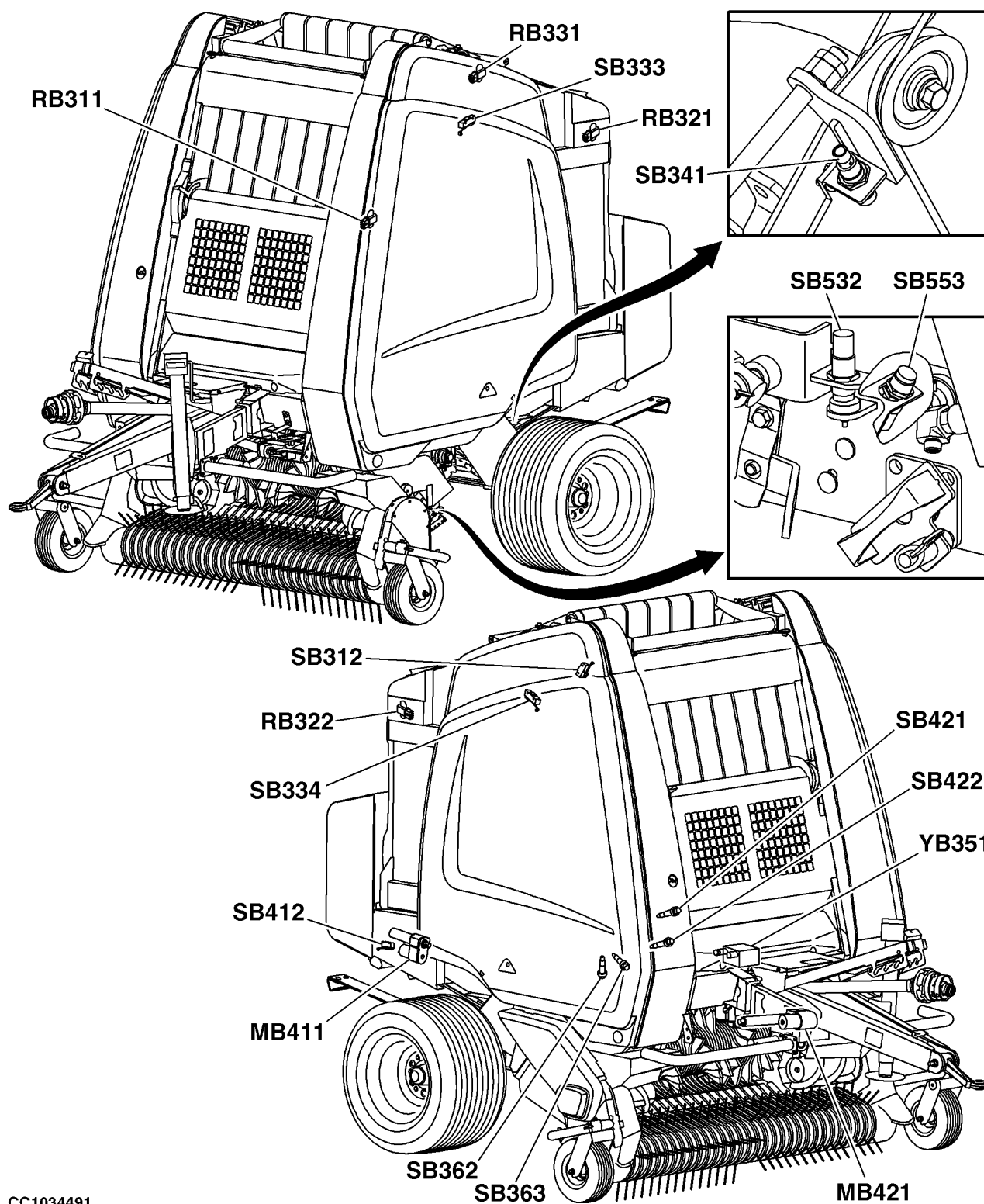


CC1030556

CC1030556 —UN—22OCT08

OUC006,0001551 -19-03JUN09-1/1

Locate Baler Electrical Components (Baler up to S.N. 134999)



CC1034491

CC1034491 —UN—15OCT12

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000574 -19-27MAR15-1/2

Service

MB411—Net Tying Actuator
MB421—Twine Tying Actuator
RB311—Bale Diameter
Potentiometer
RB321—Left Bale Shape
Potentiometer
RB322—Right Bale Shape
Potentiometer

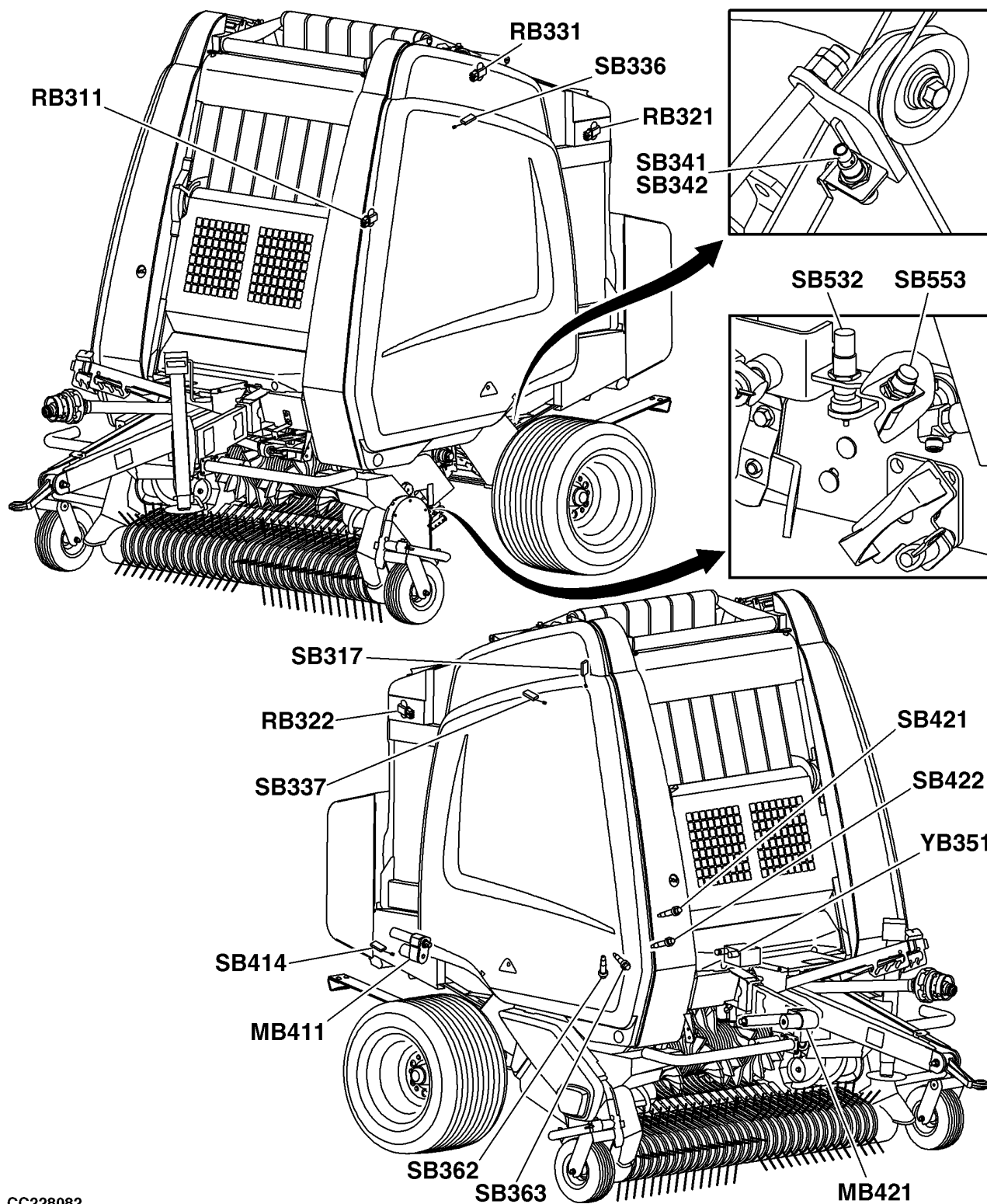
RB331—Rear Gate Position
Potentiometer
SB312—Oversize Bale Switch
SB333—Left Gate Latch Switch
SB334—Right Gate Latch Switch
SB341—Bale Discharging Ramp
Sensor

SB362—Baler Rotation Speed
Sensor
SB363—Cleaning Auger Sensor
SB412—Net Cut Switch
SB421—Left Twine Pulley Sensor
SB422—Right Twine Pulley
Sensor

SB532—Drop Floor Sensor
SB553—Precutter Knife Sensor
YB351—Soft Core Solenoid Valve

DC82261,0000574 -19-27MAR15-2/2

Locate Baler Electrical Components (Baler from S.N. 135000)



CC228082

CC228082 — UN — 03DEC14

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000575 -19-03DEC14-1/2

MB411—Net Tying Actuator
 MB421—Twine Tying Actuator
 RB311—Bale Diameter Potentiometer
 RB321—Left Bale Shape Potentiometer
 RB322—Right Bale Shape Potentiometer

RB331—Rear Gate Position Potentiometer
 SB317—Oversize Bale Sensor
 SB336—Left Gate Latch Sensor
 SB337—Right Gate Latch Sensor
 SB341/SB342—Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor

SB362—Baler Rotation Speed Sensor
 SB363—Cleaning Auger Sensor
 SB414—Net Cut Sensor
 SB421—Left Twine Pulley Sensor
 SB422—Right Twine Pulley Sensor

SB532—Drop Floor Sensor
 SB553—Precutter Knife Sensor
 YB351—Soft Core Solenoid Valve

DC82261,0000575 -19-03DEC14-2/2

Identify Sensor Detection Area (Baler from S.N. 135000)

To ensure a proper detection of the target by the sensor, check that sensor detection area (C) is correctly oriented to the target. Sensor detection area (C) is located only on the same side as both bores (B).

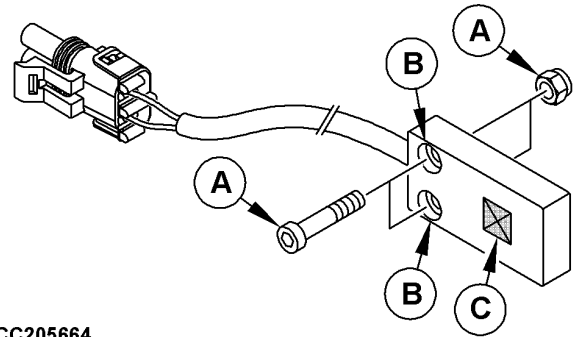
If sensor has been replaced or cap screws (A) have been removed, tighten cap screws (A) to specified torque:

Specification

Cap Screws—Torque..... 1.2—1.8 N·m
 (11—16 lb.-in.)

A—Cap Screw
 B—Bore

C—Sensor Detection Area



CC205664

CC205664 —UN—10OCT13

CC03745,0001158 -19-03APR15-1/1

Adjust Oversize Bale Switch SB312

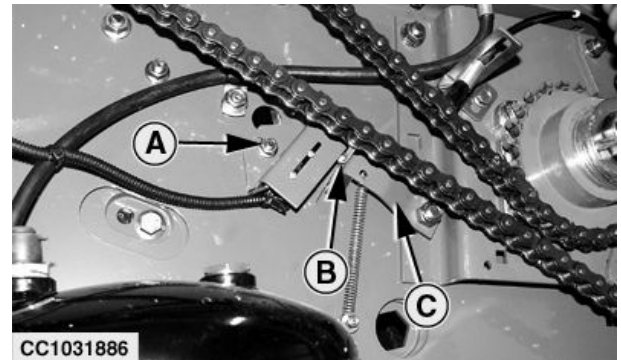
1. Use tractor selective control valve lever to raise belt tension arm to its highest position.
2. Loosen cap screw (A).
3. With switch arm contacting switch body, adjust switch bracket to obtain specified distance between switch roller (B) and strap (C).

Specification

Switch Roller to
 Strap—Distance..... 1—2 mm
 (0.04—0.08 in.)

4. Retighten cap screw (A).
5. Check switch with monitor. See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.

NOTE: Oversize switch status should be open when belt tension arm is in the highest position.



A—Cap Screw
 B—Switch Roller

C—Strap

6. Readjust if necessary.

OUCC006,00017D3 -19-25JAN13-1/1

Adjust Oversize Bale Sensor SB317

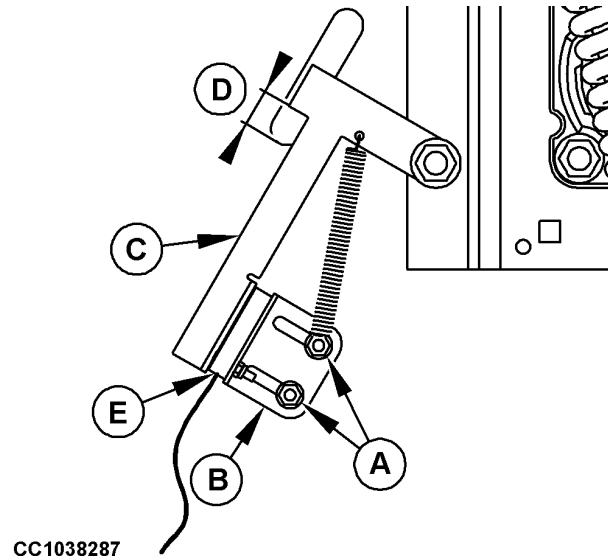
1. Check that sensor (E) is mounted properly. See Identify Sensor Detection Area (Baler from S.N. 135000) in this section.
2. Position target (C) to obtain specified distance (D).

Specification

Target Position to
Bottom of Oblong
Hole—Distance..... 20 mm
(0.8 in.)

3. Loosen cap screws (A).
4. Adjust sensor bracket (B) to obtain contact between target (C) and sensor (E) as shown.
5. Retighten cap screws (A).
6. Check sensor detection with monitor. See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.

NOTE: Use tractor selective control valve lever to raise belt tension arm to its highest position and check that sensor does not detect target.



A—Cap Screw
B—Sensor Bracket
C—Target

D—Distance
E—Oversize Bale Sensor

OUCC006,0001958 -19-25JAN13-1/1

CC1038287 —UN—20SEP12

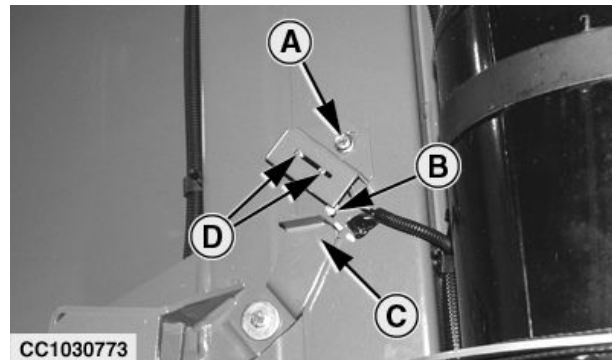
Adjust Gate Latch Switches SB333 and SB334

1. Close and latch gate. Cylinder should be fully retracted.
2. Loosen cap screw (A).
3. Turn switch bracket so that switch roller (B) is centered on short leg of strap (C).
4. With switch arm contacting switch body, adjust switch bracket to obtain specified distance between switch roller (B) and strap (C).

Specification

Switch Roller to
Strap—Distance..... 0.5—2 mm
(0.02—0.08 in.)

5. Adjust bracket on switch using cap screw (A) and/or screws (D) to obtain correct dimension.
6. Retighten cap screw (A) and/or screws (D).
7. Repeat procedure on the opposite side.



A—Cap Screw
B—Switch Roller

C—Strap
D—Adjusting Screws

8. Check switches with monitor. See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.

OUCC006,00017D2 -19-25JAN13-1/1

CC1030773 —UN—14OCT08

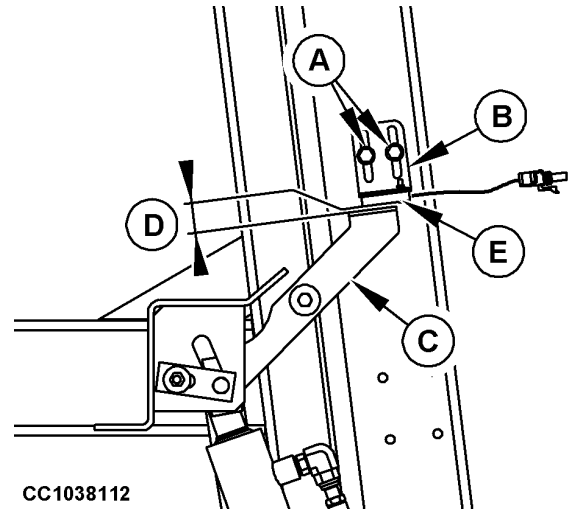
Adjust Gate Latch Sensors SB336 and SB337

1. Check that sensor (E) is mounted properly. See Identify Sensor Detection Area (Baler from S.N. 135000) in this section.
2. Close and latch gate. Cylinder should be fully retracted.
3. Loosen cap screws (A).
4. Position and maintain sensor bracket (B) parallel to the target (C) and to obtain specified distance (D) between sensor (E) and target (C).

Specification

Sensor to
Target—Distance.....0.5—2 mm
(0.02—0.08 in.)

5. Retighten cap screws (A).
6. Repeat procedure on the opposite side.
7. Check sensors detection with monitor. See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.



A—Cap Screw
B—Sensor Bracket
C—Target

D—Distance
E—Gate Latch Sensor

OUC006.0001959 -19-25JAN13-1/1

CC1038112 —UN—20SEP12

Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor SB341 or SB342

1. Open the rear gate and secure it with the safety lock device. Engage tractor park lock, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
2. Place a load on bale discharging ramp (D) to obtain contact between bale discharging ramp (D) and stop (C).
3. Loosen lock nuts (A) and slide sensor (B) until distance (E) is obtained.

Specification

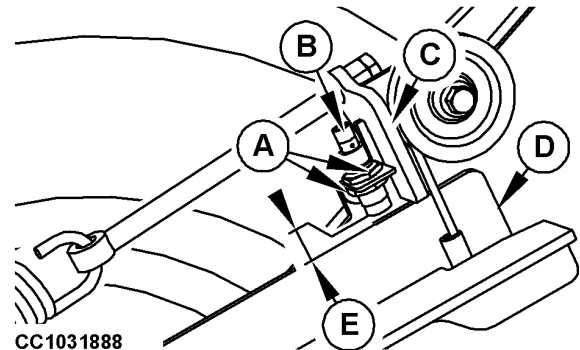
Bale Discharging Ramp
to Sensor—Distance.....2—4 mm
(5/64—1/8 in.)

4. Tighten lock nuts (A) to specified torque:

Specification

Lock Nut—Torque.....23 N·m
(204 lb.-in.)

5. Check sensor detection with monitor. See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.



A—Lock Nut
B—Sensor
C—Stop

D—Bale Discharging Ramp
E—Distance

DC82261.0000568 -19-03APR15-1/1

CC1031888 —UN—11DEC09

Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor SB362

CAUTION: DO NOT TAKE CHANCES! Never use any type of tool or spanner on shaft while tractor engine is running. Shut off tractor engine, remove key and wait for moving parts to come to a standstill. Always remove tool from shaft as soon as you have finished using it.

1. Rotate baler by hand so that gear (A) is in position shown. See Rotate Baler by Hand in Operating the Baler—General Purposes section.
2. Loosen lock nuts (B) then slide sensor (C) until specified distance (D) is achieved.

Specification

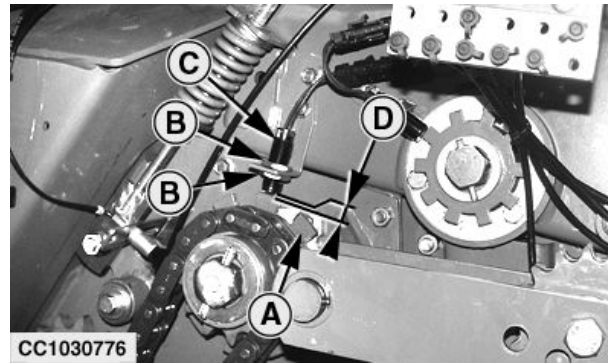
Sensor to
Gear—Distance.....2—4 mm
(5/64—1/8 in.)

3. Tighten lock nuts (B) to specified torque:

Specification

Lock Nut—Torque.....2 N·m
(18 lb.-in.)

4. Rotate baler several times to check that there is no interference between sensor (C) and gear (A).



A—Gear
B—Lock Nut

C—Sensor
D—Distance

5. Check that center line of sensor (C) is aligned with center line of gear (A).
6. Check sensor detection with monitor. See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.

DC82261,000055E -19-03APR15-1/1

CC1030776—UN—14OCT08

Adjust Cleaning Auger Sensor SB363

CAUTION: DO NOT TAKE CHANCES! Never use any type of tool or spanner on shaft while tractor engine is running. Shut off tractor engine, remove key and wait for moving parts to come to a standstill. Always remove tool from shaft as soon as you have finished using it.

NOTE: The diagnostic trouble code RBC 522017.07 can appear if the cleaning auger sensor is not correctly adjusted.

1. Position a spanner on gear case output shaft and rotate baler by hand so that the gear (A) is in position shown.
2. Loosen lock nuts (B) then slide sensor (C) until specified distance (D) is achieved:

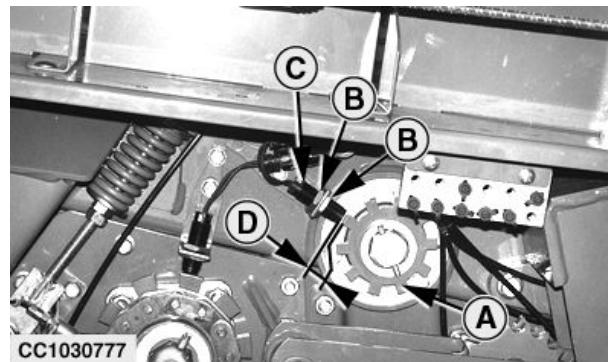
Specification

Sensor to
Gear—Distance.....2—4 mm
(5/64—1/8 in.)

3. Tighten lock nuts (B) to specified torque:

Specification

Lock Nut—Torque.....2 N·m
(18 lb.-in.)



A—Gear
B—Lock Nut

C—Sensor
D—Distance

4. Rotate the baler several times to check that there is no interference between sensor and gear.
5. Check that center line of sensor (C) is aligned with center line of gear (A).
6. Check sensor detection with monitor. See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.

DC82261,000055F -19-03APR15-1/1

CC1030777—UN—14OCT08

Adjust Net Cut Switch SB412

To adjust net cut switch (D), proceed as follows:

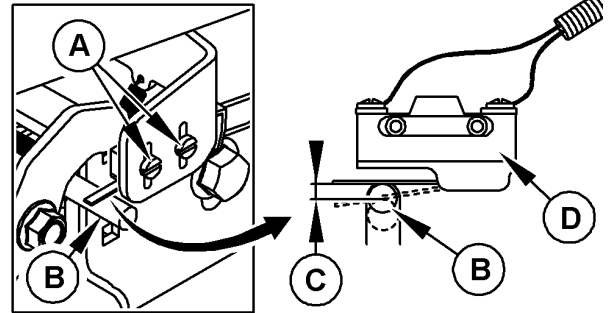
1. Gently push on rod (B).
2. Check that switch (D) is activated after a displacement (C) of rod (B).

Specification

Net Tying
Rod—Displacement..... 2 mm
(0.08 in.)

If not, loosen fixing screws (A) and readjust switch (D) accordingly.

3. Check switch with monitor. See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.



CC1038290

A—Fixing Screw
B—Net Tying Rod

C—Displacement
D—Net Cut Switch

OUCC006,00017EC -19-12FEB13-1/1

CC1038290—UN—20SEP12

Adjust Net Cut Sensor SB414

To adjust net cut sensor (E), proceed as follows:

1. Check that sensor (E) is mounted properly. See Identify Sensor Detection Area (Baler from S.N. 135000) in this section.
2. Loosen fixing screws (A).
3. Adjust sensor bracket (B) and sensor (E) to obtain specified distance (D) and distance (F) between sensor (E) and rod (C).

Specification

Sensor to Top of Net
Tying Rod—Distance
(D)..... 0.5—2 mm
(1/64—5/64 in.)

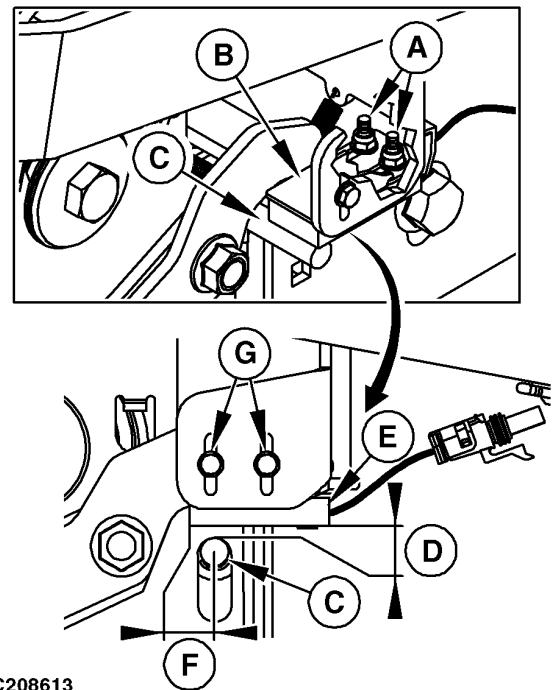
Sensor Extremity to
Center Line of Net Tying
Rod—Distance (F)..... 13—17 mm
(1/2—5/8 in.)

4. Tighten fixing screws (G) to standard torque and cap screws (A) to specified torque:

Specification

Cap Screw (A)—Torque..... 1.2—1.8 N·m
(11—16 lb.-in.)

5. Check sensor detection with monitor. See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.



CC208613

A—Cap Screw
B—Sensor Bracket
C—Net Tying Rod
D—Distance

E—Net Cut Sensor
F—Distance
G—Fixing Screw

DC82261,0000560 -19-03APR15-1/1

CC208613—UN—04APR14

Adjust Twine Pulley Sensors SB421 and SB422

1. Rotate pulley (B) so that magnet (C) is aligned with sensor (A).
2. Loosen lock nuts (E), then slide sensor (A) until specified distance (D) is achieved.

Specification

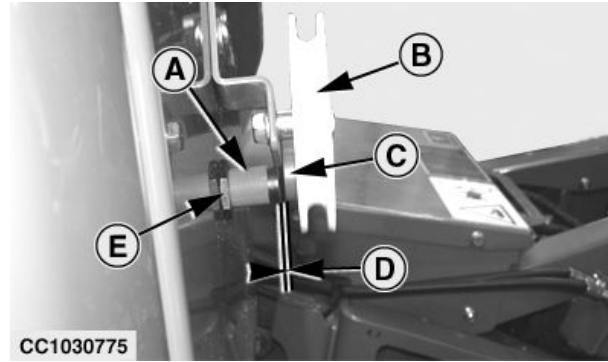
Sensor to
Magnet—Distance.....2—4 mm
(5/64—1/8 in.)

3. Tighten lock nuts (E) to specified torque:

Specification

Lock Nut—Torque.....2 N·m
(18 lb.-in.)

4. Rotate the pulley several times to check that there is no interference between sensor and magnet.
5. Check detection of sensors with monitor. See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.



A—Sensor
B—Pulley
C—Magnet

D—Distance
E—Lock Nut

DC82261,0000561 -19-03APR15-1/1

CC1030775—UN—14OCT08

Adjust Drop Floor Sensor SB532

To adjust drop floor sensor (A), proceed as follows:

1. Fully raise drop floor. See Unplug Rotary Feeder in Operating Baler Application section.
2. Loosen lock nuts (B) and slide sensor (A) until distance (C) is obtained.

Specification

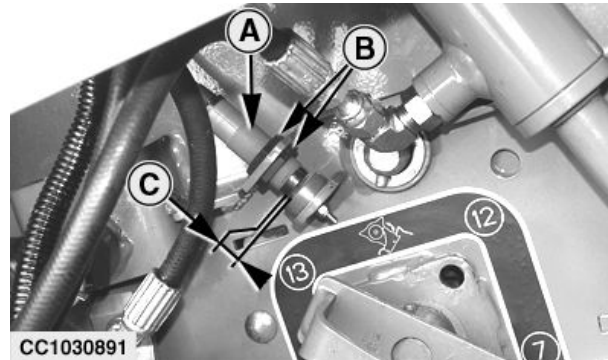
Drop Floor Sensor to
Magnet—Distance.....2—4 mm
(5/64—1/8 in.)

3. Tighten lock nuts (B) to specified torque:

Specification

Lock Nut—Torque.....2 N·m
(18 lb.-in.)

4. Check sensor detection with monitor. See Test Sensors and Switches in Baler Application Service section.



A—Drop Floor Sensor
B—Lock Nut

C—Distance

DC82261,0000562 -19-03APR15-1/1

CC1030891—UN—14OCT08

Adjust Precutter Knife Sensor SB553

To adjust precutter knife sensor (D), proceed as follows:

1. Engage knives. See [Retract or Engage Precutter Knives](#) in Operating Baler Application section.
2. Loosen fixing screws (A).
3. Remove sensor bracket (B).
4. Loosen lock nuts (E) and move sensor (D) to obtain specified distance (C) between the top of sensor (D) and sensor bracket (B).

Specification

Top of Sensor to
Bracket—Distance..... 12 mm
(15/32 in.)

5. Tighten lock nuts (E) to specified torque:

Specification

Lock Nut—Torque..... 2 N·m
(18 lb.-in.)

6. Install sensor bracket (B) to obtain specified distance (G) between sensor (D) and magnet (F).

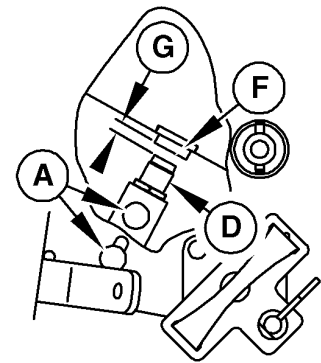
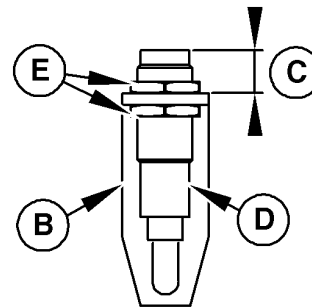
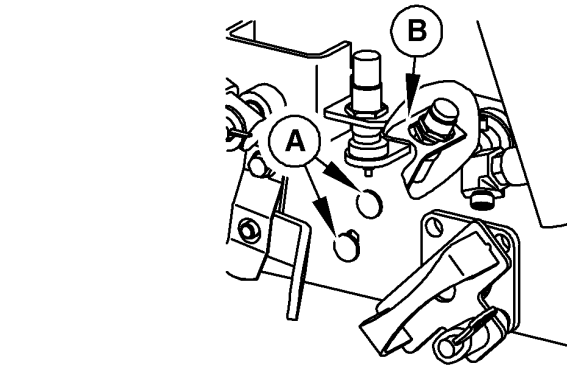
Specification

Sensor to
Magnet—Distance..... 2—4 mm
(5/64—1/8 in.)

7. Tighten the two fixing screws (A).
8. Check sensor detection with monitor. See [Test Sensors and Switches](#) in Baler Application Service section.

A—Fixing Screw
B—Sensor Bracket
C—Distance
D—Sensor

E—Lock Nut
F—Magnet
G—Distance



CC1031052

CC1031052 —UN—27OCT08

DC82261,0000563 -19-03APR15-1/1

Check Net Tying Device

The following procedure should be carried out when net cut or net tying problems occur during field operation.

The check procedure includes different tests to carry out:

- Test 1 - Checking knife and counterknife position
- Test 2 - Checking free motion of swinging bar
- Test 3 - Check net feed roll pressure
- Test 4 - Check No. 8 roll position

- Test 5 - Checking drive belt tension
- Test 6 - Checking net feed roll brake
- Test 7 - Checking tension arms
- Test 8 - Check lower net guide position

NOTE: When all test results are OK, the net tying device is optimized for good field operation.

OUCC006,00018F0 -19-25JAN13-1/1

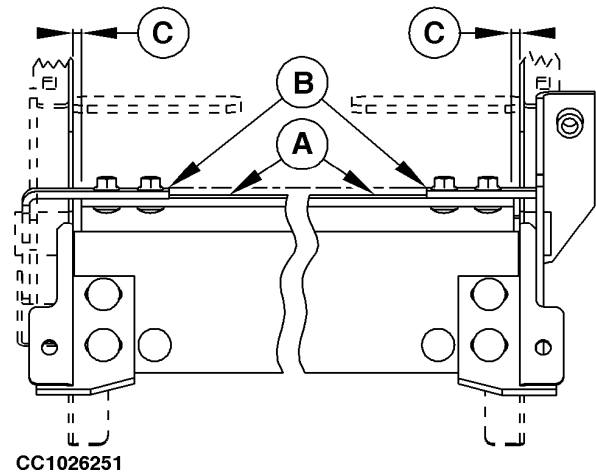
Checking Knife and Counterknife Position (Test 1)

NOTE: The counterknife position (in relation to the knife) must be checked if serious net cut problems occur during field operation.

1. Keep the net actuator retracted.
2. Check that the two counterknife supports (B) are aligned.
3. Center counterknife (A) between lateral supports to obtain specified distance (C) on both sides.

Specification

Counterknife to Lateral
Support—Distance..... 5 ± 2 mm
 0.2 ± 0.08 in.



A—Counterknife
B—Counterknife support

C— 5 ± 2 mm (0.2 ± 0.08 in.)

CC1026251—UN—27OCT04

Continued on next page

CC03745,0000C3C -19-16JAN07-1/3

4. Check that counterknife (A) is against net knife (D) all across its width.

IMPORTANT: Contact should occur on the medium area of the sharp side of the knife as shown.

The gap (E) in not touching area should not exceed the following specifications:

Specification

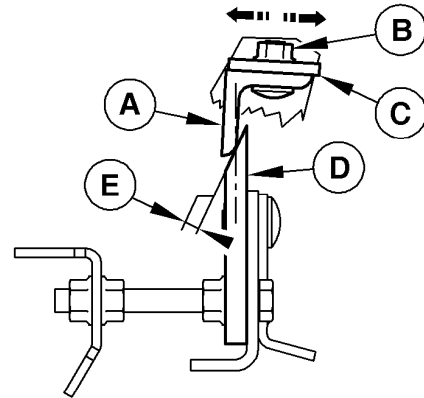
Counterknife to	
Knife—Gap.....	0.5 mm maximum
	0.02 in. maximum

If necessary, adjust the gap (E) as follows:

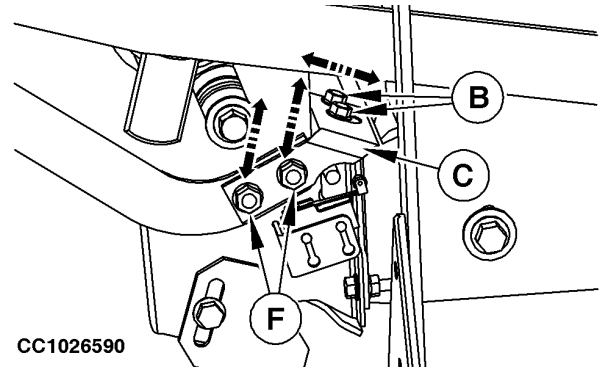
- Loosen nuts (B) and (F).
- Move counterknife (A) and counterknife support (C) to obtain specified gap (E).
- Tighten nuts (B) and (F).

A—Counterknife
B—Nuts
C—Counterknife support

D—Knife
E—0.5 mm (0.02 in.) maximum
F—Nuts



CC1026591



CC1026590

CC03745,0000C3C -19-16JAN07-2/3

CC1026591 —UN—27OCT04

CC1026590 —UN—27OCT04

5. If counterknife (A) is not fully in contact all across the knife (B) width, complete the adjustment of gap (E) as follows:

- Loosen lock nut (C).
- Tighten nut (D) to bend the knife (B) to obtain the specified gap (E).

Specification

Counterknife to	
Knife—Gap.....	0.5 mm maximum
	0.02 in. maximum

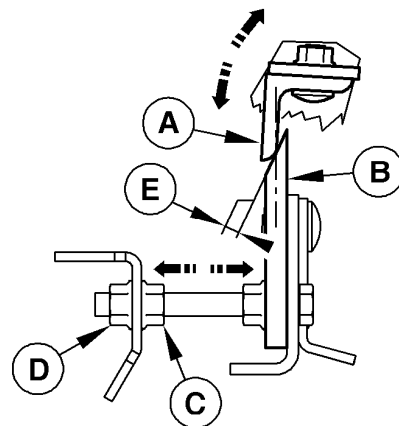
- Tighten lock nut (C) after adjustment.

6. Extend and retract net actuator. Check gap (E) and repeat the procedure if necessary.

Proceed to test 2.

A—Counterknife
B—Knife
C—Lock nut

D—Nut
E—0.5 mm (0.02 in.) maximum

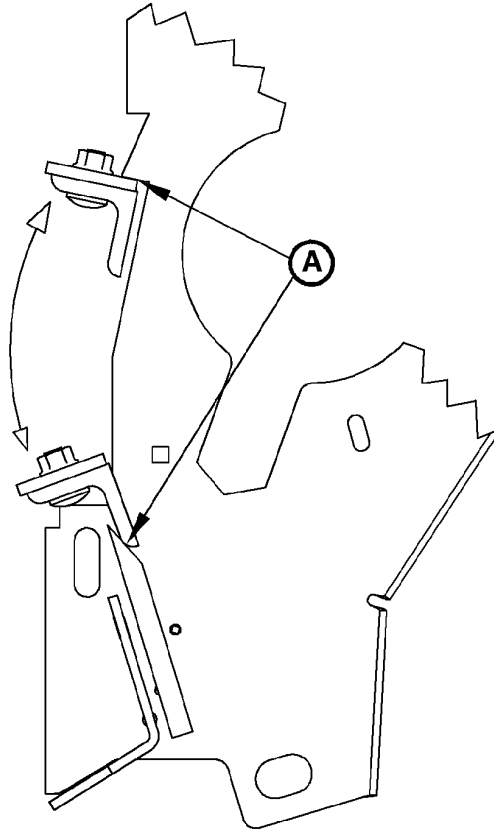


CC1026592

CC03745,0000C3C -19-16JAN07-3/3

CC1026592 —UN—27OCT04

Checking Free Motion of Swinging Bar (Test 2)



CC1019126

CC1019126 —UN—09FEB01

A—Stops

IMPORTANT: Prior to carry out this test, make sure that test 1 results are “OK”. Proceed to the relevant tests described in this Section.

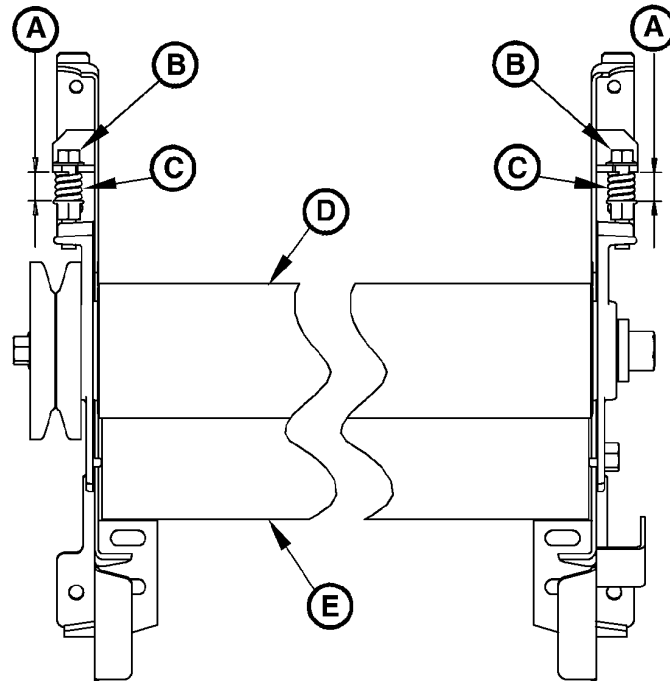
Proceed as follows:

Check that swinging bar motions are free without contact with lateral supports between its two stops (A).

Proceed to test 3

OUC006,00002EC -19-06FEB01-1/1

Check Net Feed Roll Pressure (Test 3)



CC1019127

A—Length
B—Spring adjusting nuts

C—Spring
D—Rubber roll

E—Plated roll

IMPORTANT: Prior to carrying out this test, make sure that test 1 and 2 are OK. Proceed to the relevant tests described in this section.

Proceed as follows:

Release net feed roll brake, see Load Net Roll in Preparing the Baler section.

Adjust net feed roll pressure by loosening or tightening spring adjusting nuts (B) until length (A) of springs (C) is within specification.

Specification

Spring—Length..... 20.5 ± 0.5 mm
(0.8 ± 0.02 in.)

IMPORTANT: Make sure that rubber roll and plated roll rotate freely by hand in both directions with springs adjusted to 20.5 ± 0.5 mm (0.8 ± 0.02 in.).

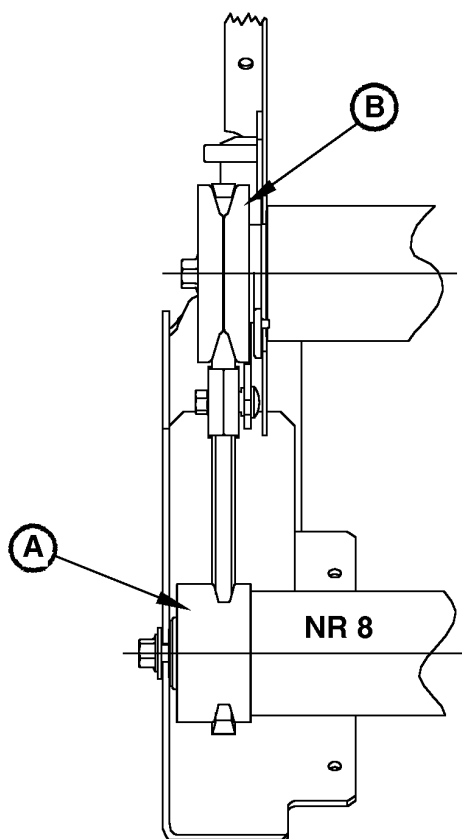
Remove any foreign material or net from between the feed rolls.

Proceed to test 4.

OUCC006,00013B3 -19-24JUN08-1/1

CC1019127 —UN—08FEB01

Check No. 8 Roll Position (Test 4)



CC1019553

CC1019553—UN—06APR01

A—Roll No. 8

B—Rubber roll pulley

IMPORTANT: Prior to carrying out this test, make sure that test 1 to 3 are OK. Proceed to the relevant tests described in this section.

IMPORTANT: Check the position of roll No. 8 after each drive belt replacement.

Proceed as follows:

Check that axial clearance of roll No. 8 (A) is between 0.5 to 1.5 mm (0.02 to 0.06 in.) and that rubber roll (B) and No. 8 roll pulleys are aligned within ± 5 mm (2 in.).

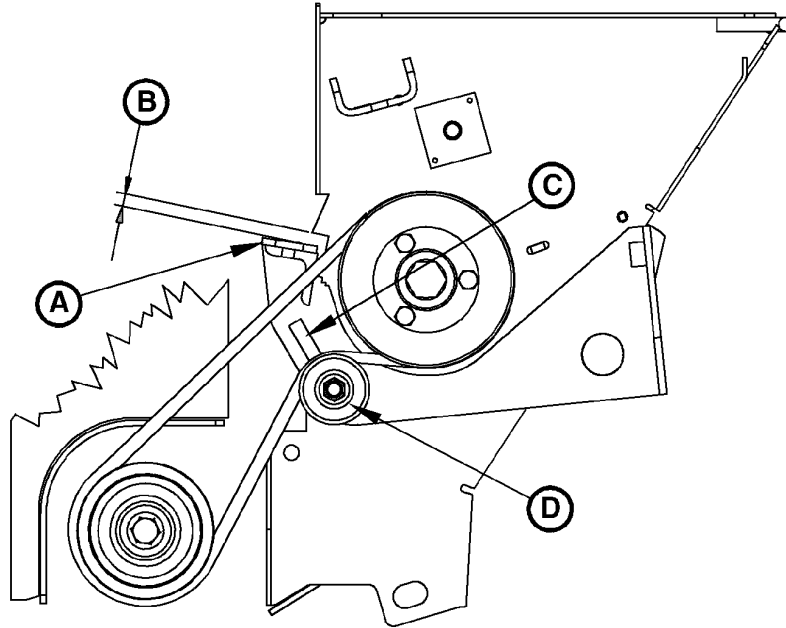
Add or remove washers on each sides of roll No. 8 as necessary.

Reinstall net feed roll drive belt. See Remove And Install Net Feed Roll Drive Belt in this section.

Proceed to test 5.

OUCC006,0001421 -19-24JUN08-1/1

Checking Drive Belt Tension (Test 5)



CC1019129

A—Counterknife support

B—Distance
C—Oblong hole

D—Idler pulley

IMPORTANT: Prior to carry out this test, make sure that test 1 to 4 results are “OK”. Proceed to the relevant tests described in this Section.

IMPORTANT: After each drive belt replacement, it is essential to check that the new belt has a length which allows a good net tying drive timing.

Proceed as follows:

Fully extend actuator.

Adjust idler pulley (D) in the oblong hole (C) so that distance (B) between counterknife support (A) and the cut in side wall is to 10 mm (0.4 in.).

Run the belt drive for 15 seconds at full speed.

Fully extend and retract actuator several times.

Completely extend actuator.

Readjust distance (B) to 5 ± 3 mm (0.2 ± 0.12 in.).

IMPORTANT: With actuator in extended position, operator should not be able to turn the net feed rolls.

Proceed to test 6.

OUCC006,00006A4 -19-21MAY02-1/1

CC1019129 —UN—08FEB01

Checking Net Feed Roll Brake (Test 6)

IMPORTANT: Prior to this test, make sure that test 1 to 5 results are "OK". Proceed to the relevant tests described in this section.

IMPORTANT: The net feed roll brake adjustment must be performed before using the baler.

Proceed as follows:

1. Keep the net actuator retracted.
2. Release net feed roll brake lever (A).
3. Check that spring length (B) is within specification:

Specification

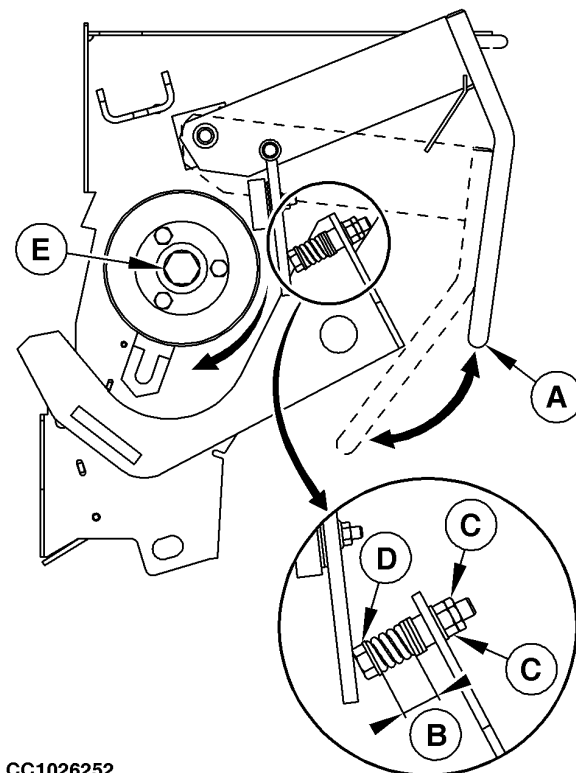
Spring—Length..... 20 mm
(0.78 in.)

If necessary, adjust spring length (B) as follows:

- a. Loosen the two lock nuts (C).
 - b. Turn bolt (D) clockwise to decrease or counterclockwise to increase spring length (B).
4. Apply net feed roll brake lever (A).

A—Net feed roll brake lever
B—Length
C—Lock nuts

D—Bolt
E—Rubber feed roll bolt



CC1026252

CC1026252 —UN—27OCT04

Continued on next page

OUC006,0001326 -19-01OCT07-1/2

5. Check that resisting torque to turn rubber feed roll bolt (E) clockwise is within specification:

Specification

Sheave—Torque turn.....70 N·m
(51 lb-ft)

If resisting torque is less than specifications, adjust net feed roll brake as follows:

- Release net feed roll brake lever (A).
- Loosen nuts (H).
- Transfer one or two shims (G) between rubber brake pad (I) and its support (F).
- Tighten nuts (H).
- Apply net feed roll brake lever (A).
- Check that resisting torque to turn rubber feed roll is within specification:

Specification

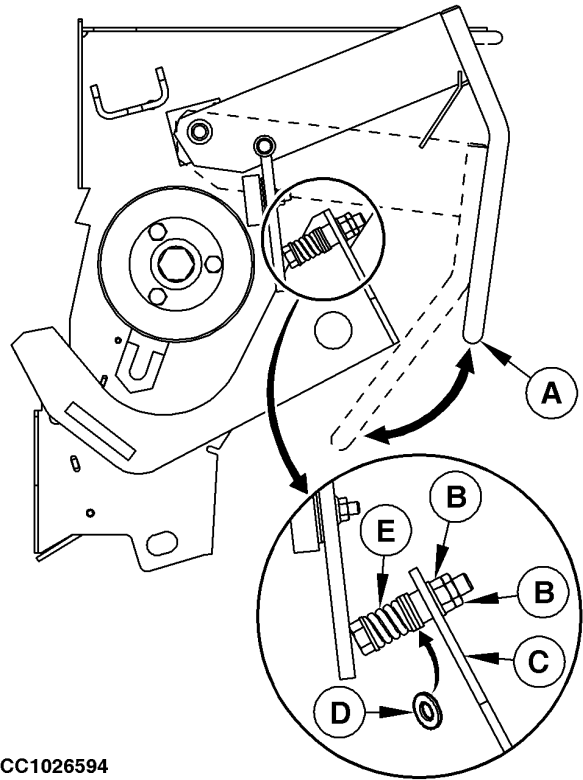
Sheave—Torque turn.....70 N·m
(51 lb-ft)

If resisting torque is always less than specification, proceed as follows:

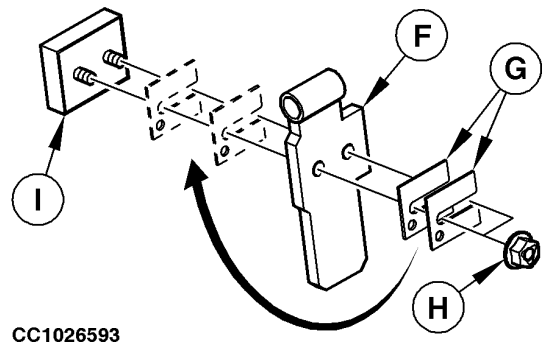
- Release net feed roll brake lever (A).
- Remove lock nuts (B).
- Add one washer (D) between spring (E) and support (C).
- Reinstall and tighten lock nuts (B).
- Apply net feed roll brake lever (A).
- Check resisting torque again.

Proceed to test 7.

A—Net feed roll brake lever	F—Support
B—Lock nuts	G—Shims
C—Support	H—Nuts
D—Washer	I—Rubber brake pad
E—Spring	



CC1026594



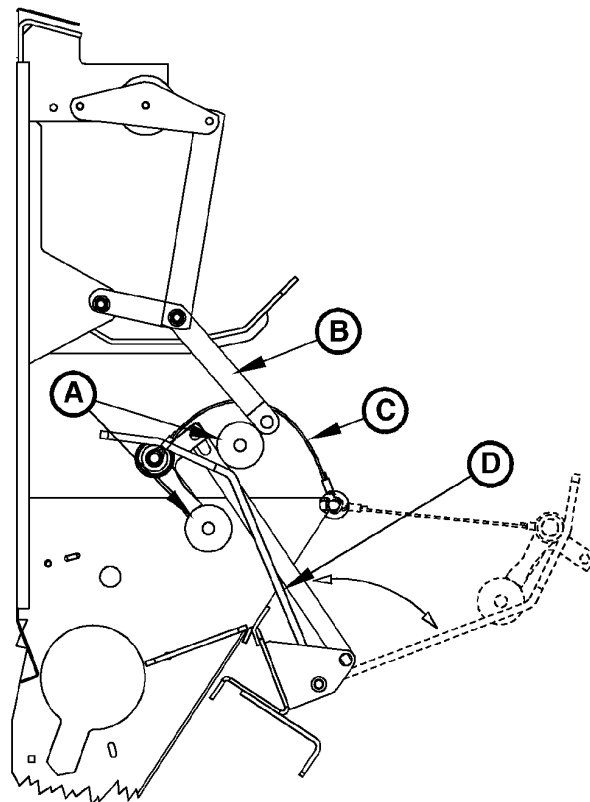
CC1026593

CC1026594 —UN—27OCT04

CC1026593 —UN—27OCT04

OUCC006,0001326 -19-01OCT07-2/2

Checking Tension Arms (Test 7)



CC1019169

CC1019169 — UN — 09FEB01

A—plastic rollers

B—Upper tension arm

C—Cables

D—Lower tension arm

IMPORTANT: Prior to carry out this test, make sure that test 1 to 6 results are “OK”. Proceed to the relevant tests described in this Section.

Proceed as follows:

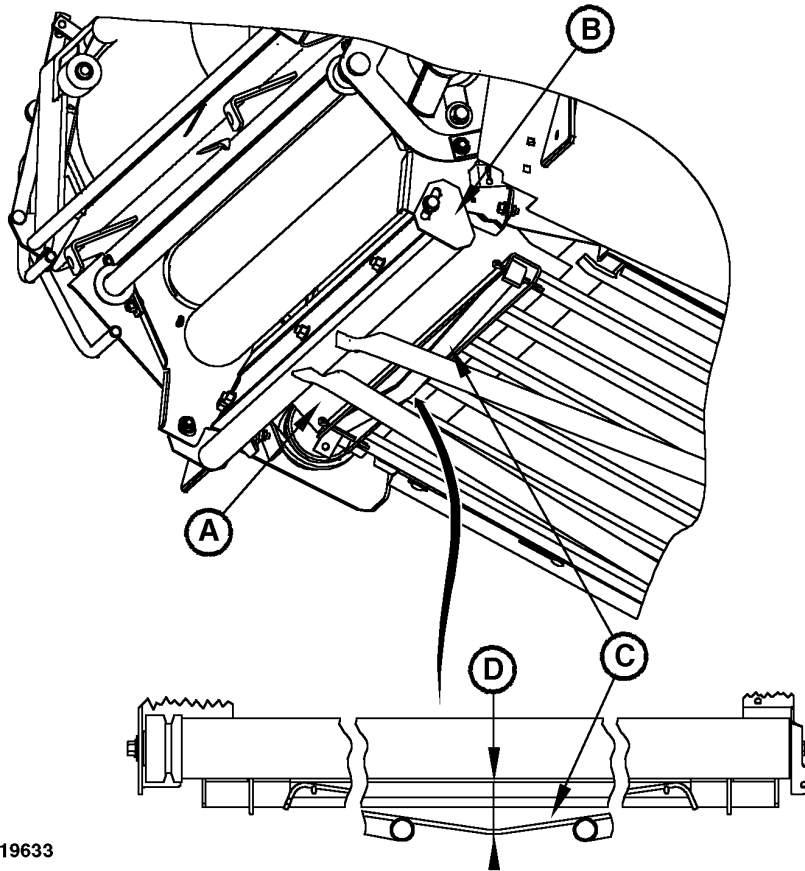
Check that plastic rollers (A) rotate freely. If plastic rollers do not turn with one hand, clean plastic roller axles or adjust maintain circlips.

Check that cables (C) bend as shown while closing lower tension arm (D) and that the cable loops do not prevent fully opening or closing of lower tension arm (D). Open and close at least twice to confirm cables (C) are operating properly.

Proceed to test 8.

OUCC006,000040A -19-06JUN01-1/1

Check Lower Net Guide Position (Test 8)



CC1019633

A—Net Guide Panel

B—Net Guide Bracket

C—Leaf Spring

D—Distance

IMPORTANT: Prior to carrying out this test, make sure that tests 1 to 7 are OK. Proceed to the relevant tests described in this section.

Check lower net guide function each time belt tracking adjustment has been performed or lower net guide has been removed. Proceed as follows:

Net Guide Position According to Roll No. 8

Check that lower net guide panel (A) is in contact with baler belts all along its width, at the level of lower rear gate roll No. 8.

NOTE: Keep lower net guide panel (A) as clean and smooth as possible.

Adjust lower net guide panel bracket (B) position to obtain specified distance (D).

Specification

Leaf Spring to Roll No.

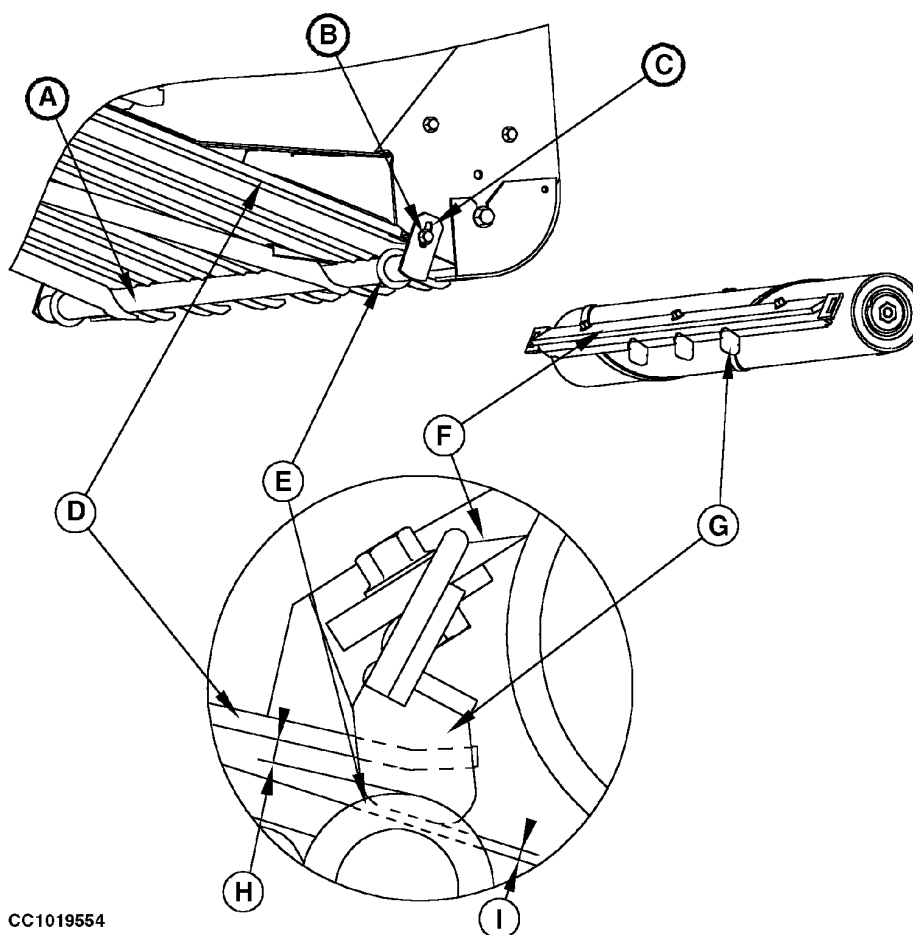
8—Distance.....60—65 mm
(2.4—2.6 in.)

Continued on next page

OUCC006,000195A -19-28JAN13-1/2

CC1019633—UN—10MAY01

Net Guide Position According to Roll No. 9



CC1019554

A—Net Guide
B—Net Guide Fixing Screw

C—Oblong Hole
D—Deflector
E—Washer

F—Scraper
G—Belt Guide
H—Distance

I—Distance

NOTE: Check that leaf spring pushes net guide against belts after pulling it down.

Check that distance (I) between belt guide (G) and lower net guide (A) is 2 to 3 mm (0.08 to 0.12 in.) and that distance (H) between washer (E) and deflector (D) is 2 to

3 mm (0.08 to 0.12 in.). To make these adjustments, use net guide oblong hole (C) and move belt guide (G).

Readjust scraper (F). See Adjust Lower Front Gate Roll (No. 9) Scraper in this section.

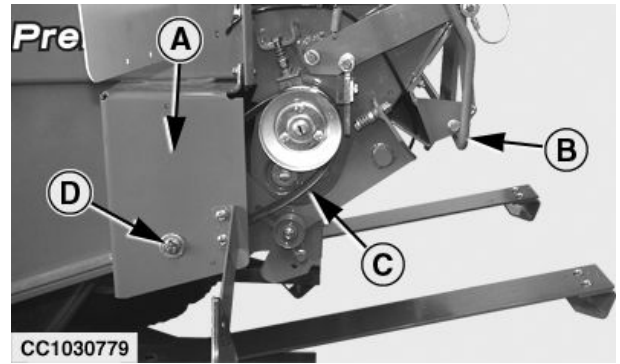
OUC006,000195A -19-28JAN13-2/2

CC1019554 —UN—18JUN01

Remove and Install Net Feed Roll Drive Belt

Remove net feed roll drive belt as follows:

1. Fully retract net actuator with monitor.
2. Slightly open gate to release pressure on baler belts.
3. Remove gate roll No. 8 fixing screw (D).
4. Remove roll support (A).
5. Release brake lever (B).
6. Remove drive belt (C).
7. Reverse removal procedure to install drive belt back in place.
8. Close the gate and check belt tracking. See Adjust Belt Tracking in this section.



A—Roll support
B—Brake lever

C—Drive belt
D—Roll No. 8 fixing screw

OUCC006,0001413 -19-17JUN08-1/1

CC1030779 —UN—14OCT08

Removing and Installing Net Knife

⚠ CAUTION: Prevent personal injury by wearing gloves to handle net knife.

Note position of knife cutting edge for reinstallation.

Open net tying cover.

Fully extend net actuator and disconnect actuator plug.

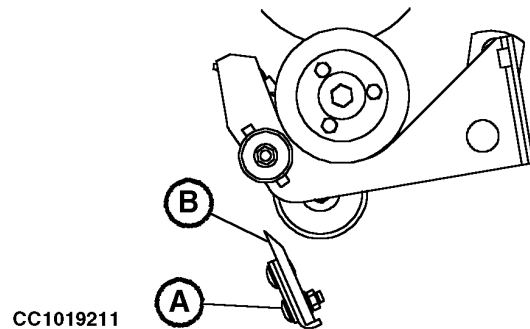
Remove fixing screws (A) of knife (B), then remove knife (B) from its brackets.

Install knife (B) on its brackets in the same position as before removal.

Secure knife by means of fixing screws (A). Tighten screws to 55 N·m (40 lb-ft).

Reconnect actuator plug and retract actuator. Close net tying cover.

IMPORTANT: Always carry out “Test 1” of net tying device check procedure after having



A—Fixing screws

B—Knife

installed net knife (see “Checking Knife and Counterknife Position” in this Section).

OUCC006,00006A5 -19-21MAY02-1/1

CC1019211 —UN—13FEB01

Removing Net Wrapped Around Feed Rolls

CAUTION: Avoid injury from entanglement in moving rolls. Disengage PTO and shut off tractor before servicing.

If net wraps around the rubber roll:

Open net tying cover.

Release feed roll brake.

IMPORTANT: Do not cut net material from rubber roll. Any knife cuts in the rubber roll covering may result in more frequent wrapping around the rolls and may require roll replacement.

Pull net material away from the supply roll. Cut net material.

Gather the free end of the net and lay over the top roll of wrap material.

Remove and discard all of the wrapped material, including all strings, staples, etc.

Wipe off feed rolls and check for any sticky material. If necessary, roll may be washed with soap and water. NEVER use solvents to clean rubber feed roll. Allow roll to dry before threading or wrappage may occur again.



CC1019209—UN—13FEB01

CC1019102—UN—09FEB01

CC1019210—UN—13FEB01

OUCC006,00006A6 -19-21MAY02-1/1

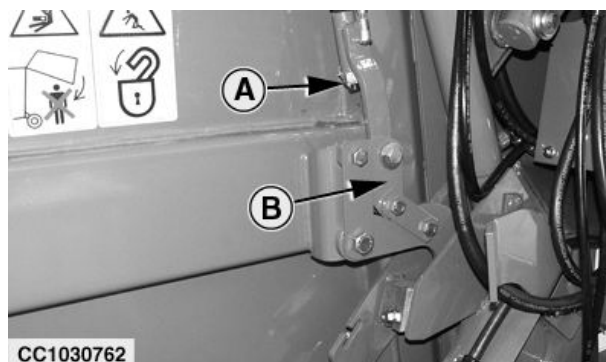
Adjust Gate Latch

1. Close the gate completely.
2. Adjust nut (A) until plate (B) just touches relief notch in hook.
3. Repeat procedure on opposite side.

NOTE: If gate and baler frame are not properly aligned, one latch may not be engaged while baling. See your John Deere dealer and have the gate straightened.

A—Nut

B—Plate



CC1030762—UN—24SEP08

OUCC006,0001579 -19-16SEP09-1/1

Adjust Gate Latch Stop

Close and latch gate.

Push gate latch (A) forward by hand. If the distance between gate latch stop (D) and stop pad (C) is not 2 ± 1 mm (0.08 ± 0.04 in.), insert shims as follows:

Loosen bolt (B).

NOTE: Shims are slotted so bolt does not have to be removed.

If distance is greater than 3 mm (0.12 in.), transfer shims from storage position to shimming position until a distance of 2 ± 1 mm (0.08 ± 0.04 in.) is obtained.

If distance is less than 1 mm (0.04 in.), transfer shims from shimming position to storage position until a distance of 2 ± 1 mm (0.08 ± 0.04 in.) is obtained.

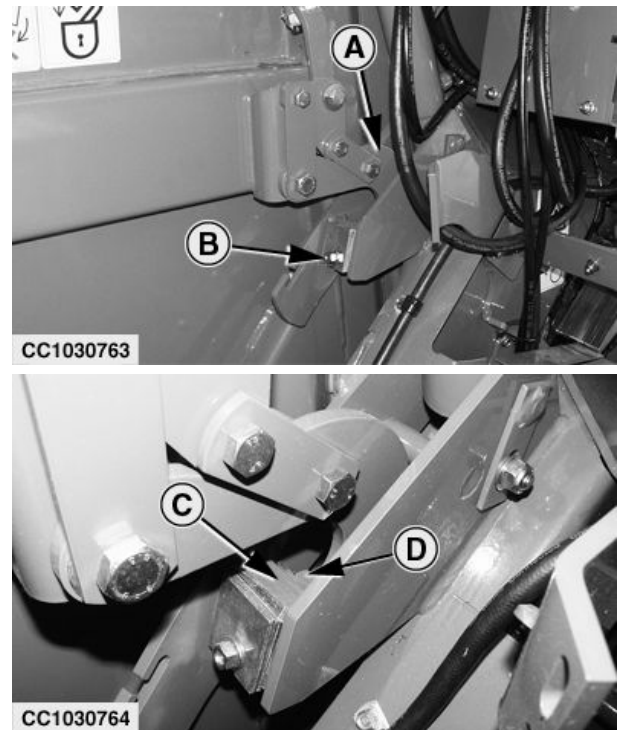
Center shims and stop pad and tighten bolt (B).

If necessary, repeat procedure on opposite side.

NOTE: If proper adjustment cannot be obtained, lower gate (tractor engine shut off). If there is a gap on one side of the gate only, see your John Deere dealer and have the gate straightened.

A—Gate Latch
B—Bolt

C—Stop Pad
D—Latch Stop



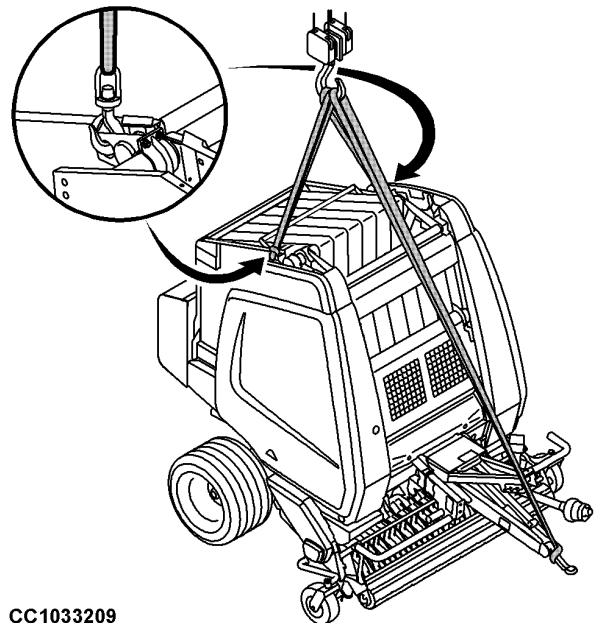
CC1030763 —UN—24SEP08

CC1030764 —UN—01OCT08

OUCC006,000157A -19-16SEP09-1/1

Round Baler Hanging Points

If you need to move the round baler without attaching it to a tractor, use the hanging points shown.



CC1033209

CC1033209 —UN—15OCT10

OUCC006,00016C7 -19-07OCT10-1/1

Remove and Install Wheel

1. Engage park brake and/or place transmission in PARK, shut off tractor engine and remove key.
2. Slightly loosen wheel nuts.
3. Position jack (A) under axle as shown.
4. Raise wheel off ground with jack (A).
5. Install stand to secure baler.
6. Remove wheel nuts and wheel.
7. Install wheel and fully screw in nuts manually.
8. Remove stand, lower the baler and remove jack (A).
9. Tighten wheel nuts diagonally to the following specification:

Specification

Wheel Nuts—Torque.....270 N·m
(200 lb.-ft.)

10. Check tire inflation. See [Tire Inflation](#) in Preparing the Baler section.



A—Jack

IMPORTANT: Whenever a wheel has been removed and installed, check wheel nut torque at intervals specified in [Break-In Period](#) section.

OUCC006,0001836 -19-10JAN13-1/1

Repair Gauge Wheel

Standard Gauge Wheel:

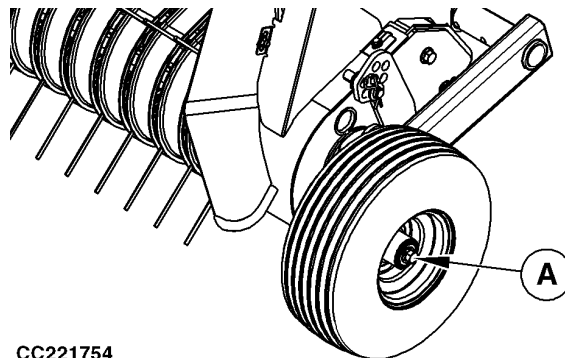
If screw (A) has been removed for repair, clean thread of screw (A) and hole, apply 242 Loctite® on screw.

Tighten screw (A) to the following specification:

Specification

Screw—Torque.....110 N·m
(81 lb.-ft.)

A—Gauge Wheel Pivot Screw



CC221754

Standard Gauge Wheel Shown

Loctite is a registered trademark of Henkel Corporation

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000567 -19-27FEB15-1/2

Caster Gauge Wheel:

NOTE: Install disc spring on both sides of the caster gauge wheel, with smaller inside diameter against screw heads and larger outside diameter against spacer.

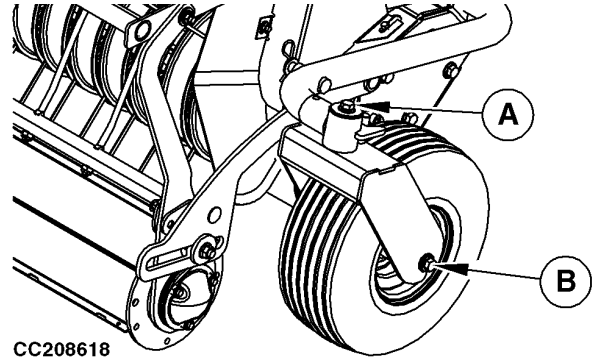
If screws (A) and (B) have been removed for repair, clean thread of screws (A), (B) and holes, apply 242 Loctite® on screws.

Tighten screws (A) and (B) to the following specification:

Specification	
Screws—Torque.....	110 N·m (81 lb.-ft.)

A—Gauge Wheel Fixing Screw B—Gauge Wheel Pivot Screw

Loctite is a registered trademark of Henkel Corporation



Caster Gauge Wheel Shown

CC208618 —UN—11APR14

DC82261,0000567 -19-27FEB15-2/2

Baler Application Service

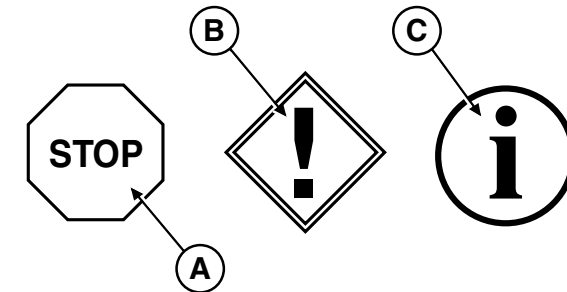
Warning Screens

The monitor supports caution and warning messages to inform about certain behaviors or error conditions in the system. Warning screens allow to monitor system operational problems.

WARNING:

A WARNING covers the full screen and is used to inform about critical malfunctions in the system which requires the full attention of the operator. The screen is designed as follows:

1. Icon (D) and the associated tone define the importance of the warning:
 - Icon (A) indicates that the machine has detected a serious malfunction which requires immediate action or damage to the machine may occur. Stop engine or system immediately.
 - Icon (B) indicates that the machine has detected a problem which requires action. The machine may be damaged or have significant performance reduction if it is not serviced or repaired.
 - Icon (C) indicates that the machine has detected a fault in a system or component. The machine can continue to operate without damage, however there may be degraded performance of certain functions.
2. Keyword strings (E) help to determine the importance and the cause of the warning and briefly define the area of malfunction.
3. The Diagnostic Trouble Code (G) in the upper right corner is made of SPN.FMI (Suspect Parameter Number.Failure Mode Identifier). This code is a language independent code which helps to identify more details for the active warning. Refer to the Diagnostic Trouble Code List in this section to get



ZX026095



CC1031855

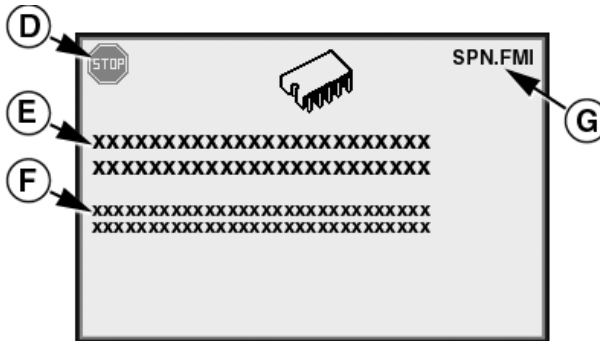
- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A—Stop Engine/System Icon | E—Keyword Strings |
| B—Service Alert Icon | F—Text Strings |
| C—Information Icon | G—Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) |
| D—Warning Icon | |

specific operational problem and recommended corrective action.

OUCC006,000158A -19-15OCT09-1/2

4. Text strings (F) provide more details about the cause of the warning and possible corrective action.
5. The warning screen will disappear automatically when the machine detects the correction of the malfunction.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| D—Warning Icon | F—Text Strings |
| E—Keyword Strings | G—Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) |



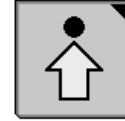
CC1031855

OUCC006,000158A -19-15OCT09-2/2

Recent Problems

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. Select Settings softkey.



CC1031612

DC82261,0000580 -19-31MAR15-1/5

2. Select Baler Diagnostic softkey.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09

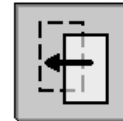
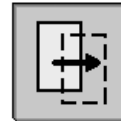


CC1031614

DC82261,0000580 -19-31MAR15-2/5

3. Select Next Page or Previous Page softkey to access pages: 2/5, 3/5 and 4/5.

CC1031853 —UN—30SEP09



CC1031853

DC82261,0000580 -19-31MAR15-3/5

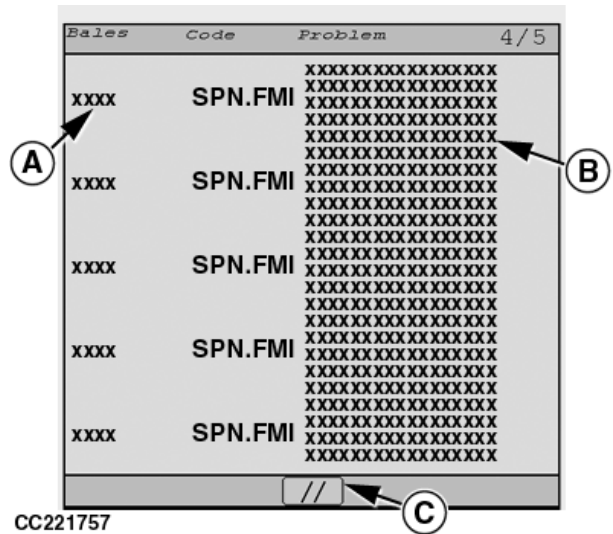
4. In the recent problem list, a history of the DTCs is updated each time a new DTC is generated. A recent problem text (B) allows the operator to quickly understand what was the problem.

Up to 10 DTCs can be stored at one time and will be displayed in the order in which they occurred. If more than 10 DTCs need to be stored, a first-in-first-out system is used with the earliest code being deleted.

The DTC (A) gives more information about the issue. It is made of SPN.FMI (Suspect Parameter Number.Failure Mode Indicator). See [Diagnostic Trouble Code List](#) in this section.

5. Select icon (C) to clear the recent problem list.

A—Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) C—Clear Recent Problem List
B—Recent Problem Text



CC221757

CC221757 —19—02DEC14

DC82261,0000580 -19-31MAR15-4/5

6. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,0000580 -19-31MAR15-5/5

Test Tractor Battery Voltage

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. Select Settings softkey.



CC1031612

DC82261,0000581 -19-26NOV14-1/5

2. Select Baler Diagnostic softkey.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09

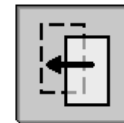


CC1031614

DC82261,0000581 -19-26NOV14-2/5

3. Select Next Page or Previous Page softkey to access page 3/3.

CC1031853 —UN—30SEP09



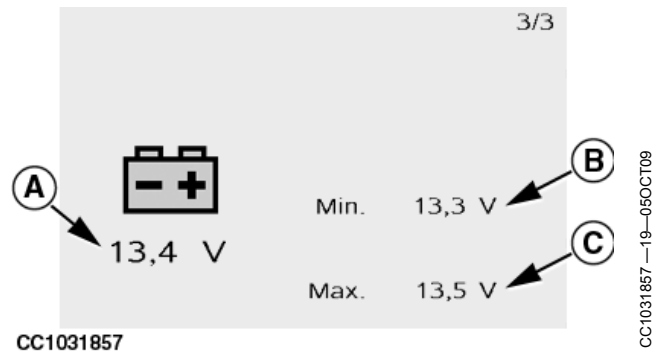
CC1031853

DC82261,0000581 -19-26NOV14-3/5

4. On page 3/3, values (A), (B) and (C) indicate the tractor battery voltage. The minimum (B) and maximum (C) battery voltage values are re-initialized each time the monitor is switched off.

A—Current Battery Voltage
B—Minimum Battery Voltage

C—Maximum Battery Voltage



CC1031857

DC82261,0000581 -19-26NOV14-4/5

5. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,0000581 -19-26NOV14-5/5

Diagnostic Trouble Code List

Suspect parameter numbers and failure mode indicators (SPN.FMI) are given in the following table:

Each time a diagnostic trouble code about a solenoid valve is displayed, the component is deactivated until next power cycle.

NOTE: If a diagnostic trouble code displayed is not listed below, see your John Deere dealer.

SPN.FMI	Description	Comment
RBC 168.16	Battery voltage too high (above 15.8 V).	Check tractor battery and alternator. See Test Tractor Battery Voltage in this section.
RBC 168.18	Battery voltage too low (below 11.2 V).	Check wires and connectors. Check battery. Check alternator. See Test Tractor Battery Voltage in this section.
RBC 186.18	No PTO speed detected.	Check sensor adjustment. See Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor SB362 in Service section. Check wires and connectors.
RBC 1563.12	Control unit ID error.	This control unit cannot be installed on this machine. Check if proper control unit is installed. Check proper harness connection to control unit. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 3509.03	Sensor supply voltage too high.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 3509.04	Sensor supply voltage too low.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 3755.16	Baler drive roll speed above proper operation.	Tying process stopped due to high drive roll speed. Ensure that baler is operated at appropriate PTO speed.
RBC 3755.18	Baler drive roll speed below proper operation.	Tying process stopped due to low drive roll speed. Ensure that baler is operated at appropriate PTO speed. Check sensor adjustment. See Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor SB362 in Service section. If baler rotation speed sensor is faulty, see Baler Rotation Speed Sensor in this section to disable the sensor.
RBC 3761.03	Drop floor solenoid valve open load or short to battery.	Check wires and connectors. Check drop floor solenoid valve.
RBC 3761.04	Drop floor solenoid valve short to ground.	Check wires and connectors. Check drop floor solenoid valve.
RBC 3762.03	Precutter knife solenoid valve open load or short to battery.	Check wires and connectors. Check precutter knife solenoid valve.
RBC 3762.04	Precutter knife solenoid valve short to ground.	Check wires and connectors. Check precutter knife solenoid valve.
RBC 3763.03	Pickup lift solenoid valve open load or short to battery.	Check wires and connectors. Check pickup lift solenoid valve.
RBC 3763.04	Pickup lift solenoid valve short to ground.	Check wires and connectors. Check pickup lift solenoid valve.
RBC 3764.07	No movement of the net tying actuator. Net tying actuator faulty or jammed.	Check net tying actuator. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 3764.11	Net tying actuator broken.	Check net tying actuator. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 3764.14	Net tying actuator stalled.	Check net tying device. Check net tying actuator. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 3766.07	No movement of the twine tying actuator. Twine tying actuator faulty or jammed.	Check twine tying actuator. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 3766.12	Twine tying actuator broken.	Check twine tying actuator. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 3766.14	Twine tying actuator stalled.	Check twine tying arms. Check twine tying actuator. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 3774.00	Gate position potentiometer out of range high.	Check potentiometer mounting.
RBC 3774.01	Gate position potentiometer out of range low.	Check potentiometer mounting.
RBC 3774.02	Gate not moving when commanded to move.	Check for proper gate operation.
RBC 3774.03	Gate position potentiometer shorted high.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 3774.04	Gate position potentiometer shorted to ground.	Check wires and connectors.

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000591 -19-01APR15-1/4

Baler Application Service

SPN.FMI	Description	Comment
RBC 3774.07	Gate not fully closed.	Check gate area. Check gate latch switches or sensors. See Adjust Gate Latch Switches SB333 and SB334 or Adjust Gate Latch Sensors SB336 and SB337 in Service section.
RBC 3774.11	Gate ajar. The gate is in an unknown position.	Check the gate status. Check gate latch switches or sensors. See Adjust Gate Latch Switches SB333 and SB334 or Adjust Gate Latch Sensors SB336 and SB337 in Service section. Check wires and connectors.
RBC 3774.13	Gate position potentiometer not calibrated.	Perform calibration. See Calibrate Gate Position Potentiometer RB331 in this section.
RBC 3774.16	Gate position error. Gate position potentiometer indicates opened gate. Gate latch switches or sensors indicate closed gate.	Check gate position potentiometer calibration. See Calibrate Gate Position Potentiometer RB331 in this section.
RBC 3774.17	Gate not fully opened.	Check gate position potentiometer calibration. See Calibrate Gate Position Potentiometer RB331 in this section.
RBC 3774.18	Gate position error. Gate position potentiometer indicates closed gate. Gate latch switches or sensors indicate opened gate.	Check gate position potentiometer calibration. See Calibrate Gate Position Potentiometer RB331 in this section.
RBC 3776.07	Bale stuck in the chamber.	Check if the bale is still in the chamber. Check bale discharging ramp sensor adjustment. See Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor SB341 or SB342 in Service section.
RBC 3776.11	Bale stuck under gate.	Check gate area.
RBC 3776.14	Bale stuck on ramp.	Check if the bale has left the bale discharging ramp. Check the bale discharging ramp.
RBC 3778.14	Unexpected movement of the precutter knives from the previous state.	Check that knives are in the desired position. Check precutter knife sensor.
RBC 3779.05	Unexpected oversized alarm.	Tie and eject current bale as soon as possible. Check the gate status. Check oversize switch or sensor adjustment. See Adjust Oversize Bale Switch SB312 or Adjust Oversize Bale Sensor SB317 in Service section. Check bale diameter potentiometer calibration. See Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311 in this section.
RBC 3779.06	Oversize not detected when expected.	Check the gate status. Check oversize switch or sensor adjustment. See Adjust Oversize Bale Switch SB312 or Adjust Oversize Bale Sensor SB317 in Service section. Check bale diameter potentiometer calibration. See Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311 in this section.
RBC 3779.14	Oversize bale.	Tie and eject current bale as soon as possible. Check bale diameter potentiometer calibration. See Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311 in this section. Check oversize switch or sensor adjustment. See Adjust Oversize Bale Switch SB312 or Adjust Oversize Bale Sensor SB317 in Service section.
RBC 3781.07	No net feeding.	Replace net roll. Check net routing. See Load Net Roll in Preparing the Baler section. Check wires and connectors. Check net cut switch or sensor adjustment. See Adjust Net Cut Switch SB412 or Adjust Net Cut Sensor SB414 in Service section.
RBC 3781.12	Net switch always closed or net cut sensor always detects rod.	Check wires and connectors. Check net cut switch or sensor adjustment. See Adjust Net Cut Switch SB412 or Adjust Net Cut Sensor SB414 in Service section.
RBC 3781.14	Net not cut.	Extend and then retract actuator to manually cut net. Check net cut switch or sensor adjustment. See Adjust Net Cut Switch SB412 or Adjust Net Cut Sensor SB414 in Service section. Check knife and counterknife position. See Check Knife and Counterknife Position (Test 1) in Service section.

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000591 -19-01APR15-2/4

SPN.FMI	Description	Comment
RBC 3782.07	One or both twines not feeding. One or both twine balls are empty. Twine missing around the bale.	Replace twine balls. Check twine routing. See Route Twine out of Boxes and Route Twine Through Guides in Preparing the Baler section. Calibrate twine tying actuator. See Calibrate Twine Tying Actuator MB421 in this section. Check twine pulley sensors adjustment. See Adjust Twine Pulley Sensors SB421 and SB422 in Service section. If one or both twine pulley sensors are faulty, see Adjust Twine Tying in Operating Baler Application section to disable these sensors.
RBC 3782.11	Twine feeding unexpectedly.	Check that twine tying actuator is fully retracted.
RBC 3782.14	Twine not cut.	Extend and then retract twine tying actuator to manually cut twine. Check cutter anvil adjustment. See Adjust Twine Cutter Anvil in Service section.
RBC 521078.14	Unexpected movement of the drop floor from the previous state.	Check that drop floor is in desired position. Check drop floor sensor.
RBC 521079.03	Soft core solenoid valve open load or short to battery.	Check wires and connectors. Check soft core solenoid valve.
RBC 521079.04	Soft core solenoid valve short to ground.	Check wires and connectors. Check soft core solenoid valve.
RBC 521083.03	Right bale shape potentiometer shorted high.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 521083.04	Right bale shape potentiometer shorted to ground.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 521083.13	Right bale shape potentiometer not calibrated.	Perform calibration. See Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322 in this section.
RBC 521083.16	Right bale shape potentiometer out of range high.	Check potentiometer mounting.
RBC 521083.18	Right bale shape potentiometer out of range low.	Check potentiometer mounting.
RBC 521084.03	Left bale shape potentiometer shorted high.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 521084.04	Left bale shape potentiometer shorted to ground.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 521084.13	Left bale shape potentiometer not calibrated.	Perform calibration. See Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322 in this section.
RBC 521084.16	Left bale shape potentiometer out of range high.	Check potentiometer mounting.
RBC 521084.18	Left bale shape potentiometer out of range low.	Check potentiometer mounting.
RBC 521086.03	Bale diameter potentiometer shorted high.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 521086.04	Bale diameter potentiometer shorted to ground.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 521086.13	Bale diameter potentiometer not calibrated.	Perform calibration. See Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311 in this section.
RBC 521086.14	Measured bale diameter near adjusted bale diameter after power cycle. Bale in chamber at power-up.	Automatic start of tying cycle is disabled for the current bale. Manually start tying cycle at the desired bale diameter.
RBC 521086.16	Bale diameter potentiometer out of range high.	Check potentiometer mounting.
RBC 521086.18	Bale diameter potentiometer out of range low.	Check potentiometer mounting.
RBC 522016.07	Ramp sensor problem. Gate position potentiometer now used for bale ejection.	Check bale discharging ramp sensor adjustment. See Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor SB341 or SB342 in Service section. Check wires and connectors.
RBC 522017.07	Broken cleaning auger chain.	Check cleaning auger sensor. See Adjust Cleaning Auger Sensor SB363 in Service section. Check wires and connectors. Repair cleaning auger drive chain.
RBC 522022.02	Calibration mirror EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	Calibration EEPROM reset to default. Baler setup and calibration may be required.
RBC 522023.02	Field mirror EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	Field EEPROM reset to default. Baler setup and calibration may be required.
RBC 522024.02	User mirror EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	User EEPROM reset to default. Baler setup and calibration may be required.
RBC 522025.02	Automation mirror EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	Automation EEPROM reset to default. Baler setup and calibration may be required. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 522026.02	Dealer mirror EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	Dealer EEPROM reset to default. Baler setup and calibration may be required. See your John Deere dealer.

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000591 -19-01APR15-3/4

Baler Application Service

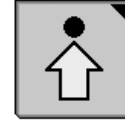
SPN.FMI	Description	Comment
RBC 522027.02	Factory mirror EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	Factory EEPROM reset to default. Baler setup and calibration may be required. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 522028.02	Calibration EEPROM, checksum failure.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522028.12	Calibration EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522029.02	Field EEPROM, checksum failure.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522029.12	Field EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522030.02	User EEPROM, checksum failure.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522030.12	User EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522031.02	Automation EEPROM, checksum failure.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522031.12	Automation EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522032.02	Dealer EEPROM, checksum failure.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522032.12	Dealer EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522033.02	Factory EEPROM, checksum failure.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 522033.12	Factory EEPROM, checksum failure on last power down.	No further action required, failure corrected.
RBC 523108.13	Control unit output problem relating to net or twine tying device.	Net or twine operation may have reduced performance. Replace control unit at earliest convenience. See your John Deere dealer.
RBC 524063.03	Net tying actuator short to battery.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 524063.04	Net tying actuator short to ground.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 524063.05	Net tying actuator open load.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 524093.03	Twine tying actuator short to battery.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 524093.04	Twine tying actuator short to ground.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 524093.05	Twine tying actuator open load.	Check wires and connectors.
RBC 524151.07	The pickup is plugged. Stop the tractor (automation level 1). Tractor is stopping automatically (automation level 2).	Unplug the pickup. See <u>Unplug Rotary Feeder in Automation Mode</u> in Operating Baler in Automation Mode section. Check baler rotation speed sensor adjustment. See <u>Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor SB362</u> in Service section.

DC82261,0000591 -19-01APR15-4/4

Test Sensors and Switches

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.



CC1031612

DC82261,0000573 -19-21NOV14-1/6

2. Select Baler Diagnostic softkey.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09

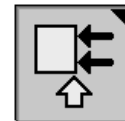


CC1031614

DC82261,0000573 -19-21NOV14-2/6

3. Select Input Test softkey.

CC1031803 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031803

DC82261,0000573 -19-21NOV14-3/6

4. The Input Test function is used to test sensors and switches.

Description

- Symbol (A) shows the sensor or the switch status (deactivated or activated).
- Counter (B) informs the operator if a sensor or a switch has detected its target during a cycle.

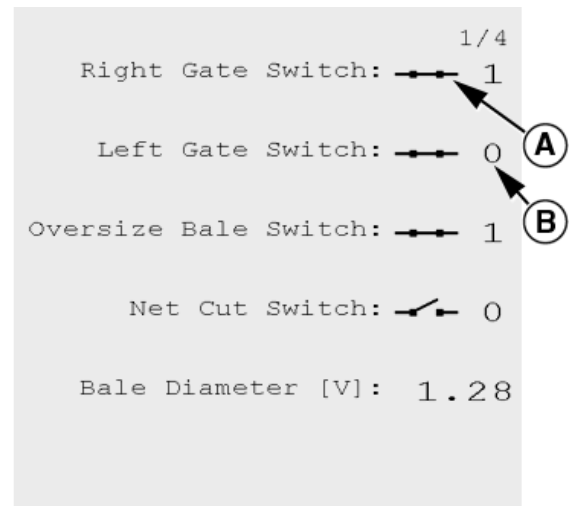
Test Procedures

To activate sensors, place target plate, a piece of metal or a magnet in front of the sensor. The counter (B) is increased by one each time switch or sensor is activated or deactivated.

NOTE: Counter (B) is reset after each page switching.

For sensor location, see Locate Baler Electrical Components (Baler Up to S.N. 134999) or Locate Baler Electrical Components (Baler from S.N. 135000) in Service section.

If a test is not OK, see your John Deere dealer.



CC1038518

A—Status Symbol

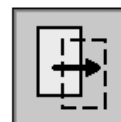
B—Counter

CC1038518 —19—27SEP12

DC82261,0000573 -19-21NOV14-4/6

5. Select Next Page or Previous Page softkey to switch from one page to another.

CC1031853 —UN—30SEP09



CC1031853

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000573 -19-21NOV14-5/6

6. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,0000573 -19-21NOV14-6/6

Test Electro-Hydraulic Components

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.



CC1031612

OUCC006,0001969 -19-31JAN13-1/7

2. Select Baler Diagnostic softkey.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09

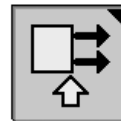


CC1031614

OUCC006,0001969 -19-31JAN13-2/7

3. Select Output Test softkey.
4. The Output Test function is used to test electro-hydraulic components. To activate component, select and activate the desired icon.

CC1031804 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031804

CAUTION: During the test of electro-hydraulic components, parts of the machine will move. Before performing a test, take care area of the machine is clear from people or foreign objects.

IMPORTANT: If one of these tests is not OK, see your John Deere dealer.

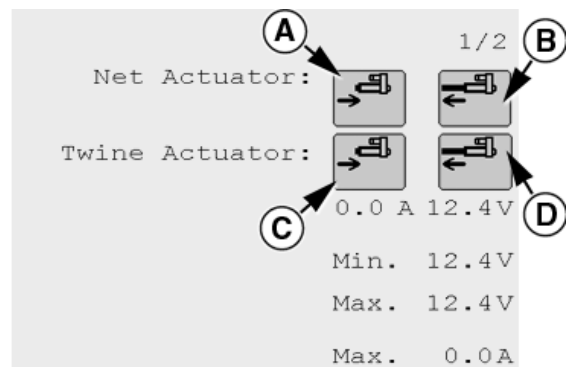
OUCC006,0001969 -19-31JAN13-3/7

5. Page 1/2:

- Icon (A) is used to retract the net tying actuator.
Icon (B) is used to extend the net tying actuator.
Icon (C) is used to retract the twine tying actuator.
Icon (D) is used to extend the twine tying actuator.

A—Retract Net Tying Actuator
B—Extend Net Tying Actuator

C—Retract Twine Tying Actuator
D—Extend Twine Tying Actuator



CC1033669

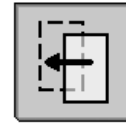
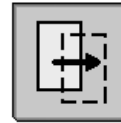
CC1033669 —19—10JAN11

Continued on next page

OUCC006,0001969 -19-31JAN13-4/7

6. Select Next Page or Previous Page softkey to switch from one page to another.

CC1031853 —UN—30SEP09



CC1031853

OUC006,0001969 -19-31JAN13-5/7

7. Page 2/2:

Status symbol (A) shows the component status (deactivated or activated).

Icon (B) is used to test the soft core solenoid valve.

Icon (C) is used to test the solenoid valve for precutter knives.

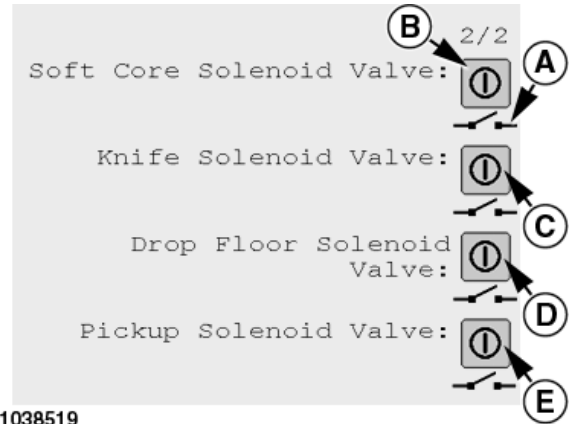
Icon (D) is used to test the drop floor solenoid valve.

Icon (E) is used to test the pickup lift solenoid valve.

A—Status Symbol
B—Soft Core Solenoid Valve
C—Solenoid Valve for Precutter Knives

D—Drop Floor Solenoid Valve
E—Pickup Lift Solenoid Valve

CC1038519



CC1038519 —19—31JAN13

OUC006,0001969 -19-31JAN13-6/7

8. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

OUC006,0001969 -19-31JAN13-7/7

Test Actuator Electrical Consumption

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. From the baler application main page, select "Settings" softkey.



CC1031612

OUC006,00016F7 -19-07JAN11-1/5

2. Select "Baler Diagnostic" softkey.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09



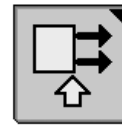
CC1031614

Continued on next page

OUC006,00016F7 -19-07JAN11-2/5

3. Select "Output Test" softkey.

CC1031804 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031804

OUCC006,00016F7 -19-07JAN11-3/5

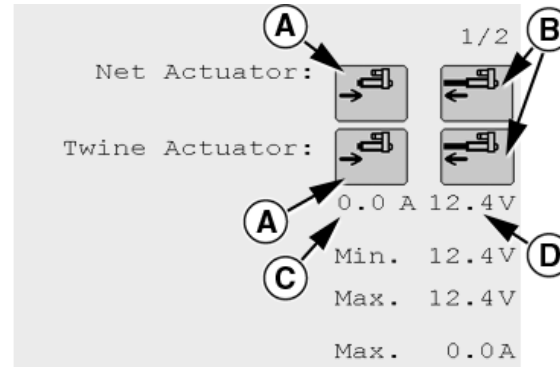
4. Select icon (A) or (B) to extend or retract the actuator of the desired tying system.

Amperage value (C) indicates the amperage reading of the twine or net actuator.

While actuator motor is operating during mid stroke (no load), amperage value (C) should be between 2 and 8 amperes.

Continue to activate the actuator to full stroke position. When twine actuator is fully extended or retracted, display should show stall amperage between 18 and 27 amperes. When net actuator is fully extended or retracted, display should show stall amperage between 12 and 20 amperes.

- Readings below normal indicate low tractor voltage, or poor or corroded harness connections.
- Readings above normal indicate tying mechanical problem, faulty harness or faulty actuator.
- Amperage spike reading indicates tying mechanical obstruction.



CC1033670

A—Retract Actuator
B—Extend Actuator

C—Amperage Value
D—Voltage Value

Value (D) indicates the voltage in the electrical circuit.

OUCC006,00016F7 -19-07JAN11-4/5

5. Select "Main Page" softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1031611 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031611

OUCC006,00016F7 -19-07JAN11-5/5

Calibrate Bale Diameter Potentiometer RB311

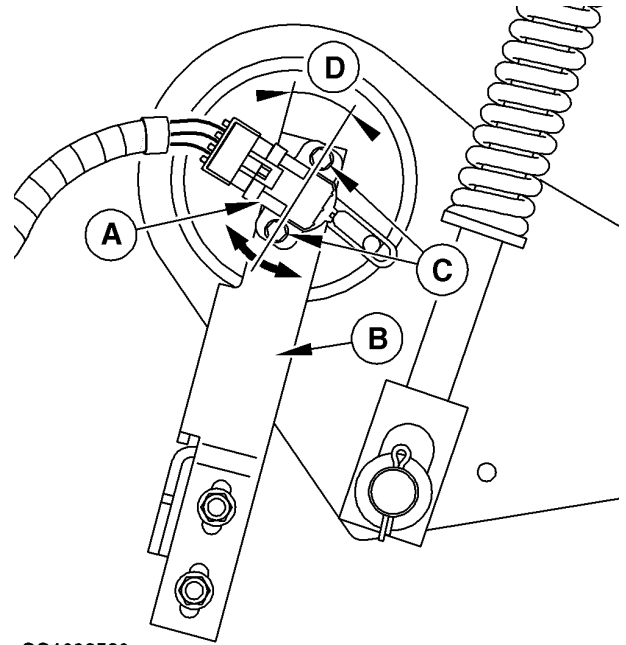
1. For baler up to S.N. 134999, adjust potentiometer (A) angle as follows. Otherwise go to next step.
 - a. Loosen mounting screws (C) then rotate potentiometer (A) until specified angle (D) with regard to bracket (B) is obtained.

Specification

Bale Diameter Potentiometer to Potentiometer Bracket—Angle (D)..... 17°

- b. Tighten mounting screws (C).

A—Bale Diameter Potentiometer
B—Potentiometer Bracket
C—Mounting Screws
D—Angle



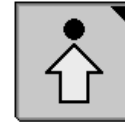
CC1038520

CC1038520 —UN—15OCT12

OUCC006,00017DC -19-31JAN13-1/7

2. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031612

OUCC006,00017DC -19-31JAN13-2/7

3. Select Baler Calibration softkey.

CC1031658 —UN—16SEP09

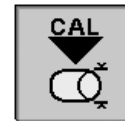


CC1031658

OUCC006,00017DC -19-31JAN13-3/7

4. Select Bale Diameter Calibration softkey.

CC1031809 —UN—16SEP09



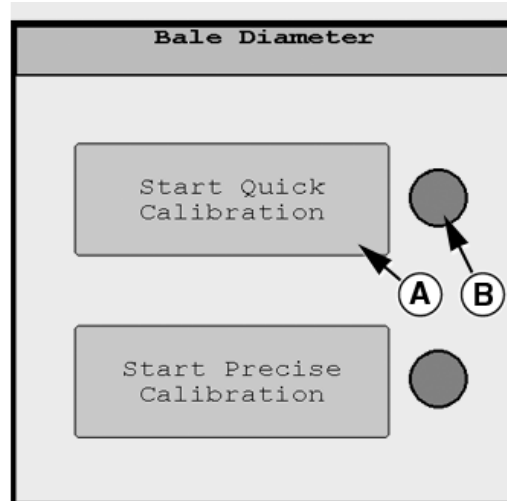
CC1031809

Continued on next page

OUCC006,00017DC -19-31JAN13-4/7

5. Select icon (A) to start a quick calibration.
6. Follow instructions described on the screen to calibrate the bale diameter potentiometer.
7. If the quick calibration is successful, the color showing the calibration status (B) turns from red to green.

A—Start Quick Calibration B—Calibration Status



CC1038521

CC1038521 —19—05OCT12

OUCC006,00017DC -19-31JAN13-5/7

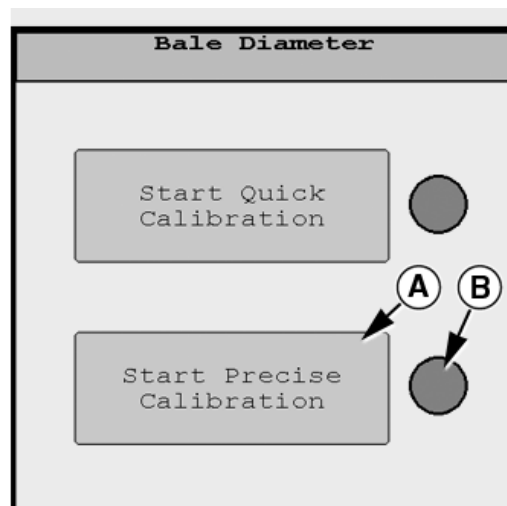
8. Select icon (A) to start a precise calibration.
- NOTE: Precise calibration icon (A) is not available if the quick calibration was not successful.*

Depending on the crop baled, the measured bale diameter might not correspond to the desired diameter adjusted on monitor. With the precise calibration, the monitor can be fine tuned to recover the real desired bale diameter.

9. Follow instructions described on the screen to calibrate the bale diameter potentiometer.

NOTE: To check actual bale diameter, measure bale horizontally and vertically on both ends. Add the four measurements together and divide by four to determine average bale diameter.

10. If the precise calibration is successful, the color showing the calibration status (B) turns from red to green.



CC1038522

CC1038522 —19—05OCT12

A—Start Precise Calibration B—Calibration Status

OUCC006,00017DC -19-31JAN13-6/7

11. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

OUCC006,00017DC -19-31JAN13-7/7

Calibrate Bale Shape Potentiometers RB321 and RB322

1. For baler up to S.N. 134999, remove fixing screws (A) and shield (B) of potentiometer. Otherwise go to step 4.
2. Check that potentiometer (C) and bracket (D) are aligned.
 - a. Loosen mounting screws (E) then rotate potentiometer (C) until potentiometer (C) and bracket (D) are aligned as shown.
 - b. Tighten mounting screws (E).
3. Reinstall shield of potentiometer.

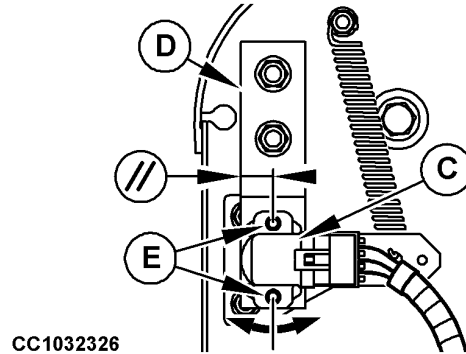
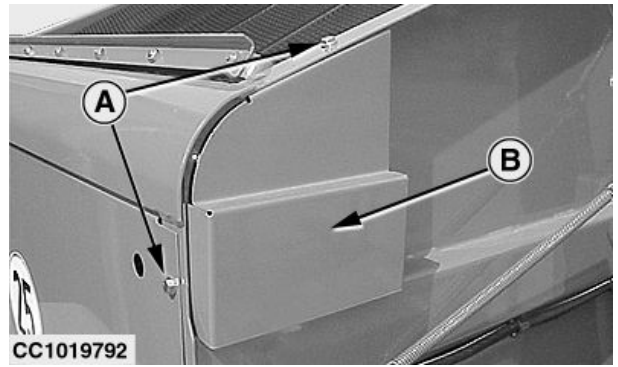
A—Fixing Screws

B—Shield

C—Bale Shape Potentiometer

D—Potentiometer Bracket

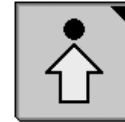
E—Mounting Screws



OUCC006,00017DD -19-31JAN13-1/7

4. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031612

OUCC006,00017DD -19-31JAN13-2/7

5. Select Baler Calibration softkey.

CC1031658 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031658

OUCC006,00017DD -19-31JAN13-3/7

6. Select Right Bale Shape Calibration softkey.

CC1031811 —UN—16SEP09

NOTE: The adjusting procedure is the same for both sides. Use the appropriate softkey for each side.



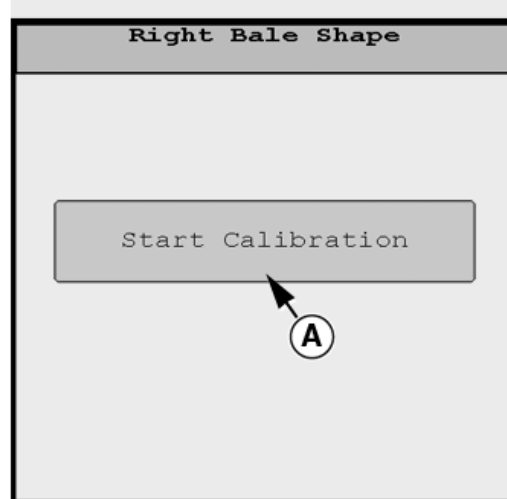
CC1031811

Continued on next page

OUCC006,00017DD -19-31JAN13-4/7

7. Select icon (A) to start calibration of the right bale shape potentiometer.
Follow instructions described on the screen to calibrate the right bale shape potentiometer.

A—Start Calibration



CC1038523

CC1038523 —19—05OCT12

OUCC006,00017DD -19-31JAN13-5/7

8. Repeat procedure for the left bale shape potentiometer by selecting Left Bale Shape Calibration softkey.

CC1031810 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031810

OUCC006,00017DD -19-31JAN13-6/7

9. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

OUCC006,00017DD -19-31JAN13-7/7

Calibrate Gate Position Potentiometer RB331

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.



CC1031612

OUCC006,00017DE -19-31JAN13-1/5

2. Select Baler Calibration softkey.

CC1031658 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031658

Continued on next page

OUCC006,00017DE -19-31JAN13-2/5

3. Select Gate Position Calibration softkey.

CC1031812 —UN—16SEP09



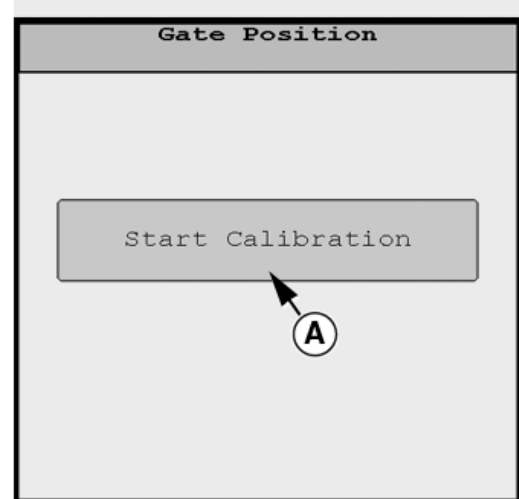
CC1031812

OUC006,00017DE -19-31JAN13-3/5

4. Select icon (A) to start calibration of the gate position potentiometer.

Follow instructions described on the screen to calibrate the gate position potentiometer.

A—Start Calibration



CC1038524

CC1038524 —19—05OCT12

OUC006,00017DE -19-31JAN13-4/5

5. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

OUC006,00017DE -19-31JAN13-5/5

Calibrate Twine Tying Actuator MB421

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.



CC1031612

OUC006,00017DB -19-31JAN13-1/5

2. Select Baler Calibration softkey.

CC1031658 —UN—16SEP09



CC1031658

Continued on next page

OUC006,00017DB -19-31JAN13-2/5

3. Select Twine Tying Actuator Calibration softkey.

CC1031808 —UN—16SEP09

NOTE: *Twine Tying Actuator Calibration softkey is only available when twine tying system is selected. See Select Tying System in Operating Baler Application section.*

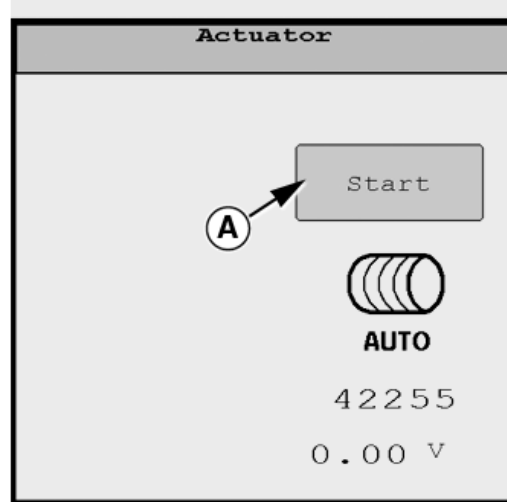


CC1031808

OUC006,00017DB -19-31JAN13-3/5

4. Select icon (A) to start calibration of the twine tying actuator. The twine tying actuator will fully extend, and then will fully retract. When the twine tying actuator is successfully calibrated, the monitor beeps continuously for 3 seconds.

A—Start Actuator Calibration



CC1038535

CC1038535 —19—05OCT12

OUC006,00017DB -19-31JAN13-4/5

5. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

OUC006,00017DB -19-31JAN13-5/5

Adjust Bale Shape Sensitivity

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.



CC1031612

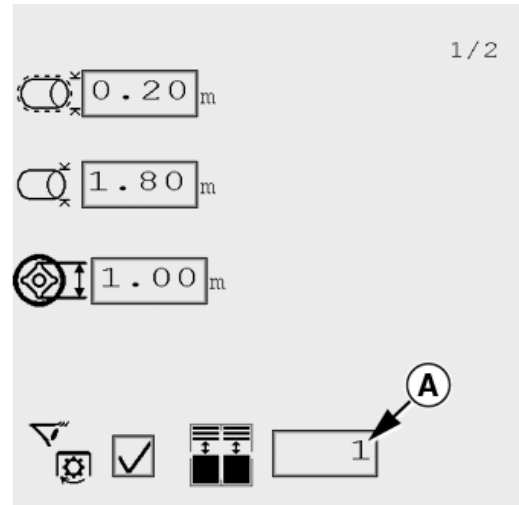
Continued on next page

DC82261,0000582 -19-02DEC14-1/3

2. Select input box (A) and set the bale shape sensitivity from 1 (low sensitivity) to 5 (high sensitivity).

NOTE: The initial factory setting is 1.

A—Bale Shape Sensitivity



CC228074

CC228074 —UN—02DEC14

DC82261,0000582 -19-02DEC14-2/3

3. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,0000582 -19-02DEC14-3/3

Baler Rotation Speed Sensor

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. Select Settings softkey.



CC1031612

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000583 -19-31MAR15-1/3

2. Check box (A) allows the operator to enable or disable the baler rotation speed sensor.

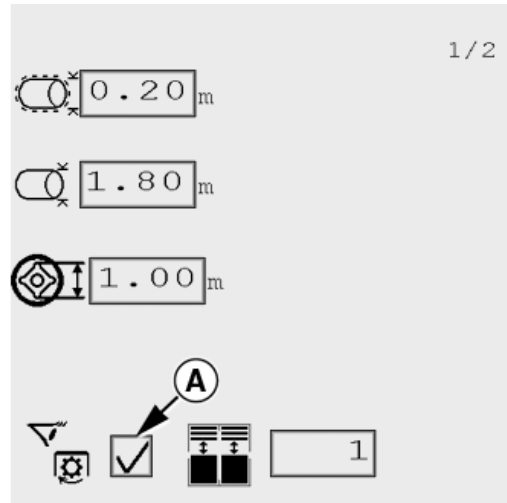
NOTE: Disabling the baler rotation speed sensor allows the baler to be operated with a defective sensor.

- Tick check box (A) to enable the baler rotation speed sensor.
- Do not tick check box (A) to disable the baler rotation speed sensor.

3. Before deactivating this function, check sensor adjustment. See [Adjust Baler Rotation Speed Sensor](#) in Service section.

IMPORTANT: The baler rotation speed sensor must be activated. Operating the baler with baler rotation speed sensor disabled may cause malfunctions. See your John Deere dealer to replace defective parts as soon as possible.

A—Baler Rotation Speed Sensor



CC228075

CC228075 —UN—02DEC14

DC82261,0000583 -19-31MAR15-2/3

4. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,0000583 -19-31MAR15-3/3

Adjust Task Controller (Baler Up to Software Version 06.10)

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

NOTE: To find software version, see [Software Parameters](#) in this section.



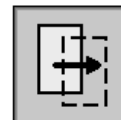
CC1031612

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.

DC82261,000058B -19-11DEC14-1/4

2. Select Next Page or Previous Page softkey to access page 2/2.

CC1031853 —UN—30SEP09



CC1031853

Continued on next page

DC82261,000058B -19-11DEC14-2/4

3. Set task controller as follows:

- a. Enable or disable the Task Controller function by using check box (A).

NOTE: When task controller is enabled, field bale counter can be interrupted.

- Tick check box (A) to enable the Task Controller function.
- Do not tick check box (A) to disable the Task Controller function.

- b. Select and activate drop-down list (B) then select the desired connection type: (C), (D), (E), (F) or (G).

NOTE: For detailed description of the task controller function, see your monitor operator's manual.

A—Enable or Disable Task Controller

B—Connection Type

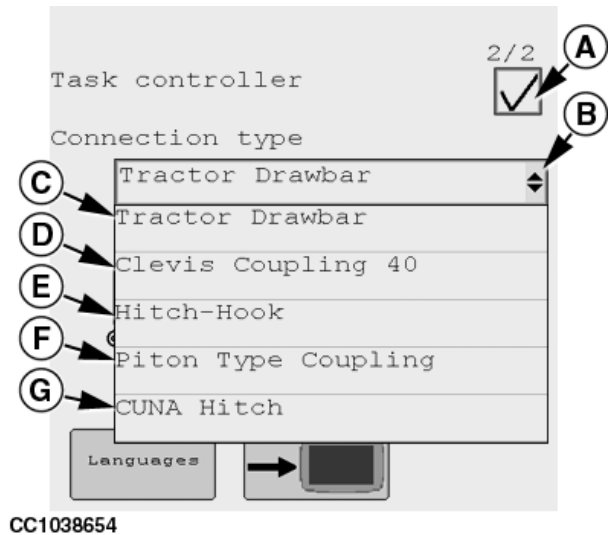
C—Tractor Drawbar

D—Clevis Coupling 40

E—Hitch Hook

F—Piton-Type Coupling

G—CUNA Hitch



CC1038654 —19—18OCT12

DC82261,000058B -19-11DEC14-3/4

4. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,000058B -19-11DEC14-4/4

Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor SB341 or SB342

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.



CC1031612

DC82261,000058B -19-15DEC14-1/4

2. Select Next Page or Previous Page softkey to access page 2/2.

CC1031853 —UN—30SEP09



CC1031853

Continued on next page

DC82261,000058B -19-15DEC14-2/4

3. Check box (A) allows the operator to enable or disable the bale discharging ramp sensor.

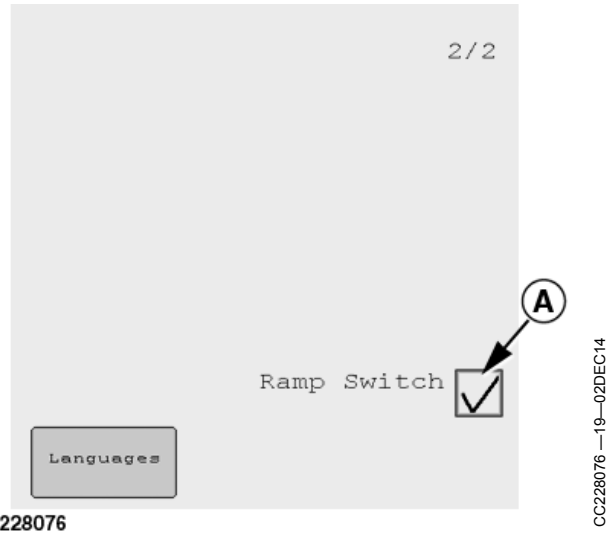
NOTE: Disabling the bale discharging ramp sensor allows the baler to be operated with a defective sensor.

- Tick check box (A) to enable the bale discharging ramp sensor.
- Do not tick check box (A) to disable the bale discharging ramp sensor.

4. Before disabling this function, check sensor adjustment. See [Adjust Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor SB341 or SB342](#) in Service section.

IMPORTANT: The bale discharging ramp sensor must be activated. Operating the baler with bale discharging ramp sensor disabled may cause malfunctions. See your John Deere dealer to replace defective parts as soon as possible.

A—Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor



DC82261,0000585 -19-15DEC14-3/4

5. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,0000585 -19-15DEC14-4/4

Load Languages (Monitor with Memory Card Reader or USB Port Only)

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.

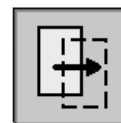


CC1031612

DC82261,0000586 -19-01DEC14-1/4

2. Select Next Page or Previous Page softkey to access page 2/2.

CC1031853 —UN—30SEP09



CC1031853

Continued on next page

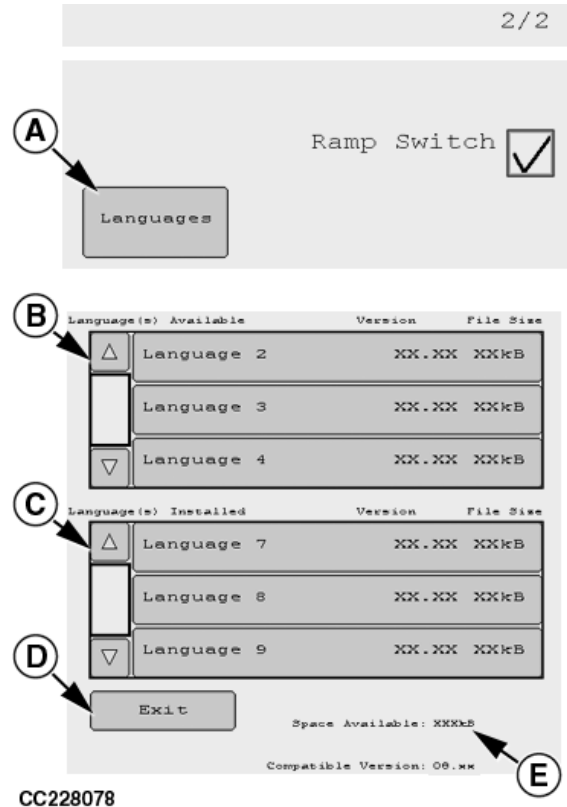
DC82261,0000586 -19-01DEC14-2/4

3. Select icon (A) to access the language server page.
 - a. Select and activate the desired language in languages available list (B).
 - b. The language is added in languages installed list (C).
 - c. The memory space available (E) is updated according to the languages added.
 - d. To remove a language, select and activate a language in languages installed list (C).
 - e. To leave the language server page, select icon (D).
 - f. To display the desired language on the monitor, select the language on the display settings page of the monitor. For more information see your monitor operator's manual.

NOTE: To add a new language in the languages available list (B) or for more information, see your John Deere dealer or visit www.StellarSupport.com.

A—Language Server Icon
B—Languages Available List
C—Languages Installed List

D—Exit Icon
E—Memory Space Available



CC228078 —19-25MAR15

DC82261,0000586 -19-01DEC14-3/4

4. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,0000586 -19-01DEC14-4/4

Switch Baler Application from Current Virtual Terminal to Another (Baler Up to Software Version 06.10)

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

NOTE: To find software version, see [Software Parameters](#) in this section.



CC1031612

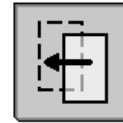
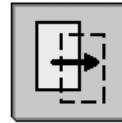
1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000587 -19-11DEC14-1/4

2. Select Next Page or Previous Page softkey to access page 2/2.

CC1031853 —UN—30SEP09



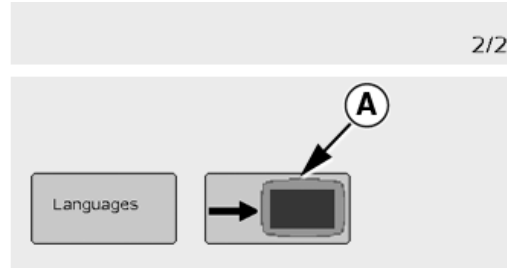
CC1031853

DC82261,0000587 -19-11DEC14-2/4

3. Select icon (A) to switch baler application from the current virtual monitor to another virtual terminal already connected on CAN bus.

NOTE: This function is not available at this time.

A—Next Virtual Terminal



CC1031882

CC1031882 —19—13OCT09

DC82261,0000587 -19-11DEC14-3/4

4. Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,0000587 -19-11DEC14-4/4

Switch Baler Application from Current Virtual Terminal to Another (Baler from Software Version 07.12)

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

NOTE: To find software version, see [Software Parameters](#) in this section.



CC1031612

1. From the baler application main page, select Settings softkey.

DC82261,0000588 -19-12DEC14-1/4

2. Select Move Application to Next Screen softkey.

CC228077 —UN—02DEC14



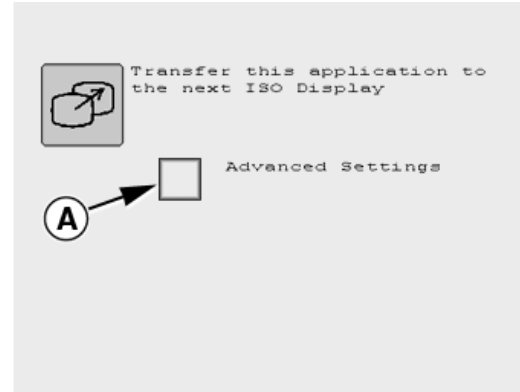
CC228077

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000588 -19-12DEC14-2/4

3. Tick check box (A) to display the advanced settings.

A—Advanced Settings



CC228079

CC228079 —19—02DEC14

DC82261,0000588 -19-12DEC14-3/4

4. If two monitors are used, tick check box (B) on the monitor where the application needs to be launched, when starting the machine.

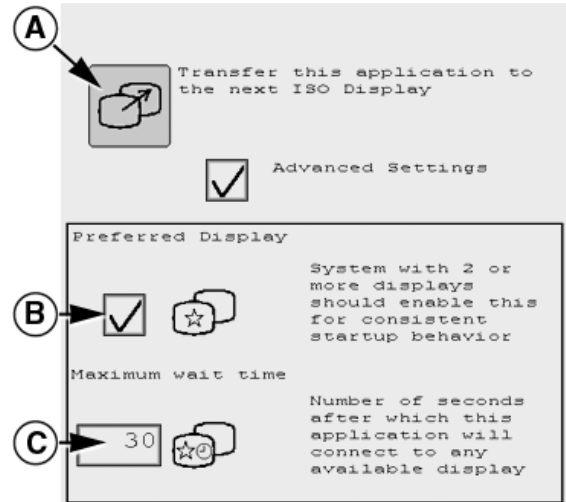
Timer (C) is used to start the monitors before the application is launched. This timer is adjustable from 0 to 600 seconds.

Switch baler application from the current virtual monitor to another virtual terminal already connected on CAN bus by selecting the Move Application to Next Screen softkey (A).

NOTE: Apply reverse procedure to come back on first monitor.

A—Move Application to Next Screen Softkey
B—Preferred Display

C—Delay Before the Application Starts



CC228080

CC228080 —19—11DEC14

DC82261,0000588 -19-12DEC14-4/4

Software Parameters

CC1031612 —UN—16SEP09

1. Select Settings softkey.



CC1031612

DC82261,0000589 -19-11DEC14-1/4

2. Select Baler Diagnostic softkey.

CC1031614 —UN—16SEP09



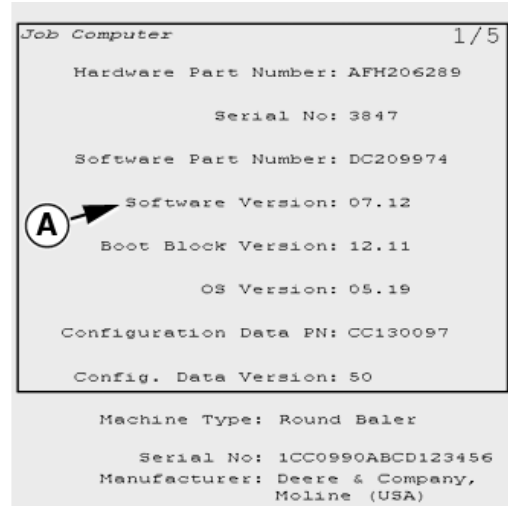
CC1031614

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000589 -19-11DEC14-2/4

- The Job computer screen appears and display some information about the machine, in particular the software version.

A—Software Version



CC228078

CC228081—19—03DEC14

DC82261,0000589 -19-11DEC14-3/4

- Select Main Page softkey to return to baler application main page.

CC1038505 —UN—26SEP12



CC1038505

DC82261,0000589 -19-11DEC14-4/4

Storage

Prepare the Baler for Storage

Remove net roll and store in a cool, dry place.

IMPORTANT: Use an antifreeze or drain pressurized water tank (if equipped). See Charge Pressurized Water Tank in Service section.

Release belt tension.

Clean baler thoroughly inside and out. Trash and dirt will draw moisture and cause rust.

NOTE: Should a high-pressure washer be used to clean the baler, do not direct pressurized water on the bearings or electrical components.

Sharpen and grease net knife.

Coat exposed cylinder rods with grease to prevent rusting.

Check that all rolls are working freely. If one of them is hard to rotate, remove it, clean bearing housing and replace bearing, if necessary.

Apply a few drops of oil to all pivot points and linkages.

Thoroughly lubricate complete machine. See Lubrication and Maintenance section. This excess of grease will collect moisture and protect bearings against humidity.

Apply a thin layer of grease to threads of all adjusting bolts.

All parts from which the paint has been worn should be painted or coated with oil.

Clean all chains by washing them with diesel fuel. Dry thoroughly and coat with a heavy oil.

Protect electrical connectors against corrosion with adequate fluid.

List the replacement parts that will be needed and order them.

IMPORTANT: If the net tying device is going to be stored for a long period, avoid the rubber feed roll being deformed by releasing feed roll pressure and placing feed roll brake into unlocked position.

DC82261,000052A -19-14OCT14-1/1

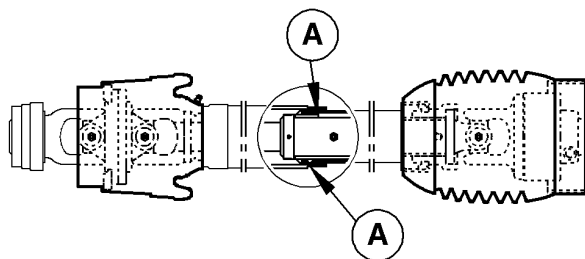
Store Baler at the End of Season

Store baler in a dry sheltered place. If stored outside, cover with waterproof material.

If baler must be stored outside, belt life can be increased by releasing tension, covering or removing belts to protect from sunlight etc. Check hooks and store belts in a cool dry place.

Block up baler, taking load off tires. Do NOT deflate tires. If exposed, cover tires to protect them from light, grease and oil.

Grease guard tubes (A) at the beginning of the winter season to protect them from freezing.



CC1030882

CC1030882—UN—24SEP08

OUCC006,000141E -19-23JUN08-1/1

Prepare for Beginning of Season

Check and fill gear case up to check plug level. See Lubrication and Maintenance section.

Remove the oil from the chains.

Lubricate complete machine as this will force any collected moisture out of the bearings. See Lubrication and Maintenance section.

Check tires for correct air pressure. See Preparing the Baler section.

Tighten all bolts, nuts and set screws. See Service section.

Check all belt splice pins and hooks, then replace as necessary.

Check adjustments of baler as described in Service section.

Review your operator's manual.



CC1030883—UN—14OCT08

Check that control monitor is working properly.

If equipped, fill pressurized water tank with water, see Charge Pressurized Water Tank in Service section.

DC82261,0000566 -19-18NOV14-1/2

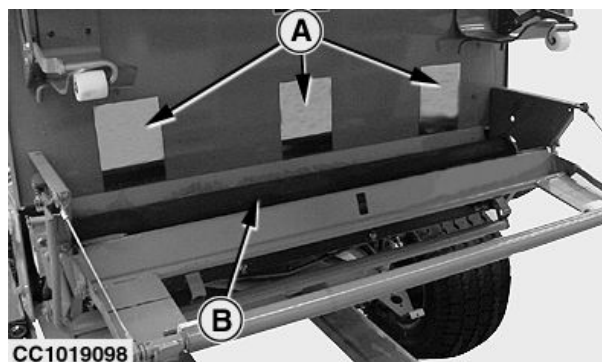
Wipe off feed rolls (B) and check for any sticky material. If necessary, rolls may be washed with soap and water. NEVER use solvents to clean rubber feed roll.

Apply talcum powder to rubber feed roll.

Check areas which will contact net roll. These areas must be clean and smooth to help prevent net wrapping on rubber coated roll. Remove excessive dust or crop material from feed rolls (B) and stainless steel net roll supports (A) with a dry cloth.

Check adjustments of net tying, mainly net feed roll pressure. See Service section.

Check that net knife is sharp.



CC1019098—UN—09FEB01

A—Steel net roll supports

B—Feed rolls

DC82261,0000566 -19-18NOV14-2/2

Specifications

Specifications for 864 Baler

Size of Bales

Diameter	0.60 to 1.80 m (2 ft. to 6 ft.)
Width	1.17 m (46 in.)

Baler

Weight ^a	3730 kg (8223 lb.)
Length, gate closed (without net tying)	4.00 m (157-1/2 in.)
Length, gate open	5.01 m (197-1/4 in.)
Height, gate closed	3.06 m (120-1/2 in.)
Height, gate open (without net tying)	3.88 m (152-3/4 in.)
Width	2.70 m (106-1/2 in.)

^aweight may vary depending on equipment

Pickup Types	2.00 m (78-3/4 in.)	2.20 m (86-5/8 in.)
Width (inside)	1.85 m (72-7/8 in.)	2.00 m (78-3/4 in.)
Width (on flare)	2.00 m (78-3/4 in.)	2.20 m (86-5/8 in.)
Width (between outer teeth)	1.65 m (65 in.)	1.93 m (76 in.)
Tooth bars	4	8
Number of teeth	104	120
Tooth spacing	66 mm (2-5/8 in.)	66 mm (2-5/8 in.)
Stripper diameter	255 mm (10 in.)	255 mm (10 in.)

Precutter Device, 14 Knives (If Equipped)

Number of knives	14
Knife spacing	70 mm (2-3/4 in.)

Precutter Device, 25 Knives (If Equipped)

Number of knives	25
Knife spacing	40 mm (1-9/16 in.)

Forming Belts

Number of belts	6
Type	3-ply fabric, diamond tread
Width	178 mm (7 in.)
Length	13.07 m (42 ft. 9-9/16 in.) (2 belts) 13.21 m (43 ft. 4-1/16 in.) (4 belts)

Braking System

Type	Hydraulic or pneumatic
------------	------------------------

Miscellaneous

PTO shaft speed (baler without precutter device)	540 rpm
PTO shaft speed (baler with precutter device)	540 - 750 - 1000 rpm
Drive protection	Cam-type cut out clutch
Powerline	Constant velocity powerline
Minimum tractor horsepower (baler without precutter device)	75 kW (100 hp) at PTO
Minimum tractor horsepower (baler with precutter device)	82 kW (110 hp) at PTO

Continued on next page

DC82261,0000564 -19-07APR15-1/2

Specifications

Miscellaneous

Tire size..... 11.5/80 - 15.3 (10 PR)
15/55 - 17 (10 PR)
19/45 - 17 (10 PR)
500/50 - 17 (10 PR) FLOTATION +
500/55 - 20 (150A8)
500/45 - 22.5 (12 PR)
Tongue Adjustable

Sound Level

Max. sound level in accordance with EN1553; measurement method in
accordance with ISO3744 (average value)..... 85 dB(A)

DC82261,0000564 -19-07APR15-2/2

EC Declaration of Conformity

Deere & Company
Moline, Illinois USA

The person named below declares that:

Machine type: Round Baler
Model: 864

fulfills all relevant provisions and essential requirements of the following directives:

DIRECTIVE	NUMBER	CERTIFICATION METHOD
Machinery Directive	2006/42/EC	Self-certification
Agricultural Machinery - Safety - Part 1: General Requirements	ISO 4254-1	Self-certification
Agricultural Machinery - Safety - Part 11: Pick-up Balers	prISO 4254-11	Self-certification

Name and address of the person in the European Community authorized to compile the technical construction file:

Henning Oppermann
Deere & Company European Office
John Deere Strasse 70
Mannheim, Germany D-68163
EUConformity@JohnDeere.com

Place of declaration: Arc-lès-Gray, France
Date of declaration: 01 September 2009
Manufacturing unit: John Deere Arc-lès-Gray

Name: Didier DELPHIGUE
Title: Manager Product Engineering

DXCE01 —UN—28APR09



OUC006,0001587 -19-29JAN10-1/1

Customs Union—EAC

This information applies only to machines which bear the EAC mark.

Information for products that bear conformity mark of the Customs Union member states

Manufacturer: Deere & Company
Moline, Illinois U.S.A.

Model: 864 Round Baler

Name and address of the authorized representative in the Customs Union of Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan:
Limited Liability Company
"John Deere Rus"

Address:
142050, Russia, Moscow region, Domodedovo district, Domodedovo, Beliy Stolbi micro district, vladenye "Warehouse 104," Building 2.

For technical support, please contact your dealer.

Date of manufacture is denoted by the product label.

- | | |
|--|---|
| A—Model Designation | E—Model Year |
| B—Serial Number | F—Maximum Load on Axle |
| C—Maximum Load at Hitch | G—Maximum Permissible Total Weight |
| D—Month and Year of Manufacture (MM/YYYY) | |

The diagram shows a John Deere product label with the following fields and callouts:

- A** points to the "Type/Variante/Versión" field.
- B** points to the "Numéro de série" field.
- C** points to the "PTAC" field.
- D** points to the "Modèle" field.
- E** points to the "Année de Fabrication" field.
- F** points to the "Masses Maximales Admissibles" field.
- G** points to the "Modèle" field.

The label also includes the John Deere logo, the text "JOHN DEERE", and the EAC mark.

CC211549

CC211549—UN—01SEP14

Example		
Month of Manufacture	Year of Manufacture	Date of Manufacture
05	2014	May 2014
10	2014	October 2014

DC82261.0000565 -19-26MAR15-1/1

Serial Numbers

Serial Number Plate

Serial number identifying the baler is stamped on factory serial number plate.

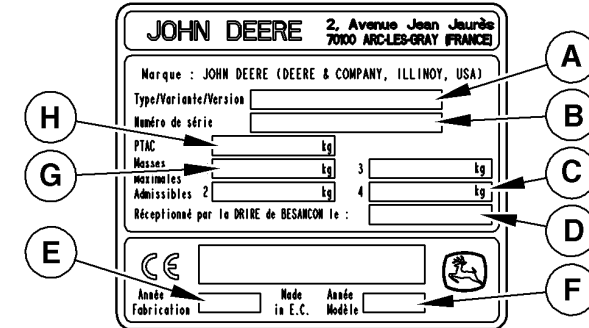
These numbers and letters are required when ordering baler or attachment replacement parts.

To ensure that you have these numbers at hand, enter the appropriate serial number in the table provided under the illustration.

OUC006,000169A -19-29JUN10-1/1

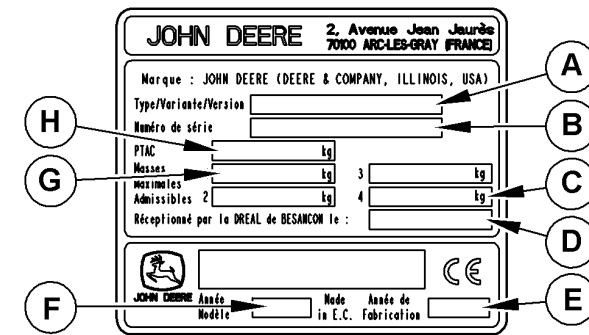
Serial Number Plate Description

- A—Model Designation
- B—Serial Number
- C—Maximum Load at Hitch
- D—Date of Acceptance or homologation number
- E—Year of Production
- F—Model Year
- G—Maximum Load on Axle
- H—Maximum Permissible Total Weight



CC208610

Version 1



CC206124

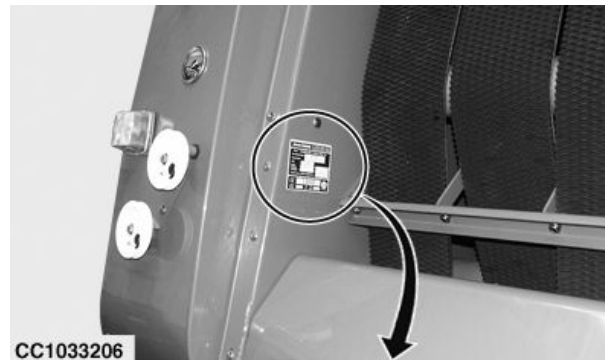
Version 2

DC82261,000043F -19-08APR14-1/1

Baler Serial Number Record

The serial number plate is located on the right side of the front frame.

Record the serial number in the table below.



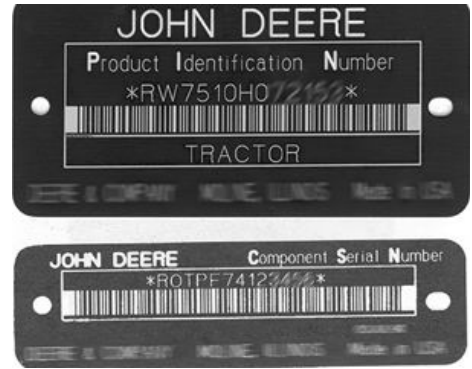
CC1033206

Serial Number															
*															*

OUC006,00016C1 -19-04JAN11-1/1

Keep Proof of Ownership

1. Maintain in a secure location an up-to-date inventory of all product and component serial numbers.
2. Regularly verify that identification plates have not been removed. Report any evidence of tampering to law enforcement agencies and order duplicate plates.
3. Other steps you can take:
 - Mark your machine with your own numbering system
 - Take color photographs from several angles of each machine

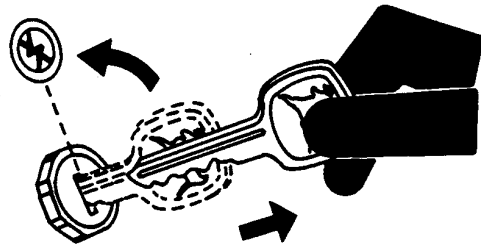


TS1680 —UN—09DEC03

DX, SECURE1 -19-18NOV03-1/1

Keep Machines Secure

1. Install vandal-proof devices.
2. When machine is in storage:
 - Lower equipment to the ground
 - Set wheels to widest position to make loading more difficult
 - Remove any keys and batteries
3. When parking indoors, put large equipment in front of exits and lock your storage buildings.
4. When parking outdoors, store in a well-lighted and fenced area.
5. Make note of suspicious activity and report any thefts immediately to law enforcement agencies.
6. Notify your John Deere dealer of any losses.



TS230 —UN—24MAY89

DX, SECURE2 -19-18NOV03-1/1

Serial Numbers

Index

	Page		Page
A			
Accumulators		Refill multiluber chain oiling system reservoir	45-5
Maintenance	45-29	Attaching and detaching	
Actuator		Connect hydraulic brakes	25-11
Test electrical consumption	57-10	Connecting safety chain	25-8
Adjust		Store hydraulic hoses	25-15
Bale discharging ramp	20-9	Store jackstand	25-8
Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor	55-27	Use jackstand	25-15
Bale Shape Sensitivity	57-17	Attaching and Detaching	
Baler Rotation Speed Sensor	55-28	Adjust Tongue to Tractor Drawbar	25-4
Belt Tracking	55-11	Adjust Tongue to Tractor Trailer Hitch	25-1
Bottom roll drive chain	55-5	Connect Pneumatic Brakes	25-12
Brushes	55-10	Connect Telescoping Driveline to Tractor	
Caster gauge wheels	35-5	PTO Shaft	25-7
Cleaning Auger Sensor	55-28	Detach Telescoping Driveline from Tractor	
Drop Floor Sensor	55-30	PTO Shaft	25-14
Gate Latch Sensor	55-27	Store Telescoping Driveline	25-14
Gate Latch Switch	55-26	Attachment	
Lower gate roll scraper	55-18	Find	40-1
Lower Rear Gate Roll Scraper	55-17	Attachments	
Near Full Alarm Offset	37-10	Battery harness	40-2
Net Cut Sensor	55-29	Cab wiring harness	40-3
Net Cut Switch	55-29	Knife slot filler kit	40-1
Net Tying	37-12	Monitor support	40-2
Net wrap stretch	35-11	Top Idler roll drive kit	40-1
Oil flow	45-5	Automatic Start of Tying	37-16
Oversize Bale Sensor	55-26	Automatic Tractor PTO Disengagement	38-8
Oversize Bale Switch	55-25	Automation	
Pickup drive chains	55-5	Baler Activation Key	38-5
Pickup gauge wheels	35-4	Deactivation Message List	38-17
Pickup height	35-4	Demonstration Mode	38-11
Precutter Knife Sensor	55-31	Diagnostic	38-14
Starter roll (No. 1) scraper	55-17	Prerequisites	38-1
Task Controller	57-19	Select Level	38-6
Top idler roll drive chain	55-7	Softkey designation	38-2
Tractor Behavior	38-10	States pie	38-13
Twine arm travel	55-20	Automation Mode	
Twine guide	35-10	Operate Baler	38-3
Twine Pulley Sensors	55-30	Axle Bearings	
Twine spacing	35-10	Yearly	45-28
Twine tying	37-13	B	
Adjust Tongue		Bale density	
Tractor Drawbar	25-4	Adjust	35-7
Tractor Trailer Hitch	25-1	Gauge	35-7
Adjusting		Bale Diameter	
Drawbar	15-1	Set	37-9
After the First 10 Hours		Bale Diameter Potentiometer	
Wheel nut torque	32-1, 45-8	Calibrate	57-12
After the First 50 Hours		Bale discharging ramp	
Gear Case	32-1, 45-17	Adjust	20-9
Wheel nut torque	32-1, 45-16	Bale Discharging Ramp Sensor	
Air brake tank		Adjust	55-27
Checking and draining	45-19	Enable or Disable	57-20
As required		Bale Shape Indicators	
Clean hydraulic coupler filters	45-6	Make a Bale	37-21
Cleaning oil reservoir filter	45-5		
Jackstand	45-6		

Continued on next page

[illegible]

Continued on next page

	Page		Page
Baler Main Page Description	37-2	Oil.....	45-2
Door		Oil level	45-18
Close.....	30-2	Gear Case	
Drawbar		Check Screw Torque.....	45-28
Adjusting	15-1	Drain	32-1, 45-17
Drawbar shield.....	15-3	Yearly	45-28
Drive belt tension.....	55-37	Genuine John Deere parts	55-2
Drop Floor Sensor		Grease.....	45-2
Adjust.....	55-30	Guidelines to Form a Good Bale	37-19
E		H	
Electro-Hydraulic Components		Hardware torque values	
Test	57-9	Metric	55-1
Every 10 hours	45-9, 45-11	High viscosity gear case oil	45-2
Every 10 Hours.....	45-10, 45-12, 45-13	Hitch	
Every 250 Hours.....	45-20	Check fixing screw	45-27
Every 30 hours	45-15	Hydraulic brakes	
Every 30 Hours.....	45-14, 45-16	Connect.....	25-11
Every 50 Hours.....	45-17, 45-18	Hydraulic coupler	
Every 500 hours		Clean filters.....	45-6
Gear case	45-21	Hydraulic hoses	
F		Connect to tractor	25-9
Field Counters	37-25	Replace.....	45-29
Find Attachement	40-1	Store	25-15
Fire		Hydraulic maximum operating pressure	05-8
Charge Pressurized Water Tank.....	55-3	I	
In Case of Fire	05-8	Identification view	00-1
Prevention		Inspection	
Clean the Machine	35-1	Water Pressurized Tank.....	45-20
Generality	05-7	Install	
Fire Prevention	45-7	Belts	55-16
Form a Good Bale		Bondioli Telescoping Driveline	20-9
Guidelines	37-19	Mato Belt Hooks.....	55-14
G		Net feed roll drive belt	55-43
Gate latch		Pickup gauge wheels	20-1
Adjust.....	55-44	Installing	
Gate Latch Sensor		Net knife.....	55-43
Adjust.....	55-27	J	
Gate latch stop		Jackstand	
Adjust.....	55-45	Store	25-8
Gate Latch Switch		Use.....	25-15
Adjust.....	55-26	K	
Gate Position Potentiometer		Knife and counterknife position	
Calibrate.....	57-15	Checking	55-32
Gauge Wheel		L	
Repair	55-46	Languages	
Gauge wheels		Load	57-21
Adjust.....	35-4		
Install.....	20-1		
Transport position	30-2		
Gear case			
Drain	45-21		

Continued on next page

	Page		Page
Load		N	
Languages	57-21	Near Full Alarm	
Load twine boxes.....	20-6	Adjust Offset	37-10
Location of Components.....	55-22, 55-24	Net	
Lower gate roll (No. 9) scraper		Tying Equipment Difficulties	50-10
Adjust.....	55-18	Net around feed rolls	55-44
Lower Rear Gate Roll Scraper		Net Cut Sensor	
Adjust.....	55-17	Adjust.....	55-29
Lubricant		Net Cut Switch	
Mixing.....	45-3	Adjust.....	55-29
Lubricant Storage		Net feed roll	
Storage, Lubricant.....	45-3	Drive belt.....	55-43
Lubricants, Safety		Net feed roll brake	55-38
Safety, Lubricants	45-3	Net feed roll pressure	
Lubrication and maintenance		Check.....	55-35
As required.....	45-5, 45-6	Net Guide Position	
Daily	45-8	Check.....	55-41
Every 10 hours.....	45-9, 45-11	Net knife	
Every 30 hours.....	45-15	Removing.....	55-43
Every 50 Hours	45-18	Net roll	
Every 500 hours.....	45-21	Load.....	20-2
Monthly	45-19	Route net through feed rolls.....	20-2
Observe service intervals.....	45-1	Net Roll	
Weekly	45-18, 45-19	Select.....	20-1
Wheel nut torque.....	45-8, 45-16	Net tensions arms.....	55-40
Yearly	45-21, 45-26, 45-27	Net tying	
Lubrication and Maintenance		Yearly	45-26
After the First 50 Hours.....	45-17	Net Tying	
Chain Oiling Component Location	45-4	Adjust.....	37-12
Drop Floor	45-7	Net Tying Device	
Every 10 Hours	45-12, 45-13	Check Procedure - General	55-32
Every 250 Hours	45-20	Net wrap stretch	
Every 30 Hours	45-14, 45-16	Adjust.....	35-11
Every 50 Hours	45-17		
Fire Prevention.....	45-7	O	
Precutter Knives.....	45-7	Oil	
Yearly	45-21, 45-25, 45-28	Gear case	45-2
M		Oil flow	
Machine Total Counter.....	37-27, 37-28	Adjust.....	45-5
Main drive chain		Oiling Component Location	
Adjust.....	55-6	Chain.....	45-4
Maintenance		Open	
Accumulators	45-29	Side door.....	35-3
Make a Bale		Operate	
Bale Shape Indicators.....	37-21	Pressurized Water Tank.....	35-2
Manual Bale Unload	38-9	Operate baler	
Manual Start of an Automatic Tying Cycle.....	37-15	Automation mode.....	38-3
Mato belt lacing tool.....	55-12	Operate the baler	
Metric bolt and screw torque values	55-1	In cornstalks.....	35-8
Mixing lubricants.....	45-3	In short, dry, slick crops	35-8
Modified square knot		In silage and damp crops.....	35-9
Twine.....	20-6	Operating the baler	
Monthly		Adjust bale density.....	35-7
Check park brake.....	45-19	Adjust lower gate roll scraper.....	55-18
		Adjust Oil Flow	45-5

Continued on next page

	Page		Page
Adjust pickup caster gauge wheels.....	35-5	Install pickup gauge wheels.....	20-1
Adjust pickup gauge wheels.....	35-4	Load net roll.....	20-2
Adjust pickup height.....	35-4	Modified square knot.....	20-6
Adjust short crop deflector.....	35-5	Net tying device.....	20-2
Adjust twine guide.....	35-10	Sheet bend knot.....	20-6
Bale density gauge.....	35-7	Preparing the Baler	
Crop preparation (Hay).....	35-3	Care of Twine Ball.....	20-5
Crop preparation (Silage).....	35-3	Check Wheel Nut Torque.....	20-11
Gate lock valve.....	35-4	Select Net Roll.....	20-1
Move caster gauge wheels in transport position.....	30-3	Select Twine.....	20-5
Move pickup gauge wheels in transport position.....	30-2	Tire inflation.....	20-10
Open and close the side door.....	35-3	Preparing the tractor	
Put caster gauge wheels in transport position.....	30-3	Adjust selective control valves.....	15-2
Rotate baler by hand.....	35-9	Adjusting drawbar.....	15-1
Select number of precutter knives.....	35-6	Drawbar shield.....	15-3
Windrow size.....	35-3	Select tractor PTO speed.....	15-1
Operating the Baler		Prerequisites	
Adjust Lower Rear Gate Roll Scraper.....	55-17	Tractor-implement automation.....	38-1
Adjust Windrow Compressor Roll.....	35-6	Pressurized Water Tank	
Unplug Baler.....	35-9	Operate.....	35-2
Operating the Machine		PTO	
Feed the Material.....	35-8	Connect Telescoping Driveline.....	25-7
Oversize Bale Sensor		Detach Telescoping Driveline.....	25-14
Adjust.....	55-26	Select speed.....	15-1
Oversize Bale Switch			
Adjust.....	55-25		
		R	
P		Raise or lower	
Parameters		Pickup.....	37-22
Software.....	57-24	Rear Gate SCV	
Park brake		Select.....	38-7
Check.....	45-19	Recent Problems.....	57-2
Park the machine.....	30-3	Repairing belts	
Pickup		Goro belt lacing tool.....	55-12
Adjust height.....	35-4	Mato belt lacing tool.....	55-12
Raise or lower.....	37-22	Replace	
Pickup auger scrapers		Pickup Drive Shear Bolt.....	55-9
Adjust.....	55-18	Retract or engage	
Pickup drive chains		Precutter knives.....	37-22
Adjust.....	55-5	Roll No. 8 position	
Pickup Drive Shear Bolt		Check.....	55-36
Replace.....	55-9	Rotary Feeder	
Pneumatic Brakes		Unplug.....	37-23
Connect.....	25-12	Unplug in Automation Mode.....	38-5
Precutter Knife Sensor		Rotary feeder drive chain	
Adjust.....	55-31	Adjust.....	55-7
Precutter knives		Round baler	
Retract or engage.....	37-22	Hanging points.....	55-45
Select number.....	35-6	Route twine	
Sharpen.....	55-9	Out of boxes.....	20-7
Precutter Knives		Through guides.....	20-8
Check.....	45-7		
Replace.....	55-8	S	
Prepare		Safety	
Beginning of Season.....	60-2	Charge Pressurized Water Tank.....	55-3
Preparing the baler			
Care of net roll.....	20-1		

Continued on next page

	Page		Page
Safety, Avoid High-Pressure Fluids		Replace Precutter Knives	55-8
Avoid High-Pressure Fluids	05-10	Service intervals	45-1
Scraper		Set	
Pickup auger	55-18	Center tension arm roll position (No. 12)	55-21
Season Counter.....	37-27, 37-28	Seven-terminal trailer socket connection.....	25-13
Select		Sharpen	
Automation Level	38-6	Precutter knives	55-9
Tying System	37-10	Sheet bend knot	
Selective Control Valve		Twine.....	20-6
Select Rear Gate	38-7	Short crop deflector	
Sensor		Adjust.....	35-5
Bale Discharging Ramp	57-20	Short, dry, slick crops	
Baler Rotation Speed.....	57-18	Operate the baler	35-8
Identify Detection Area (from S.N. 135000).....	55-25	Side door	
Sensors		Close.....	30-2
Test	57-8	Soft Core System	
Serial number		Operate	37-17
Plate.....	70-1	Softkey	
Serial numbers		Description	37-3
Product identification number	70-1	Designation	37-3, 38-2
Serial Numbers		Software	
Plate Description.....	70-1	Parameters	57-24
Service		Specifications	
Adjust Belt Tracking	55-11	864 Baler.....	65-1
Adjust brushes	55-10	Standard belt lacing tool	55-12
Adjust gate latch	55-44	Starter roll (No. 1) scraper	
Adjust Gate Latch Sensor	55-27	Adjust.....	55-17
Adjust gate latch stop.....	55-45	States pie	
Adjust Gate Latch Switch.....	55-26	Automation.....	38-13
Adjust main drive chain.....	55-6	Storage	
Adjust rotary feeder drive chain	55-7	Prepare for Beginning of Season.....	60-2
Adjust twine cutter anvil	55-19	Prepare the Baler for Storage	60-1
Adjust upper drive roll chain.....	55-6	Storing baler at end of season	60-1
Adjust upper drive roll chain guide.....	55-7	Swinging bar motion	55-34
Adjusting net feed roll brake	55-38	Switch Baler Application	
Baler roll numbering	55-2	Current Virtual Terminal to An-	
Before Each Service	55-1	other	57-22, 57-23
Bleed Chain Oiling System Pump.....	55-9	Switches	
Check net feed roll pressure	55-35	Test	57-8
Check Net Tying Device.....	55-32		
Check roll No. 8 position.....	55-36		
Checking drive belt tension.....	55-37		
Checking free motion of swiging bar.....	55-34		
Checking knife and counterknife position	55-32		
Checking net feed roll brake	55-38		
Checking tension arms	55-40		
Hook belt ends	55-17		
Install belts	55-15		
Install Mato Belt Hooks	55-14		
Lower Net Guide Position	55-41		
Net feed roll drive belt.....	55-43		
Net Tying Device Check Procedure	55-32		
Remove and install wheel.....	55-46		
Removing and installing net knife	55-43		
Removing net around feed rolls	55-44		
Repair Gauge Wheel	55-46		
Repairing belts	55-12, 55-13		
Replace Pickup Drive Shear Bolt.....	55-9		

T

Task Controller	
Adjust.....	57-19
Task Counter	37-27
Telescoping Driveline	
Connect.....	25-7
Detach.....	25-14
Install Bondioli.....	20-9
Store	25-14
Telescoping Driveline Support.....	25-7
Test	
Actuator electrical consumption	57-10
Electro-Hydraulic Components	57-9
Sensors and Switches	57-8
Tractor Battery Voltage	57-3
Tire	
Inflation	20-10

Continued on next page

	Page		Page
Tongue frame		Tying System	
Check lock nut	45-27	Select	37-10
Top idler roll drive chain			
Adjust	55-7	U	
Torque charts		Units of measure	37-1
Metric	55-1	Unplug	
Tow baler on public roads	30-1	Baler	35-9
Tractor		Rotary Feeder	37-23, 38-5
Adjust control valves	15-2	Unplug Rotary Feeder	
Drawbar	15-1	Automation Mode	38-5
Tractor Behavior		Upper drive roll chain guide	
Adjust	38-10	Adjust	55-7
Tractor Drawbar		Upper roll drive chain	
Adjust Tongue	25-4	Adjust	55-6
Tractor PTO			
Automatic Disengagement	38-8	V	
Tractor PTO speed		Virtual Terminal	
Select	15-1	Harness	15-3
Tractor Trailer Hitch		Switch Baler Application	57-22, 57-23
Adjust Tongue	25-1		
Tractor-implement automation		W	
Prerequisites	38-1	Warning lights	30-1
Transport position		Warning screens	57-1
Caster gauge wheels	30-3	Water Pressurized Tank	
Gauge wheels	30-2	Inspection	45-20
Transporting		Weekly	45-18
Park the machine	30-3	Checking and draining air brake tank	45-19
Recommended warning lights	30-1	Wheel	
Tow baler on public roads	30-1	Check Nut Torque	20-11, 45-21
Transporting and parking		Nut torque	32-1, 45-8, 45-16
Close side doors	30-2	Remove and install	55-46
Troubleshooting		Windrow Compressor Roll	
Bale Quality	50-6	Adjust	35-6
Chain Oiling System	50-13	Windrow size	35-3
Feed difficulties	50-3	Wiring harness	
General Baler Difficulties	50-7	Connect	25-13
Net Tying Equipment Difficulties	50-10		
Pickup Difficulties	50-4	Y	
Silage equipment difficulties	50-9	Yearly	
Twine tying	50-1	Air Brake Shafts	45-22
Twine		Air Brake Shoes	45-24
Select	20-5	Axle Bearings	45-28
Twine arm travel		Check Nut Torque of Brake Pivot	45-25
Adjust	55-20	Check Wheel Nut Torque	45-21
Twine boxes		Gear Case	45-28
Load	20-6	Hydraulic Brake Shafts	45-23
Twine cutter anvil		Hydraulic Brake Shoes	45-24
Adjust	55-19	Net tying	45-26
Twine Pulley Sensors		Tongue frame and hitch	45-27
Adjust	55-30		
Twine spacing			
Adjust	35-10		
Twine tying			
Adjust	37-13		
Twine Tying Actuator			
Calibrate	57-16		
Tying Automatic Start	37-16		
Tying Manual Start	37-15		
Tying Start Mode			
Select	37-11		

John Deere Service Keeps You On The Job

John Deere Parts

We help minimize downtime by putting genuine John Deere parts in your hands in a hurry.

That's why we maintain a large and varied inventory—to stay a jump ahead of your needs.



DX,IBC,A -19-04JUN90-1/1

TS100 —UN—23AUG88

The Right Tools

Precision tools and testing equipment enable our Service Department to locate and correct troubles quickly . . . to save you time and money.



DX,IBC,B -19-04JUN90-1/1

TS101 —UN—23AUG88

Well-Trained Technicians

School is never out for John Deere service technicians.

Training schools are held regularly to be sure our personnel know your equipment and how to maintain it.

Result?

Experience you can count on!



DX,IBC,C -19-04JUN90-1/1

TS102 —UN—23AUG88

Prompt Service

Our goal is to provide prompt, efficient care when you want it and where you want it.

We can make repairs at your place or at ours, depending on the circumstances: see us, depend on us.

JOHN DEERE SERVICE SUPERIORITY: We'll be around when you need us.



DX,IBC,D -19-04JUN90-1/1

TS103 —UN—23AUG88

